

12-18-01

JC14 Rec'd PCT/PTO 12 DEC 2001

FORM PTO-1390  
(REV. 11-2000)

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

ATTORNEY'S DOCKET NUMBER

2614 USOP

U.S. APPLICATION NO. (If known, see 37 CFR 1.5)

10/018321

TRANSMITTAL LETTER TO THE UNITED STATES  
DESIGNATED/ELECTED OFFICE (DO/EO/US)  
CONCERNING A FILING UNDER 35 U.S.C. 371

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION NO.  
PCT/JP00/03879

INTERNATIONAL FILING DATE  
June 15, 2000

PRIORITY DATE CLAIMED  
June 16, 1999

TITLE OF INVENTION

Benzazepine Derivative, Production and Use Thereof

APPLICANT(S) FOR DO/EO/US

Mitsuru SHIRAIISHI, Masanori BABA, Yoshio ARAMAKI, Naoyuki KANZAKI, Osamu NISHIMURA

Applicant herewith submits to the United States Designated/Elected Office (DO/EO/US) the following items and other information:

1. ☒ This is a **FIRST** submission of items concerning a filing under 35 U.S.C. 371.
2. ☐ This is a **SECOND** or **SUBSEQUENT** submission of items concerning a filing under 35 U.S.C. 371.
3. ☒ This is an express request to begin national examination procedures (35 U.S.C. 371(f)). The submission must include items (5), (6), (9) and (21) indicated below.
4. ☒ The US has been elected by the expiration of 19 months from the priority date (Article 31).
5. ☒ A copy of the International Application as filed (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(2))
  - a. ☐ is attached hereto (required only if not communicated by the International Bureau).
  - b. ☒ has been communicated by the International Bureau.
  - c. ☐ is not required, as the application was filed in the United States Receiving Office (RO/US).
6. ☒ An English language translation of the International Application as filed (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(2)).
  - a. ☒ is attached hereto.
  - b. ☐ has been previously submitted under 35 U.S.C. 154(d)(4).
7. ☒ Amendments to the claims of the International Application under PCT Article 19 (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(3))
  - a. ☐ are attached hereto (required only if not communicated by the International Bureau).
  - b. ☐ have been communicated by the International Bureau.
  - c. ☐ have not been made; however, the time limit for making such amendments has NOT expired.
  - d. ☒ have not been made and will not be made.
8. ☐ An English language translation of the amendments to the claims under PCT Article 19 (35 U.S.C. 371 (c)(3)).
9. ☒ An oath or declaration of the inventor(s) (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4)).
10. ☐ An English lanugage translation of the annexes of the International Preliminary Examination Report under PCT Article 36 (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(5)).

Items 11 to 20 below concern document(s) or information included:

11. ☒ An Information Disclosure Statement under 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98.
12. ☒ An assignment document for recording. A separate cover sheet in compliance with 37 CFR 3.28 and 3.31 is included.
13. ☒ A **FIRST** preliminary amendment.
14. ☐ A **SECOND** or **SUBSEQUENT** preliminary amendment.
15. ☐ A substitute specification.
16. ☐ A change of power of attorney and/or address letter.
17. ☐ A computer-readable form of the sequence listing in accordance with PCT Rule 13ter.2 and 35 U.S.C. 1.821 - 1.825.
18. ☐ A second copy of the published international application under 35 U.S.C. 154(d)(4).
19. ☐ A second copy of the English language translation of the international application under 35 U.S.C. 154(d)(4).
20. ☒ Other items or information:

Copy of ISR and copies of Cited References

Copies of Forms 210 (ISR), 301, 304, 308, 332, and PCT/RO/101

Translation Cover Sheet, Copy of Front Page of International Appln., Itemized Return Postcard

Express Mail Label No. EL 916492262 US

Date of Deposit 12/12/01

Express Mail #EC 91649226

U.S. APPLICATION NO. (if known, see 37 CFR 1.5) <b>10/018321</b>		INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION NO. PCT/JP00/03879		ATTORNEY'S DOCKET NUMBER 2614 USOP	
---	--	---	--	---------------------------------------	--

21. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> The following fees are submitted: <b>BASIC NATIONAL FEE (37 CFR 1.492 (a) (1) - (5)):</b> Neither international preliminary examination fee (37 CFR 1.482) nor international search fee (37 CFR 1.445(a)(2)) paid to USPTO and International Search Report not prepared by the EPO or JPO ..... \$1040.00  International preliminary examination fee (37 CFR 1.482) not paid to USPTO but International Search Report prepared by the EPO or JPO ..... \$890.00  International preliminary examination fee (37 CFR 1.482) not paid to USPTO but international search fee (37 CFR 1.445(a)(2)) paid to USPTO ..... \$740.00  International preliminary examination fee (37 CFR 1.482) paid to USPTO but all claims did not satisfy provisions of PCT Article 33(1)-(4) ..... \$710.00  International preliminary examination fee (37 CFR 1.482) paid to USPTO and all claims satisfied provisions of PCT Article 33(1)-(4) ..... \$100.00 <b>ENTER APPROPRIATE BASIC FEE AMOUNT =</b>				<b>CALCULATIONS PTO USE ONLY</b>          <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 50%; text-align: right;">\$ 890.00</td> <td style="width: 50%;"></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">\$</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>		\$ 890.00		\$	
\$ 890.00									
\$									
Surcharge of \$130.00 for furnishing the oath or declaration later than <input type="checkbox"/> 20 <input type="checkbox"/> 30 months from the earliest claimed priority date (37 CFR 1.492(e)).				<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 50%; text-align: right;">\$</td> <td style="width: 50%;"></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">\$</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>		\$		\$	
\$									
\$									
CLAIMS *	NUMBER FILED	NUMBER EXTRA	RATE						
Total claims	37 - 20 =	17	x \$18.00	\$ 306.00					
Independent claims	3 - 3 =	0	x \$84.00	\$ 0					
MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM(S) (if applicable)			+ \$280.00	\$					
<b>TOTAL OF ABOVE CALCULATIONS =</b>				\$ 1,196.00					
<input type="checkbox"/> Applicant claims small entity status. See 37 CFR 1.27. The fees indicated above are reduced by 1/2.				\$					
<b>SUBTOTAL =</b>				\$ 1,196.00					
Processing fee of \$130.00 for furnishing the English translation later than <input type="checkbox"/> 20 <input type="checkbox"/> 30 months from the earliest claimed priority date (37 CFR 1.492(f)).				\$					
<b>TOTAL NATIONAL FEE =</b>				\$ 1,196.00					
Fee for recording the enclosed assignment (37 CFR 1.21(h)). The assignment must be accompanied by an appropriate cover sheet (37 CFR 3.28, 3.31). \$40.00 per property +				\$					
<b>TOTAL FEES ENCLOSED =</b>				\$ 1,196.00					
*After entry of Preliminary Amendment				Amount to be refunded:	\$				
				charged:	\$				

a. ☐ A check in the amount of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ to cover the above fees is enclosed.

b. ☒ Please charge my Deposit Account No. 500799 in the amount of \$ 1,196.00 to cover the above fees.  
A duplicate copy of this sheet is enclosed.

c. ☒ The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any additional fees which may be required, or credit any  
overpayment to Deposit Account No. 500799. A duplicate copy of this sheet is enclosed.

d. ☐ Fees are to be charged to a credit card. **WARNING:** Information on this form may become public. Credit card  
information should not be included on this form. Provide credit card information and authorization on PTO-2038.

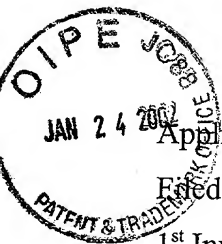
**NOTE:** Where an appropriate time limit under 37 CFR 1.494 or 1.495 has not been met, a petition to revive (37 CFR  
1.137 (a) or (b)) must be filed and granted to restore the application to pending status.

SEND ALL CORRESPONDENCE TO:

Elaine M. Ramesh, PhD, JD  
 Takeda Pharmaceuticals North America, Inc.  
 Suite 500, 475 Half Day Road  
 Lincolnshire, IL 60069 USA  
 (847)383-3372 fax (847)383-3481

*Elaine M Ramesh*  
 SIGNATURE  
 Elaine M. Ramesh, PhD, JD  
 NAME  
 43,032  
 REGISTRATION NUMBER  
 For Customer No. 23,115





PTO/PCT REC'D 31 JAN 2001

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Application No.: 10/018,321

Filed: December 12, 2001

1<sup>st</sup> Inventor: M. Shiraishi

For: Benzazepine Derivative, Production and Use  
Thereof

Atty. Dkt. No. 2614 USOP

Art Unit: unassigned

Examiner: unassigned

Allowed:

Batch:

Paper No.: 2

**SECOND PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT**

Commissioner for Patents  
Washington, D.C. 20231

Dear Sir:

In connection with the filing of the above-identified U.S. national phase application, please consider the following amendment and remarks.

**AMENDMENT**

**In the Specification**

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 2 of the specification.

Page 2, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

In order to investigate an anti-AIDS drug having CCR5 antagonistic activity, it is necessary to clone CCR5 gene from human tissue derived cDNA library, to ligate said gene with a vector for expression in animal cells, to introduce said gene into animal cells and to obtain cells expressing CCR5. In addition, with using this transformant, it is necessary to screen a compound which strongly inhibits binding of CC chemokine RANTES, natural ligand, to CCR5. However, so far there has been almost no report of a low molecular weight compound which has

this CCR5 antagonistic activity and is suitable for oral administration. The present invention is to provide a novel anilide derivative which is useful for the treatment or prevention of infectious diseases of HIV and, in particular, AIDS and also which is suitable for oral administration, production and use thereof.

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 6 of the specification.

Page 6, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

- (18) The compound as described in the above (17), wherein the alicyclic hydrocarbon group is a lower cycloalkyl group;
- (19) The compound as described in the above (17), wherein the alicyclic hydrocarbon group is cyclohexyl;
- (20) The compound as described in the above (17), wherein the alicyclic heterocyclic group is a saturated alicyclic heterocyclic group;
- (21) The compound as described in the above (17), wherein the alicyclic heterocyclic group is tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydrothiopyranyl or piperidyl;
- (22) The compound as described in the above (17), wherein the alicyclic heterocyclic group is tetrahydropyranyl;
- (23) The compound selected from the class consisting of 7-(4-ethoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-ethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide; 1-ethyl-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide; 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-ethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide; 7-(4-ethoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 12 of the specification.

Page 12, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

treatment or prevention of infectious diseases of HIV;

(36) A method for antagonizing a CC chemokine receptor (CCR) in a mammal, which comprises administering an effective amount of a compound described in the above (1) or a salt thereof to a mammal;

(37) Use of a compound described in the above (1) or a salt thereof in preparation of a medicament for antagonizing a CC chemokine receptor (CCR); etc.

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 14 of the specification.

Page 14, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

as cyclopropylmethyl, cyclobutylmethyl, cyclopentylmethyl, cyclohexylmethyl, cycloheptylmethyl, etc.), and the like.

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 16 of the specification.

Page 16, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

pyrazolidine, pyrazoline, piperidine, piperazine, oxazine, oxadiazine, thiazine, thiadiazine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyran and tetrahydropyran, as well as non-aromatic heterocycles in which some or all of the bonds of the aforementioned non-aromatic heterocycle are saturated bonds, and the like (preferably, aromatic heterocycles such as pyrazole, thiazole, oxazole, tetrazole, etc.).

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 19 of the specification.

Page 19, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

of the C<sub>3-7</sub> cycloalkyl include cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, etc. Among others, a straight C<sub>1-6</sub> lower alkyl is preferable and C<sub>1-3</sub> lower alkyl is more preferable. The groups R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> may be the same or different, and preferably the groups R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> are the same. When R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> may bind to each other to form a 5- to 7- membered ring, the groups R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> bind to each other to represent a straight C<sub>2-4</sub> alkylene chain of the formula: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-, etc. Said chain may have a substituent, and examples of the substituent include hydroxy group, halogen, etc.

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 19 of the specification.

Page 19, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Examples of the optionally esterified carboxyl group include a carboxyl group and an ester formed by binding a carboxyl group to a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl group or a C<sub>3-7</sub> cycloalkyl group (e.g., methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, propoxycarbonyl, isopropoxycarbonyl, butoxycarbonyl, isobutoxycarbonyl, sec-butoxycarbonyl, tert-butoxy-carbonyl, pentyloxycarbonyl, hexyloxycarbonyl, etc.).

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 22 of the specification.

Page 22, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

methoxymethoxy, methoxyethoxy, ethoxyethoxy, trifluoromethoxyethoxy, trifluoroethoxyethoxy, etc.), formyl, C<sub>2-4</sub> alkanoyl (e.g. acetyl, propionyl, etc.), C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylsulfonyl

(e.g. methanesulfonyl, ethanesulfonyl, etc.), etc., and the number of substituents is preferably 1 to 3.

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 31 of the specification.

Page 31, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, hexyl, octyl, nonyl, decyl, etc., preferably lower ( $C_{1-6}$ ) alkyl, etc.);

(3) an optionally substituted cycloalkyl (e.g.  $C_{3-7}$  cycloalkyl, etc. such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, etc.);

(4) an optionally substituted alkenyl (e.g.,  $C_{2-10}$  alkenyl such as allyl, crotyl, 2-pentenyl, 3-hexenyl, etc., preferably lower ( $C_{2-6}$ ) alkenyl, etc.);

(5) an optionally substituted cycloalkenyl (e.g.  $C_{3-7}$  cycloalkenyl, etc. such as 2-cyclopentenyl, 2-cyclohexenyl, 2-cyclopentenylmethyl, 2-cyclohexenylmethyl, etc.);

(6) an optionally substituted 5-to 6-membered monocyclic aromatic group (e.g., phenyl, 5-to 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group (e.g., 5- to 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero-atoms consisting of 1 to 2 kinds of hetero-atoms selected from oxygen atom, sulfur atom and nitrogen atom, such as furyl, thienyl, pyrrolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, thiazolyl, oxazolyl, isothiazolyl, isoxazolyl, tetrazolyl, pyridyl, pyrazyl, pyrimidinyl, pyridazinyl, triazolyl, etc.);

(7) an optionally substituted 5- to 6-membered monocyclic non-aromatic heterocyclic group (e.g., a group which is formed by removing one hydrogen atom from a 5- to 6-

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 33 of the specification.

Page 33, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

substituted thiol group (e.g., thiol, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylthio, etc.), an optionally substituted amino group (e.g., amino; mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; 5- to 6- membered cyclic amino such as tetrahydropyrrole, piperazine, piperidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyrrole, imidazole, etc.; etc.), an optionally esterified or amidated carboxyl group (e.g. carboxyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl (e.g., trifluoromethyl, methyl, ethyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy (e.g. methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, butoxy, trifluoromethoxy, trifluoroethoxy, etc.), C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylenedioxy (e.g., -O-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-, -O-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-, etc.), optionally substituted sulfonamide [e.g., an optionally substituted amino group (e.g. amino; mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; 5- to 6- membered cyclic amino such as tetrahydropyrrole, piperazine, piperidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyrrole, imidazole, etc.) which is bound to -SO<sub>2</sub>-, etc.], formyl, C<sub>2-4</sub> alkanoyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, etc.), C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylsulfonyl (e.g., methanesulfonyl, ethanesulfonyl, etc.), etc., and the number of the substituents are preferably 1 to 3.

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 35 of the specification.

Page 35, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

include halogen (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.), nitro, cyano, hydroxy group, an optionally substituted thiol group (e.g., thiol, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylthio, etc.), an optionally substituted amino group (e.g., amino; mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; 5- to 6- membered cyclic amino such as tetrahydropyrrole, piperazine, piperidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyrrole, imidazole, etc.; etc.), an optionally esterified or amidated carboxyl group (e.g., carboxyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>

alkoxycarbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl carbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, (e.g., trifluoromethyl, methyl, ethyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, butoxy, trifluoromethoxy, trifluoroethoxy, etc.), formyl, C<sub>2-4</sub> alkanoyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, etc.) C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylsulfonyl (e.g. methanesulfonyl, ethanesulfonyl, etc.), etc., and the number of substituents is preferably 1 to 3.

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 35 of the specification.

Page 35, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Examples of the optionally amidated carboxyl group as the substituent for R<sup>1</sup> include a carbonyl group binding to “an optionally substituted amino group”, etc. which is the same as that of the above-described “optionally substituted amino group as the substituents for R<sup>1</sup>” and among others, carbamoyl, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, etc. are

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 38 of the specification.

Page 38, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

aromatic ring which has a group of the formula: R-Z<sup>1</sup>-X-Z<sup>2</sup>- wherein each symbol is as defined above, and which may have a further substituent” represented by R<sup>1</sup> may have, in addition to the group of the formula: R-Z<sup>1</sup>-X-Z<sup>2</sup>-, include, in particular, a lower (C<sub>1-4</sub>) alkyl optionally substituted with a halogen or a lower (C<sub>1-4</sub>) alkoxy (e.g., methyl, ethyl, t-butyl, trifluoromethyl, methoxymethyl, ethoxymethyl, propoxymethyl, butoxymethyl, methoxyethyl, ethoxyethoxy, propoxyethyl, butoxyethyl, etc.), a lower (C<sub>1-4</sub>) alkoxy optionally substituted with a halogen or a lower (C<sub>1-4</sub>) alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, butoxy, t-butoxy, trifluoromethoxy, methoxymethoxy, ethoxymethoxy, propoxymethoxy, butoxymethoxy, methoxyethoxy,

ethoxyethoxy, propoxyethoxy, butoxyethoxy, methoxypropoxy, ethoxypropoxy, propoxypropoxy, butoxypropoxy, etc.), halogen (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, etc.), nitro, cyano, an amino group optionally substituted with 1-2 lower ( $C_{1-4}$ ) alkyl groups, formyl group or lower ( $C_{2-4}$ ) alkanoyl groups (e.g., amino, methylamino, dimethylamino, formylamino, acetylamino, etc.), 5- to 6-membered cyclic amino (e.g., 1-pyrrolidinyl, 1-piperazinyl, 1-piperidinyl, 4-morpholino, 4-thiomorpholino, 1-imidazolyl, 4-tetrahydropyranyl, etc.), etc.

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 41 of the specification.

Page 41, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

In the above formula (I), examples of the “optionally substituted aliphatic hydrocarbon group” (aliphatic straight chain hydrocarbon group and aliphatic cyclic hydrocarbon group) represented by  $R^2$  and  $R^3$  include (1) an optionally substituted alkyl (e.g.,  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, hexyl, heptyl, octyl, nonyl, decyl, etc., preferably lower ( $C_{1-6}$ ) alkyl, etc.); (2) an optionally substituted cycloalkyl (e.g.  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, cyclooctyl, etc.; etc.), provided that (2-1) said cycloalkyl may contain one hetero-atom selected from a sulfur atom, an oxygen atom and a nitrogen atom to form oxirane, thiolane, aziridine, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, pyrrolidine, tetrahydropyran, tetrahydrothiopyran, tetrahydrothiopyran-1-oxide, piperidine, etc. (preferably, 6-membered ring



Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 47 of the specification.

Page 47, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

As the compound represented by the above formula (I), 7-(4-ethoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-ethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide; 1-ethyl-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide; 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-ethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide; 7-(4-ethoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide; 1-formyl-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide; 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide; 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-propyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide; N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 54 of the specification.

Page 54, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

antioxidant, a colorant, a sweetener, etc. may be used. Suitable examples of the excipient include lactose, sucrose, D-mannitol, starch, crystalline cellulose, light silicic acid anhydride, etc. Suitable examples of the lubricant include magnesium stearate, calcium stearate, talc, colloidal silica, etc. Suitable examples of the binder include crystalline cellulose, sucrose, D-mannitol, dextrin, hydroxypropyl cellulose, hydroxypropylmethyl cellulose, polyvinyl-pyrrolidone, etc.

Suitable examples of the disintegrating agent include starch, carboxymethyl cellulose, carboxymethyl cellulose calcium, croscarmellose sodium, sodium carboxymethyl starch, etc. Suitable examples of the solvent include water for injection, alcohol, propylene glycol, macrogol, sesame oil, corn oil, etc. Suitable examples of the solubilizer include polyethylene glycol, propylene glycol, D-mannitol, benzyl benzoate, ethanol, trisaminomethane, cholesterol, triethanolamine, sodium carbonate, sodium citrate, etc. Suitable examples of the suspending agent include surfactants such as stearyl triethanolamine, sodium laurylsulfate, laurylaminopropionic acid, lecithin, benzalkonium chloride, benzethonium chloride, glycerin monostearate, etc.; hydrophilic polymers such as polyvinylalcohol, polyvinylpyrrolidone, sodium carboxymethyl cellulose, methyl cellulose, hydroxymethyl

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 55 of the specification.

Page 55, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

cellulose, hydroxyethyl cellulose, hydroxypropyl cellulose, etc. Suitable examples of the isotonicizing agent include sodium chloride, glycerin, D-mannitol, etc. Suitable examples of the buffer include a buffer solution of phosphate, acetate, carbonate, citrate, etc. Suitable examples of the soothing agent include benzylalcohol, etc. Suitable examples of the preservative include p-hydroxybenzoic acid esters, chlorobutanol, benzylalcohol, phenethylalcohol, dehydroacetic acid, sorbic acid, etc. Suitable examples of the antioxidant include sulfites, ascorbic acid, etc.

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 61 of the specification.

Page 61, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

(1) Compound (I) can be produced by reacting Compound (I-1) or (I-2) with halogenated alkyl or halogenated aralkyl. Examples of a halogen atom include chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc. and usually about 1 to 2 moles of the halogenated alkyl or halogenated aralkyl is used per mole of Compound (I-1) or (I-2). If necessary, the reaction smoothly proceeds by addition of about equal to three-fold moles of a base such as triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, pyridine, lithium hydride, sodium

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 64 of the specification.

Page 64, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Compound (I) having a tertiary amino group can be produced by reacting Compound (IV) and a secondary amine compound. Usually, about 1 to 3 moles of the secondary amine compound is used per mole of Compound (IV). If necessary, the reaction smoothly proceeds by addition of about equal to three-fold moles of a base such as triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, pyridine, lithium hydride, sodium hydride, sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, sodium hydrogen carbonate and further sodium iodide, potassium iodide, etc. This substitution reaction is carried out in an inert solvent such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, isopropanol, n-butanol, tetrahydrofuran, diethyl ether, dimethoxyethane, 1,4-dioxane, toluene, benzene, xylene, dichloromethane, chloroform, 1,2-dichloroethane, dimethylformamide (DMF), dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO), pyridine, etc., or a mixture of these solvents. The reaction temperature is generally about  $-10^{\circ}\text{C}$  to about  $180^{\circ}\text{C}$ ,

and the reaction time is generally about 1 hour to about 40 hours. The reaction is carried out preferably under inert gas (e.g. nitrogen, argon, etc.) atmosphere.

[Method D]

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 71 of the specification.

Page 71, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

The resultant Compound (II) or (III) can be separated and purified with known separation and purification methods such as concentration, concentration under reduced pressure, extraction, crystallization, solvent conversion, chromatography, etc.

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 75 of the specification.

Page 75, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

When the compound of the formula (I) or a salt thereof is used in combination with a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and/or a protease inhibitor, the dose of the reverse transcriptase inhibitor or the protease inhibitor ranges, for example, from about 1/200-1/2 or more of the usual dose to about 2-3 times or less of the usual dose. In case that two or more drugs are used in combination, each dose of the drugs is appropriately adjusted if one drug affects metabolism of the other drug, while each dose of the drugs when they are used in combination is generally the same as the dose when they are used alone.

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 79 of the specification.

Page 79, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

flask (Becton Dickinson) using Ham's F12 medium (Nihon Pharmaceutical) containing 10% fetal calf serum (Life Tech Oriental) and taken off with 0.5 g/L trypsin-0.2g/L EDTA (Life Tech Oriental). The cells were washed with PBS (Life Tech Oriental), centrifuged (1000 rpm, 5 minutes), and suspended in PBS. With using Gene Pulser (Bio-Rad Laboratories), DNA was introduced into the cells under the conditions shown below. That is, to the cuvette of 0.4 cm gap were added  $8 \times 10^6$  cells and 10  $\mu$ g of plasmid pCKR5 for expression of human CCR5, and electroporation was carried out under 0.25 kV of voltage and 960  $\mu$ F of capacitance. The cells were transferred into Ham's F12 medium containing 10% fetal calf serum, and cultivated for 24 hours. The cells were again taken off and centrifuged, and suspended in Ham's F12 medium containing 10% fetal calf serum and 500  $\mu$ g/ml of geneticin (Life Tech Oriental). The suspension was diluted to give 104 cells/ml of the suspension, which was inoculated on a 96 well plate (Becton Dickinson) to give geneticin resistant cells.

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 83 of the specification.

Page 83, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

potassium ferricyanide, 2  $\mu$ M  $MgCl_2$  and 0.4 mg/ml X-gal), and the mixture was allowed to stand at 37 °C for 50 minutes and washed twice with PBS. The number of blue cells was counted by a microscope and defined as the number of cells infected with HIV-1. According to this method, inhibition rate of HIV-1 infection was determined. The results are shown in Table 2.

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 90 of the specification.

Page 90, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

In DMF (12 ml) was suspended 7-(4-ethoxyphenyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.13 g). To the suspension was added, under ice-cooling, thionyl chloride (0.04 ml) and DMF (catalytic amount), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and the residue was dissolved in THF (15 ml). The solution was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.08 g) and triethylamine (0.14 ml) in THF (5 ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from ethyl acetate/hexane to give 7-(4-ethoxyphenyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (0.16 g) as colorless crystals.

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 98 of the specification.

Page 98, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 11

In water: ethanol: toluene (1:1: 10, v/v, 18.0 ml) were dissolved 4-propoxyphenyl borate (203 mg) and 7-bromo-1-methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (455 mg). To the

solution was added potassium carbonate (312 mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 103 of the specification.

Page 103, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and to the residue was added THF (10.0 ml). On the other hand, to 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline dihydrochloride (158 mg) was added THF (10.0 ml), and then was added triethylamine (0.47 ml). To the obtained mixture was added dropwise at 0 °C the previously prepared acid chloride suspension, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. To the mixture was added ethyl acetate, and the mixture was washed with water, 1N sodium hydroxide solution, water and saturated brine. The organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (15 g, ethyl acetate → ethyl acetate: ethanol: triethylamine = 100: 10: 1), and recrystallized from ethanol to give 7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-1-methylsulfonyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (140 mg, 51 %) as white crystals.

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 106 of the specification.

Page 106, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

bromobutyrate (82 ml). The mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at 85 °C for 24 hours, and to the mixture was added potassium t-butoxide (70 g) under ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred at 85 °C for 1.5 hours, and the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added ice-water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give ethyl (methyl) 7-bromo-5-hydroxy-1-tosyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (mixture) (153 g) as white crystals.

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 111 of the specification.

Page 111, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 22

To anhydrous acetic acid (0.84 ml) was added dropwise formic acid (0.4 ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred, under nitrogen atmosphere, at 50 °C for 2 hours. To the mixture was added THF (5 ml), and to the mixture was added dropwise, under ice-cooling, a solution of methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.0 g) in THF (15 ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The solvent was evaporated, and to the residue was added water. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give methyl 7-bromo-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.07 g) as colorless crystals.



Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 133 of the specification.

Page 133, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 46

In methanol (25 ml) and THF (25 ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.23 g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (5 ml), and the mixture was stirred at 55 °C for 1.5 hours and concentrated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.24 g) as colorless amorphous.

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 154 of the specification.

Page 154, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 68

In a mixture of THF and ethanol (1:1, v/v, 10.0 ml) was dissolved methyl 1-acetyl-7-[4-(4-morpholino)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (394 mg). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (3.0 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours. To the mixture was added 1N hydrochloric acid to convert to a weakly acidic solution, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give 1-acetyl-7-[4-(4-morpholino)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (372 mg, 98%) as pale yellow crystals.

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 157 of the specification.

Page 157, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

mixture was heated to reflux under argon atmosphere for 14.5 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (75 g, hexane: ethyl acetate = 3 : 1) to give methyl 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate as yellow amorphous. The obtained methyl 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate was dissolved in ethyl acetate (80 ml). To the solution was added 6N hydrochloric acid (20 ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at 100°C for 30 minutes and neutralized with 1N sodium hydroxide and saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution. The separated organic layer was washed with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give crystals, which were washed with ethyl acetate/hexane to give methyl 7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (947 mg) as yellow crystals. The mother liquor was concentrated, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (15 g, hexane:ethyl

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 163 of the specification.

Page 163, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (75 g, hexane: ethyl acetate = 4:1) to give methyl 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-

benzazepine-4-carboxylate as yellow amorphous. The obtained methyl 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate was dissolved in ethyl acetate (80 ml). To the solution was added 1N hydrochloric acid (15 ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at 100 °C for 1 hour and neutralized with 1N sodium hydroxide and saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution. To the mixture was added ethyl acetate, and the separated organic layer was washed with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (50 g, hexane: ethyl acetate = 9: 1 → 4:1 → 2: 1) to give methyl 7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1007 mg, 86 %) as yellow crystals.

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 188 of the specification.

Page 188, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

Working Example 1 (Production of Compound 1)

In DMF (10 ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine 4-carboxylic acid (0.18 g). To the solution was added, under ice-cooling, thionyl chloride (0.09 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and the residue was dissolved in THF (20 ml). The solution was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.12 g) and triethylamine (0.33 ml) in THF (10 ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture

was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from ethyl acetate/hexane to give 7-[4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 1) (0.23g) as colorless crystals.

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 191 of the specification.

Page 191, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and the residue was dissolved in THF (25 ml). The solution was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-3H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.15 g), and triethylamine (0.4 ml) in THF (5 ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from ethanol to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-N-[[4-[(N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino)methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 3) (0.23 g) as colorless crystals.

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 197 of the specification.

Page 197, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Working Example 8 (Production of Compound 8)

In THF (5 ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(3-ethoxypropoxy)phenyl]-1-methanesulfonyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.20 g). To the solution were added, under ice-cooling, thionyl chloride (0.06 ml) and DMF (catalytic amount), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and the residue was dissolved in THF (15 ml). The solution was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.11 g) and triethylamine (0.19 ml) in THF (5 ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture was

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 203 of the specification.

Page 203, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Working Example 12 (Production of Compound 12)

In a mixture of water: ethanol: toluene (1: 1: 10, v/v, 18.0 ml) were dissolved 4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (242 mg) and 7-bromo-1-methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (436 mg). To the solution was added potassium carbonate (299 mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenyl)phosphinepalladium (42 mg), and the mixture was heated to reflux under argon atmosphere for 10 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column

chromatography (30 g, ethyl acetate: ethanol: triethylamine = 180: 20: 1) and recrystallized from ethanol/hexane to give 1-methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 12) (186 mg, 35%) as yellow crystals.

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 206 of the specification.

Page 206, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

room temperature for 30 minutes. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and to the residue was added THF (15.0 ml). On the other hand, to 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline dihydrochloride (337 mg) was added THF (10.0 ml), and then was added triethylamine (1.00 ml). To the obtained mixture was added dropwise at 0 °C the previously prepared acid chloride suspension, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 15 hours. To the mixture was added ethyl acetate, and the mixture was washed with water and saturated brine. The organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (35 g, ethyl acetate → ethyl acetate: ethanol = 10: 1 → ethyl acetate: ethanol: triethylamine = 100: 10: 1) and recrystallized from ethanol to give 1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-[4-(2-propoxy)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 14) (459 mg, 80 %) as white crystals.

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 212 of the specification.

Page 212, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

10036361  
7-

dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (440 mg). To the solution was added potassium carbonate (301 mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenyl)phosphinepalladium (42 mg), and the mixture was refluxed under argon atmosphere for 10 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (30 g, ethyl acetate → ethyl acetate: ethanol = 10: 1 → ethyl acetate: ethanol: triethylamine = 100: 10: 0.5) and recrystallized from ethyl acetate/IPE to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 18) (287 mg, 53 %) as yellow crystals.

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 216 of the specification.

Page 216, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Working Example 21 (Production of Compound 21)

In a mixture of water: ethanol: toluene (1: 1: 10; v/v, 18.0 ml) were dissolved 3-chloro-4-(2-ethoxy)ethoxyphenyl borate (280 mg) and 7-bromo-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (380 mg). To the solution was added potassium carbonate (253 mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenyl)phosphinepalladium (35 mg) , and the mixture was heated to reflux under argon

atmosphere for 10 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (25 g, ethyl acetate → ethyl acetate: ethanol = 10: 1 → ethyl acetate: ethanol: triethylamine = 100 : 10: 0.5) and recrystallized from ethanol to give 7-[3-chloro-4-(2-ethoxy)ethoxyphenyl]-1-

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 228 of the specification.

Page 228, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Working Example 30 (Production of Compound 30)

In DMF (6 ml) was dissolved 1-butyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.30 g). Under ice-cooling, to the mixture was added thionyl chloride (0.15 ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. In THF (20 ml) was suspended the residue, and the suspension was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 231 of the specification.

Page 231, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Working Example 32 (Production of Compound 32)

In DMF (4 ml) was dissolved 1-benzyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.15 g). Under ice-cooling, to the mixture was added thionyl chloride (0.06 ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. In THF (25 ml) was dissolved the residue, and then the



solution was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.09 g) and triethylamine (0.23 ml) in THF (10 ml), under ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight under nitrogen atmosphere. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. Water was added to the mixture, and then the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 255 of the specification.

Page 255, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 99

In methanol (25 ml) and THF (25 ml) was dissolved methyl 1-propionyl-7-(2-propoxyethoxy)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.2 g), and to the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (5 ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight, concentrated, and then neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give 1-propionyl-7-(2-propoxyethoxy)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.2 g) as colorless crystals.

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 263 of the specification.

Page 263, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 109

In methanol (10 ml) and THF (10 ml) was dissolved methyl 1-benzyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.27 g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (10 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room

temperature overnight

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 265 of the specification.

Page 265, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 111

In methanol (25 ml) and THF (25 ml) was dissolved methyl 1-benzyl-7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.49 g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (10 ml), and the mixture was heated at 50 °C overnight and concentrated, then neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give 1-benzyl-7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.47 g) as yellow crystals.

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 343 of the specification.

Page 343, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Working Example 81 (Production of Compound 81)

A catalytic amount of N,N-dimethyl-4-aminopyridine was added to a solution of 7-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(4-methylthiazol-5-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (150 mg), 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (88 mg) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (96 mg) in DMF (15 ml), followed by addition of 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide (137 mg). The mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. To the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried

with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol: ethyl acetate = 1:3) to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-[(4-methylthiazol-5-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 81) (7 mg) as yellow amorphous.

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 351 of the specification.

Page 351, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 153

To a solution of methyl 7-(propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (300 mg) and 2-methoxybenzaldehyde (535 mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane (10 ml) was added sodium triacetoxyborohydride (749 mg), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. Then, water was added thereto and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane: ethyl acetate = 3:1) to give methyl (1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (394 mg) as yellow oil.

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 355 of the specification.

Page 355, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 157

To a suspension of 60% sodium hydride (0.23 g) in tetrahydrofuran (5 ml) which had

been washed with hexane three times was added dropwise a solution of methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.80 g) in tetrahydrofuran (10 ml) under nitrogen atmosphere at 0 °C. The temperature was returned to room temperature and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour. Then, to the mixture was added dropwise a solution of 3-methoxybenzyl bromide (2.29 g) in tetrahydrofuran (5 ml) at 0 °C. The temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 3 days. To the mixture were added ethyl acetate and water, and the mixture was separated. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane: ethyl acetate = 5: 1) to give methyl 7-bromo-1-(3-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.69 g) as yellow oil.

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 393 of the specification.

Page 393, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

water at 0 °C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to neutralize, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(1-methylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (239 mg) as yellow crystals.

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 412 of the specification.

Page 412, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 223

To a solution of methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (200 mg) and pyridine (123 mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10 ml) was added 2-thienyl chloride (208 mg) at 0 °C, and the mixture was heated at 78 °C overnight. After allowing to cool, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated, which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give methyl 7-bromo-1-(2-thienylcarbonyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (236 mg) as colorless crystals.

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 424 of the specification.

Page 424, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 236

In toluene (100 ml), ethanol (10 ml) and water (10 ml) were suspended methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (3.0 g), 4-propoxyethoxyphenyl borate (3.1 g) and potassium carbonate (3.8 g), and the suspension was stirred for 30 minutes under argon atmosphere. Then, to the suspension was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (860 mg), and the mixture was heated at 100 °C for 8 hours under argon atmosphere. After allowing to cool, water was added thereto, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane: ethyl acetate = 3: 1) to give the solid, which was washed with hexane

to give methyl 7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (2.59 g) as yellow crystals.

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 425 of the specification.

Page 425, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 237

In toluene (200 ml) and ethanol (35 ml) were suspended methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (5.0 g), 4-butoxyethoxyphenyl borate (4.6 g) and 1M potassium carbonate solution (35 ml), and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes under argon atmosphere. Then, to the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (1 g), and the mixture was heated at 100 °C overnight under argon atmosphere. After allowing to cool, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane: ethyl acetate = 4:1) to give the solid, which was washed with hexane to give methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (5.7 g) as yellow crystals.

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 430 of the specification.

Page 430, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 243

In toluene (15 ml), ethanol (1.5 ml) and water (1.5 ml) were suspended methyl 7-bromo-[(1-ethylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (550 mg), 4-propoxyethoxyphenyl borate (320 mg) and potassium carbonate (506 mg), and the suspension

was stirred for 30 minutes under argon atmosphere. Then, to the suspension was added tetrakis(triphenyl)phosphinepalladium (81 mg), and the mixture was heated at 100 °C for 6 hours under argon atmosphere. After allowing to cool, water was added thereto, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane: ethyl acetate = 1:1) to give methyl 1-[(1-ethylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (370 mg) as yellow oil.

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 432 of the specification.

Page 432, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

In methanol (25 ml) and THF (10 ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-methylthiazol-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.17 g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (4 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight, heated at 60 °C for 5 hours, concentrated, neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-methylthiazol-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.12 g) as yellow crystals.

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 436 of the specification.

Page 436, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 249

In toluene/ethanol/water (=10/1/1, 41 ml) was dissolved methyl 7-bromo-1-isobutyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.90 g). To the solution were added 4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (0.72 g) and potassium carbonate (0.81 g) and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes under argon atmosphere. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (123 mg) and the mixture was heated to reflux for 14 hours. After cooling to room temperature, the solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine, and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 494 of the specification.

Page 494, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

room temperature, and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine, and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol = 15: 1) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]1-(tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.67 g).



Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 523 of the specification.

Page 523, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 306

To a solution of methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-[(2-methyl-1,3-dioxolan-2-yl)methyl]-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (795.7 mg) in a mixture of THF-methanol (5-5 ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution

Please insert the following paragraph as the second paragraph on page 529 of the specification.

Page 529, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 311

4-morpholinophenyl borate (237 mg) and 7-bromo-1-propyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-

## Version with Markings to Show Changes Made

### In the Specification

Page 2, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

In order to investigate an anti-AIDS drug having CCR5 antagonistic activity, it is necessary to clone CCR5 gene from human tissue derived cDNA library, to ligate said gene with a vector for expression in animal cells, to introduce said gene into animal cells and to obtain cells expressing CCR5. In addition, with using this transformant, it is necessary to screen a compound which strongly inhibits binding of CC chemokine RANTES, natural ligand, to CCR5. However, so far there has been almost no report [on] of a low [molecule] molecular weight compound which has this CCR5 antagonistic activity and is suitable for oral administration. The present invention is to provide a novel anilide derivative which is useful for the treatment or prevention of infectious diseases of HIV and, in particular, AIDS and also which is suitable for oral administration, production and use thereof.

Page 6, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

- (18) The compound as described in the above (17), wherein the alicyclic hydrocarbon group is a lower cycloalkyl group;
- (19) The compound as described in the above (17), wherein the alicyclic hydrocarbon group is cyclohexyl;
- (20) The compound as described in the above (17), wherein the alicyclic heterocyclic group is a saturated alicyclic heterocyclic group;
- (21) The compound as described in the above (17), wherein the alicyclic heterocyclic

group is tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydrothiopyranyl or piperidyl;

(22) The compound as described in the above (17), wherein the alicyclic heterocyclic group is tetrahydropyranyl;

(23) The compound selected from the class consisting of 7-(4- **[ethoxyethoxyphenyl]** **ethoxyethoxyphenyl**) -1-ethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4- **[carbiboamide]** **carboxamide**; 1-ethyl-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide; 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-ethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide; 7-(4-ethoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-

Page 12, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

treatment or **[prebention]** **prevention** of infectious diseases of HIV;

(36) A method for antagonizing a CC chemokine receptor (CCR) in a mammal, which comprises administering an effective amount of a compound described in the above (1) or a salt thereof to a mammal;

(37) Use of a compound described in the above (1) or a salt thereof in preparation of a medicament for antagonizing a CC chemokine receptor (CCR); etc.

Page 14, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

as cyclopropylmethyl, cyclobutylmethyl, **[cyclopentylmethyl]**, **cyclopentylmethyl**, cyclohexylmethyl, cycloheptylmethyl, etc.), and the like.

Page 16, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

pyrazolidine, pyrazoline, piperidine, piperazine, oxazine, oxadiazine, thiazine, **[thiazidine,] thiadiazine**, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyran and tetrahydropyran, as well as non-aromatic **[heterocycle] heterocycles** in which **[a par] some** or **[whole bond(s)] all of the bonds** of the aforementioned **[aromatic] non-aromatic** heterocycle **[is (are) a] are** saturated **[bond] bonds**, and the like (preferably, aromatic **[heterocycle] heterocycles** such as pyrazole, thiazole, oxazole, tetrazole, etc.).

Page 19, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

of the C<sub>3-7</sub> cycloalkyl include cyclopropyl[,], cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, etc. Among others, a straight C<sub>1-6</sub> lower alkyl is preferable and C<sub>1-3</sub> lower alkyl is more preferable. The groups R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> may be the same or different, and preferably the groups R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> are the same. When R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> may bind to each other to form a 5- to 7- membered ring, the groups R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> bind to each other to represent a straight C<sub>2-4</sub> alkylene chain of the formula: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-, etc. Said chain may have a substituent, and examples of the substituent include hydroxy group, halogen, etc.

Page 19, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Examples of the optionally esterified carboxyl group include a carboxyl group and an ester formed by binding a carboxyl group to a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl group or a C<sub>3-7</sub> cycloalkyl group (e.g., methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, propoxycarbonyl, **[isoprpoxy carbonyl,] isopropoxycarbonyl**, butoxycarbonyl, isobutoxycarbonyl, sec-butoxycarbonyl, tert-butoxycarbonyl, pentyloxycarbonyl, hexyloxycarbonyl, etc.).

Page 22, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

methoxymethoxy, methoxyethoxy, ethoxyethoxy, trifluoromethoxyethoxy, trifluoroethoxyethoxy, etc.), formyl, C<sub>2-4</sub> alkanoyl (e.g. acetyl, propionyl, etc.), [C1-4] C<sub>1-4</sub> [alkylsulfonyl] alkylsulfonyl (e.g. methanesulfonyl, ethanesulfonyl, etc.), etc., and the number of [the] substituents [are preferable] is preferably 1 to 3.

Page 31, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, hexyl, octyl, nonyl, decyl, etc., preferably lower (C<sub>1-6</sub>) alkyl, etc.);

(3) an optionally substituted cycloalkyl (e.g. C<sub>3-7</sub> cycloalkyl, etc. such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, etc.);

(4) an optionally substituted alkenyl (e.g., C<sub>2-10</sub> alkenyl such as allyl, crotyl, 2-pentenyl, 3-hexenyl, etc., preferably lower (C<sub>2-6</sub>) alkenyl, etc.);

(5) an optionally substituted cycloalkenyl (e.g. C<sub>3-7</sub> cycloalkenyl, etc. such as 2-cyclopentenyl, 2-cyclohexenyl, 2-cyclopentenylmethyl, 2-cyclohexenylmethyl, etc.);

(6) an optionally substituted 5-to 6-membered monocyclic aromatic group (e.g., phenyl, 5-to 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group (e.g., 5- to 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero-atoms consisting of 1 to 2 kinds of hetero-atoms selected from oxygen atom, sulfur atom and nitrogen atom, such as furyl, thienyl, pyrrolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, thiazolyl, oxazolyl, isothiazolyl, isoxazolyl, tetrazolyl, pyridyl, pyrazyl, [pirimidinyl] pyrimidinyl, pyridazinyl, triazolyl, etc.);

(7) an optionally substituted 5- to 6-membered monocyclic non-aromatic heterocyclic group (e.g., a group which is formed by removing one hydrogen atom from a 5- to 6-

substituted thiol group (e.g., thiol, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylthio, etc.), an optionally substituted amino group (e.g., amino; **[meno] mono** -C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; 5- to 6- membered cyclic amino such as tetrahydropyrrole, piperazine, piperidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyrrole, imidazole, etc.; etc.), an optionally esterified or amidated carboxyl group (e.g. carboxyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl (e.g., trifluoromethyl, methyl, ethyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy (e.g. methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, butoxy, trifluoromethoxy, trifluoroethoxy, etc.), C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylenedioxy (e.g., -O-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-, -O-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-, etc.), optionally substituted sulfonamide [e.g., an optionally substituted amino group (e.g. amino; mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; 5- to 6-membered cyclic amino such as tetrahydropyrrole, piperazine, piperidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyrrole, imidazole, etc.) which is bound to -SO<sub>2</sub>-, etc.], formyl, C<sub>2-4</sub> alkanoyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, etc.), C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylsulfonyl (e.g., methanesulfonyl, ethanesulfonyl, etc.), etc., and the number of the substituents are preferably 1 to 3.

include halogen (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.), nitro, cyano, hydroxy group, an optionally substituted thiol group (e.g., thiol, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylthio, etc.), an optionally substituted amino group (e.g., amino; mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; 5- to 6- membered cyclic amino such as tetrahydropyrrole, piperazine, piperidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyrrole, imidazole, etc.; etc.), an optionally esterified or amidated carboxyl group (e.g., carboxyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxycarbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl carbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, (e.g., trifluoromethyl, methyl, ethyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, butoxy, trifluoromethoxy,

trifluoroethoxy, etc.), formyl, C<sub>2-4</sub> alkanoyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, etc.) C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylsulfonyl (e.g., methanesulfonyl, ethanesulfonyl, etc.), etc., and the number of [the substitutes are] substituents is preferably 1 to 3.

Page 35, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Examples of the optionally amidated carboxyl group as the [substitutes] substituent for R<sup>1</sup> include [an] a carbonyl group binding to “an optionally substituted amino group”, etc. which is the same as that of the above-described “optionally substituted amino group as the substituents for R<sup>1</sup>” and among others, carbamoyl, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, etc. are

Page 38, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

aromatic ring which has a group of the formula: R-Z<sup>1</sup>-X-Z<sup>2</sup>- wherein each symbol is as defined above, and which may have a further substituent” represented by R<sup>1</sup> may have, in addition to the group of the formula: R-Z<sup>1</sup>-X-Z<sup>2</sup>-, include, in particular, a lower (C<sub>1-4</sub>) alkyl optionally substituted with a halogen or a lower (C<sub>1-4</sub>) alkoxy (e.g., methyl, ethyl, t-butyl, trifluoromethyl, methoxymethyl, ethoxymethyl, propoxymethyl, butoxymethyl, methoxyethyl, ethoxyethoxy, propoxyethyl, butoxyethyl, etc.), a lower (C<sub>1-4</sub>) alkoxy optionally substituted with a halogen or a lower (C<sub>1-4</sub>) alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, butoxy, t-butoxy, trifluoromethoxy, methoxymethoxy, ethoxymethoxy, propoxymethoxy, butoxymethoxy, methoxyethoxy, ethoxyethoxy, propoxyethoxy, butoxyethoxy, methoxypropoxy, ethoxypropoxy, propoxypropoxy, butoxypropoxy, etc.), halogen (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, etc.), nitro, cyano, an amino group optionally substituted with 1-2 lower (C<sub>1-4</sub>) alkyl groups, formyl group or lower (C<sub>2-4</sub>) alkanoyl groups (e.g., amino, methylamino, dimethylamino, [fromylamino] formylamino, [acethylamino] acetylamino, etc.), 5- to 6-membered cyclic amino (e.g., 1-pyrrolidinyl, 1-

piperazinyl, 1-piperidinyl, 4-morpholino, 4-thiomorpholino, 1-imidazolyl, 4-tetrahydropyranyl, etc.), etc.

Page 41, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

In the above formula (I), examples of the “optionally substituted aliphatic hydrocarbon group” (aliphatic straight chain hydrocarbon group and aliphatic cyclic hydrocarbon group) represented by R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> include (1) an optionally substituted alkyl (e.g., C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, hexyl, heptyl, octyl, nonyl, decyl, etc., preferably lower (C<sub>1-6</sub>) alkyl, etc.); (2) an optionally substituted cycloalkyl (e.g. C<sub>3-8</sub> cycloalkyl such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, cyclooctyl, etc.; etc.), provided that (2-1) said cycloalkyl may contain one hetero-atom selected from a sulfur atom, an oxygen atom and a nitrogen atom to form oxirane, [thiorane] thiolane, aziridine, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, pyrrolidine, tetrahydropyran, tetrahydrothiopyran, tetrahydrothiopyran-1-oxide, piperidine, etc. (preferably, 6-membered ring

Page 47, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

As the compound represented by the above formula (I), 7-(4-ethoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-ethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide; 1-ethyl-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide; 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-ethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide; 7-(4-ethoxythoxyphenyl) ethoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide; 1-formyl-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-



(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide; 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide; 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-propyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide; N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-

Page 54, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

antioxidant, a colorant, a sweetener, etc. may be used. Suitable examples of the excipient include lactose, sucrose, D-mannitol, starch, crystalline cellulose, light silicic acid anhydride, etc. Suitable examples of the lubricant include magnesium stearate, calcium stearate, talc, colloidal silica, etc. Suitable examples of the binder include crystalline cellulose, sucrose, D-mannitol, dextrin, hydroxypropyl cellulose, hydroxypropylmethyl cellulose, polyvinyl-pyrrolidone, etc. Suitable examples of the disintegrating agent include starch, carboxymethyl cellulose, carboxymethyl cellulose calcium, croscarmellose sodium, sodium carboxymethyl starch, etc. Suitable examples of the solvent include water for injection, alcohol, propylene glycol, macrogol, sesame oil, corn oil, etc. Suitable examples of the solubilizer include polyethylene glycol, propylene glycol, D-mannitol, benzyl benzoate, ethanol, trisaminomethane, cholesterol, triethanolamine, sodium carbonate, sodium citrate, etc. Suitable examples of the suspending agent include surfactants such as stearyl triethanolamine, sodium laurylsulfate, laurylaminopropionic acid, lecithin, benzalkonium chloride, **[benzetonium] benzethonium** chloride, glycerin monostearate, etc.; hydrophilic polymers such as polyvinylalcohol, polyvinylpyrrolidone, sodium carboxymethyl cellulose, methyl cellulose, hydroxymethyl

Page 55, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

cellulose, hydroxyethyl cellulose, hydroxypropyl cellulose, etc. Suitable examples of the isotonizing agent include sodium chloride, glycerin, D-mannitol, etc. Suitable examples of the buffer include a buffer solution of phosphate, acetate, carbonate, citrate, etc. Suitable examples of the soothing agent include [benzylacohol,] benzylalcohol, etc. Suitable examples of the preservative include [paraoxybenzoic] p-hydroxybenzoic acid esters, chlorobutanol, benzylalcohol, phenethylalcohol, dehydroacetic acid, sorbic acid, etc. Suitable examples of the antioxidant include sulfites, ascorbic acid, etc.

Page 61, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

(1) Compound (I) can be produced by reacting Compound (I-1) or (I-2) with halogenated alkyl or halogenated aralkyl. Examples of a halogen atom include chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc. and usually about 1 to 2 moles of the halogenated alkyl or halogenated aralkyl is used per mole of Compound (I-1) or (I-2). If necessary, the reaction smoothly proceeds by addition of about [once] equal to [thrice] three-fold moles of a base such as triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, pyridine, lithium hydride, sodium

Page 64, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Compound (I) having a tertiary amino group can be produced by reacting Compound (IV) and a secondary amine compound. Usually, about 1 to 3 moles of the secondary amine compound is used per mole of Compound (IV). If necessary, the reaction smoothly proceeds by addition of about [once] equal to [thrice] three-fold moles of a base such as triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, pyridine, lithium hydride, sodium hydride, sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, sodium hydrogen carbonate and further sodium iodide, potassium iodide, etc. This substitution reaction is carried out in an inert solvent

such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, isopropanol, n-butanol, tetrahydrofuran, diethyl ether, dimethoxyethane, 1,4-dioxane, toluene, benzene, xylene, **[dichloromethane.] dichloromethane**, chloroform, 1,2-dichloroethane, dimethylformamide (DMF), dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO), pyridine, etc., or a mixture of these solvents. The reaction temperature is generally about -10 °C to about 180 °C, and the reaction time is generally about 1 hour to about 40 hours. The reaction is carried out preferably under inert gas (e.g. nitrogen, argon, etc.) atmosphere.

[Method D]

Page 71, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

The **[thus resulted] resultant** Compound (II) or (III) can be separated and purified with **[know] known** separation and purification methods such as concentration, concentration under reduced pressure, extraction, crystallization, solvent conversion, chromatography, etc.

Page 75, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

When the compound of the formula (I) or a salt thereof is used in combination with a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and/or a protease inhibitor[. **The] ,the** dose of the reverse transcriptase inhibitor or the protease inhibitor ranges, for example, from about 1/200-1/2 or more of **the** usual dose to about 2-3 times or less of **the** usual dose. In case that two or more drugs are used in combination, each dose of the drugs is appropriately adjusted if one drug affects metabolism of the other drug, while each dose of the drugs when they are used in combination is generally the same as the dose when they are used alone.

Page 79, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

flask (Becton Dickinson) using Ham's F12 medium (Nihon Pharmaceutical) containing 10% fetal calf serum (Life Tech Oriental) and **[took] taken** off with 0.5 g/L trypsin-0.2g/L EDTA

(Life Tech Oriental). The cells were washed with PBS (Life Tech Oriental), centrifuged (1000 rpm, 5 minutes), and suspended in PBS. With using Gene Pulser (Bio-Rad Laboratories), DNA was introduced into the cells under the conditions shown below. That is, to the cuvette of 0.4 cm gap were added  $8 \times 10^6$  cells and 10  $\mu$ g of plasmid pCKR5 for expression of human CCR5, and electroporation was carried out under 0.25 kV of voltage and 960  $\mu$ F of capacitance. The cells were transferred into Ham's F12 medium containing 10% fetal calf serum, and cultivated for 24 hours. The cells were again **[took] taken** off and centrifuged, and suspended in Ham's F12 medium containing 10% fetal calf serum and 500  $\mu$ g/ml of geneticin (Life Tech Oriental). The suspension was diluted to give 104 cells/ml of the suspension, which was inoculated on a 96 well plate (Becton Dickinson) to give geneticin resistant cells.

Page 83, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

potassium **[ferricyanade] ferricyanide**, 2  $\mu$ M  $MgCl_2$  and 0.4 mg/ml X-gal), and the mixture was allowed to stand at 37 °C for 50 minutes and washed twice with PBS. The number of blue cells was counted by a microscope and defined as the number of cells infected with HIV-1. According to this method, inhibition rate **[on] of** HIV-1 infection was determined. The results are shown in Table 2.

Page 90, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

In DMF (12 ml) was suspended 7-(4- **[exthophenyl] ethoxyphenyl** )-1-methanesulfonyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.13 g). To the suspension was added, under ice-cooling, thionyl chloride (0.04 ml) and DMF (catalytic amount), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and the residue was dissolved in THF (15 ml). The solution was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.08 g) and triethylamine (0.14 ml)

in THF (5 ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from ethyl acetate/hexane to give 7-(4-ethoxyphenyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (0.16 g) as colorless crystals.

Page 98, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 11

In water: ethanol: toluene (1:1: 10, v/v, 18.0 ml) were dissolved **[4-propoxyphenyl] 4-propoxyphenyl** borate (203 mg) and 7-bromo-1-methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (455 mg). To the solution was added potassium carbonate (312 mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenyl)phosphinepalladium

Page 103, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

the mixture was stirred at room temperature for **[I] 1** hour. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and to the residue was added THF (10.0 ml). On the other hand, to 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline dihydrochloride (158 mg) was added THF (10.0 ml), and then was added triethylamine (0.47 ml). To the obtained mixture was added dropwise at 0 °C the previously prepared acid chloride suspension, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. To the mixture was added ethyl acetate, and the mixture was

washed with water, 1N sodium hydroxide solution, water and saturated brine. The organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (15 g, ethyl acetate → ethyl acetate: ethanol: triethylamine = 100: 10: 1), and recrystallized from ethanol to give 7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-1-methylsulfonyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (140 mg, 51 %) as white crystals.

Page 106, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

bromobutyrate (82 ml). The mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at 85 °C for 24 hours, and to the mixture was added potassium t-butoxide (70 g) under ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred at 85 °C for 1.5 hours, and the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added ice-water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give ethyl (methyl) 7-bromo-5-hydroxy-1-tosyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-[carb oxylate] carboxylate (mixture) (153 g) as white crystals.

Page 111, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 22

To anhydrous acetic acid (0.84 ml) was added dropwise formic acid (0.4 ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred, under nitrogen atmosphere, at 50 °C for 2 hours. To the mixture was added THF (5 ml), and to the mixture was added dropwise, under ice-cooling, a solution of methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4- [carboxy late] carboxylate (1.0 g) in THF (15 ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The solvent was

evaporated, and to the residue was added water. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, water [an] and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give methyl 7-bromo-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.07 g) as colorless crystals.

Page 133, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 46

In methanol (25 ml) and THF (25 ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1- [benzaz epine] benzazepine -4-carboxylate (0.23 g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (5 ml), and the mixture was stirred at 55 °C for 1.5 hours and concentrated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was neutralized [with1IN] with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.24 g) as colorless amorphous.

Page 154, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 68

In a mixture of THF and ethanol (1:1, v/v, 10.0 ml) was dissolved [methyl1] methyl 1-acetyl-7-[4-(4-morpholino)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (394 mg). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (3.0 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours. To the mixture was added 1N hydrochloric acid to convert to a weakly acidic solution, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to

give 1-acetyl-7-[4-(4-morpholino)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (372 mg, 98%) as pale yellow crystals.

Page 157, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

100183331-121101  
mixture was heated to reflux under argon atmosphere for 14.5 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (75 g, hexane: ethyl acetate = 3 : 1) to give methyl 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-7-(4- **[ropoxyphenyl]** **propoxyphenyl**)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate as yellow amorphous. The obtained methyl 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate was dissolved in ethyl acetate (80 ml). To the solution was added 6N hydrochloric acid (20 ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at 100°C for 30 minutes and neutralized with 1N sodium hydroxide and saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution. The separated organic layer was washed with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give crystals, which were washed with ethyl acetate/hexane to give methyl 7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (947 mg) as yellow crystals. The mother liquor was concentrated, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (15 g, hexane:ethyl



the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (75 g, hexane: ethyl acetate = 4:1) to give methyl 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-2,3- [dihydro] dihydro -1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate as yellow amorphous. The obtained methyl 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-[7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-]7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-2,3- [dihydro] dihydro -1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate was dissolved in ethyl acetate (80 ml). To the solution was added 1N hydrochloric acid (15 ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at 100 °C for 1 hour and neutralized with 1N sodium hydroxide and saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution. To the mixture was added ethyl acetate, and the separated organic layer was washed with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (50 g, hexane: ethyl acetate = 9: 1 → 4:1 → 2: 1) to give methyl 7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1007 mg, 86 %) as yellow crystals.

Working Example 1 (Production of Compound 1)

In DMF (10 ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine 4-carboxylic acid (0.18 g). To the solution was added, under ice-cooling, thionyl chloride (0.09 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and the residue was dissolved in THF (20 ml). The solution was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-

yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.12 g) and triethylamine (0.33 ml) in THF (10 ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from ethyl acetate/hexane to give 7-[4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4- **[carboxalide] carboxamide** (Compound 1) (0.23g) as colorless crystals.

Page 191, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and the residue was dissolved in THF (25 ml). The solution was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-( **[tetrayhydro] tetrahydro** -3H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.15 g), and triethylamine (0.4 ml) in THF (5 ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from ethanol to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-N-[[4-[(N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino)methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 3) (0.23 g) as colorless crystals.

Page 197, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Working Example 8 (Production of Compound 8)

In THF (5 ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(3-ethoxypropoxy)phenyl]-1-methanesulfonyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.20 g). To the solution were added, under ice-cooling, thionyl chloride (0.06 ml) and DMF (catalytic amount), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and the **[residual] residue** was dissolved in THF (15 ml). The solution was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.11 g) and triethylamine (0.19 ml) in THF (5 ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture was

Page 203, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Working Example 12 (Production of Compound 12)

In a mixture of water: ethanol: toluene (1: 1: 10, v/v, 18.0 ml) were dissolved 4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (242 mg) and 7-bromo-1-methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4- **[carboxarnide]** **carboxamide** (436 mg). To the solution was added potassium carbonate (299 mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenyl)phosphinepalladium (42 mg), and the mixture was heated to reflux under argon atmosphere for 10 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (30 g, ethyl acetate: ethanol: **[triethylalnine]** **triethylamine** = 180: 20: 1) and recrystallized from ethanol/hexane to give 1-methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-

dihydro-1H-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 12) (186 mg, 35%) as yellow crystals.

Page 206, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

room temperature for 30 minutes. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and to the residue was added THF (15.0 ml). On the other hand, to 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline dihydrochloride (337 mg) was added THF (10.0 ml), and then was added triethylamine (1.00 ml). To the obtained mixture was added dropwise at 0 °C the previously prepared acid chloride suspension, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 15 hours. To the mixture was added ethyl acetate, and the mixture was washed with water and saturated brine. The organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (35 g, ethyl acetate → ethyl acetate: ethanol = 10: 1 → ethyl acetate: ethanol: triethylamine = 100: 10: 1) and recrystallized from ethanol to give 1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-[4-(2-propoxy)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4- [~~carboxarnide~~] carboxamide (Compound 14) (459 mg, 80 %) as white crystals.

Page 212, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (440 mg). To the solution was added potassium carbonate (301 mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (42 mg), and the mixture was refluxed under argon atmosphere for 10 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (30 g, ethyl acetate → ethyl acetate:

ethanol = 10: 1 → ethyl acetate: ethanol: triethylamine = 100: 10: 0.5) and recrystallized from ethyl acetate/IPE to give 7-[4-(2- **[butoxyethoxy]** butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 18) (287 mg, 53 %) as yellow crystals.

Page 216, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Working Example 21 (Production of Compound 21)

In a mixture of water: ethanol: toluene (1: 1: 10, v/v, 18.0 ml) were dissolved 3-chloro-4-(2-ethoxy)ethoxyphenyl borate (280 mg) and 7-bromo-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (380 mg). To the solution was added potassium carbonate (253 mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added **[tetrakis(triphenyl)phosphine]palladium** tetrakis(triphenyl)phosphinepalladium (35 mg) , and the mixture was heated to reflux under argon atmosphere for 10 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (25 g, ethyl acetate → ethyl acetate: ethanol = 10: 1 → ethyl acetate: ethanol: **[triethylamine]** triethylamine = 100 : 10: 0.5) and recrystallized from ethanol to give 7-[3-chloro-4-(2-ethoxy)ethoxyphenyl]-1-

Page 228, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Working Example 30 (Production of Compound 30)

In DMF (6 ml) was dissolved 1-butyl-7-[4-( **[2-propoxyethoxy]** 2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.30 g). Under ice-cooling, to the mixture was added thionyl chloride (0.15 ml). The mixture was stirred at

room temperature for 30 minutes. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. In THF (20 ml) was suspended the residue, and the suspension was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-

Page 231, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Working Example 32 (Production of Compound 32)

In DMF (4 ml) was dissolved 1-benzyl-7-[4-( **[2-propoxyethoxy]** **2-propoxyethoxy** )phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.15 g). Under ice-cooling, to the mixture was added thionyl chloride (0.06 ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. In THF (25 ml) was dissolved the residue, **and then** the solution was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.09 g) and triethylamine (0.23 ml) in THF (10 ml), under ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight under nitrogen atmosphere. The solvent was evaporated under reduced **[solvent] pressure**. Water was added to the mixture, **and then** the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was

Page 255, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 99

In methanol (25 ml) and THF (25 ml) was dissolved methyl 1-propionyl-7-( **[2-propoxyethoxy]** **2-propoxyethoxy** )-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.2 g), and to the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (5 ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight, concentrated[.] , **and then** neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and

dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give 1-propionyl-7-(2-propoxyethoxy)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.2 g) as colorless crystals.

Page 263, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 109

In [methnol] methanol (10 ml) and THF (10 ml) was dissolved methyl 1-benzyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.27 g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (10 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight

Page 265, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 111

In [methnol] methanol (25 ml) and THF (25 ml) was dissolved methyl 1-benzyl-7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.49 g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (10 ml), and the mixture was heated at 50 °C overnight and concentrated, [which was] then neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give 1-benzyl-7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.47 g) as yellow crystals.

Page 343, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Working Example 81 (Production of Compound 81)

A catalytic amount of N,N-dimethyl-4-aminopyridine was added to a solution of 7-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(4-methylthiazol-5-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic

acid (150 mg), 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (88 mg) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (96 mg) in DMF (15 ml), followed by addition of 1-ethyl-3-(3-**[dimethylaminopropylcarbodiimide]** dimethylaminopropylcarbodiimide (137 mg). The mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. To the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl **[acetated]** acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol: ethyl acetate = 1:3) to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-[(4-methylthiazol-5-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 81) (7 mg) as yellow amorphous.

Page 351, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 153

To a solution of methyl 7-(**[propoxyethoxyphenyl]** propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (300 mg) and 2-methoxybenzaldehyde (535 mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane (10 ml) was added sodium triacetoxyborohydride (749 mg), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. Then, water was added thereto and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane: ethyl acetate = 3:1) to give methyl (1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (394 mg) as yellow oil.



Page 355, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 157

To a suspension of 60% sodium hydride (0.23 g) in tetrahydrofuran (5 ml) which had been washed with hexane three times was added dropwise a solution of methyl 7- **[buromo] bromo** -2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.80 g) in tetrahydrofuran (10 ml) under nitrogen atmosphere at 0 °C. The temperature was returned to room temperature and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour. Then, to the mixture was added dropwise a solution of 3-methoxybenzyl bromide (2.29 g) in tetrahydrofuran (5 ml) at 0 °C. The temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 3 days. To the mixture were added ethyl acetate and water, and the mixture was separated. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane: ethyl acetate = 5: 1) to give methyl 7-bromo-1-(3-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.69 g) as yellow oil.

Page 393, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

water at 0 °C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to **[neutral] neutralize**, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(1- **[mehylpyrazol] methylpyrazol** -4-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (239 mg) as yellow crystals.

Page 412, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 223

To a solution of methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4- **[carobxylate]** **carboxylate** (200 mg) and pyridine (123 mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10 ml) was added 2- **[thenoyl]** **thienyl** chloride (208 **[gmng] mg**) at 0 °C, and the mixture was heated at 78 °C overnight. After allowing to cool, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated, which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give methyl 7-bromo-1-(2-thienylcarbonyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (236 mg) as colorless crystals.

Page 424, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 236

In toluene (100 ml), ethanol (10 ml) and water (10 ml) were suspended methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4- **[caroxyalte]** **carboxylate** (3.0 g), 4-propoxyethoxyphenyl borate (3.1 g) and potassium carbonate (3.8 g), and the suspension was stirred for 30 minutes under argon atmosphere. Then, to the suspension was added **[tetrakistriphenylphosphinepalldium]** **tetrakistriphenylphosphinepalladium** (860 mg), and the mixture was heated at 100 °C for 8 hours under argon atmosphere. After allowing to cool, water was added thereto, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane: ethyl acetate = 3: 1) to give the solid, which was washed with hexane to give methyl 7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (2.59 g) as yellow crystals.

Page 425, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 237

In toluene (200 ml) and ethanol (35 ml) were suspended methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (5.0 g), 4- [butoethoxyphenyl] butoxyethoxyphenyl borate (4.6 g) and 1M potassium carbonate solution (35 ml), and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes under argon atmosphere. Then, to the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenyl)phosphinepalladium (1 g), and the mixture was heated at 100 °C overnight under argon atmosphere. After allowing to cool, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane: ethyl acetate = 4:1) to give the solid, which was washed with hexane to give methyl 7- (4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4- **[carboxyalte]** carboxylate (5.7 g) as yellow crystals.

Page 430, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 243

In toluene (15 ml), ethanol (1.5 ml) and water (1.5 ml) were suspended methyl 7-bromo-[(1-ethylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4- **[caroxyalte]** carboxylate (550 mg), 4-propoxyethoxyphenyl borate (320 mg) and potassium carbonate (506 mg), and the suspension was stirred for 30 minutes under argon atmosphere. Then, to the suspension was added tetrakis(triphenyl)phosphinepalladium (81 mg), and the mixture was heated at 100 °C for 6 hours under argon atmosphere. After allowing to cool, water was added thereto, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane: ethyl acetate = 1:1) to give

methyl 1-[(1-ethylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (370 mg) as yellow oil.

Page 432, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

In methanol (25 ml) and THF (10 ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[(4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl)-1-(2- **[methythiazol]** **methylthiazol** -4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.17 g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (4 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight, heated at 60 °C for 5 hours, concentrated, neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-methylthiazol-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.12 g) as yellow crystals.

Page 436, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 249

In toluene/ethanol/water (=10/1/1, 41 ml) was dissolved methyl 7-bromo-1-isobutyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4- **[caroxylate]** **carboxylate** (0.90 g). To the solution were added 4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (0.72 g) and potassium carbonate (0.81 g) and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes under argon atmosphere. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (123 mg) and the mixture was heated to reflux for 14 hours. After **[cooled]** **cooling** to room temperature, the solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine, and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under

Page 494, paragraph 1 (AMENDED)

room temperature, and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine, and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol = 15: 1) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]1-(tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.67 g).

Page 523, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 306

To a solution of methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-[(2-methyl-1,3-dioxolan-2-yl)methyl]-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (795.7 mg) in a mixture of THF-methanol (5-5 ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution

Page 529, paragraph 2 (AMENDED)

Reference Example 311

4-morpholinophenyl borate (237 mg) and 7-bromo-1-propyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran) tetrahydropyran]-4-

## REMARKS

### I. Amendments

The specification has been amended to correct minor typographical and grammatical errors. For the sake of brevity, characterization data (mp, NMR shift values) was not included at the end of paragraphs related to experimental data. It is intended that the experimental data remain in the application. These changes introduce no new matter into the specification.

Attached hereto is a marked-up version of the changes made to the claims by the current amendment. The attached pages are captioned "Version with Markings to Show Changes Made".

No change in inventorship is necessitated by the amendments.

### II. Conclusion

Consideration of the claims is solicited. Should the Examiner believe that a conference with Applicants' Attorney would advance prosecution of this application, the Examiner is respectfully requested to call Applicants' Attorney.

Respectfully submitted,

Dated: January 24, 2002

Elaine M. Ramesh

(847) 383-3391  
(847) 383-3372

Elaine M. Ramesh, Ph.D., Reg. No. 43,032  
Mark Chao, Ph.D., Reg. No. 37,293

Attorney for Applicants  
Customer No. 23,115

Takeda Pharmaceuticals North America, Inc.  
Intellectual Property Department  
Suite 500, 475 Half Day Road  
Lincolnshire, IL 60069 USA

**Certificate of Mailing under 37 CFR 1.10**

The undersigned hereby certifies that this document, along with any attachments, is being deposited in an envelope addressed to The Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, with sufficient postage with the United States Postal Service EXPRESS MAIL Post Office to Addressee Service on this date January 24, 2002.

Express Mail Label No. EL 916492611US

Gail L. Winokur

Printed Name: Gail L. Winokur

10018331-1-1001

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Application No.:	unassigned	Art Unit:	unassigned
Filed:	December 12, 2001	Examiner:	unassigned
1 <sup>st</sup> Inventor:	M. Shiraishi	Allowed:	
For:	Benzazepine Derivative, Production and Use Thereof	Batch:	
Atty. Dkt. No.	2614 USOP	Paper No.:	1

**PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT**

Commissioner for Patents  
Washington, D.C. 20231

Dear Sir:

In connection with the filing of the above-identified U.S. national phase application, please consider the following amendment and remarks.

**AMENDMENT**

**In the Specification**

Please insert the following paragraph as the first paragraph on page 1 of the specification.

Page 1, paragraph 1 (NEW)

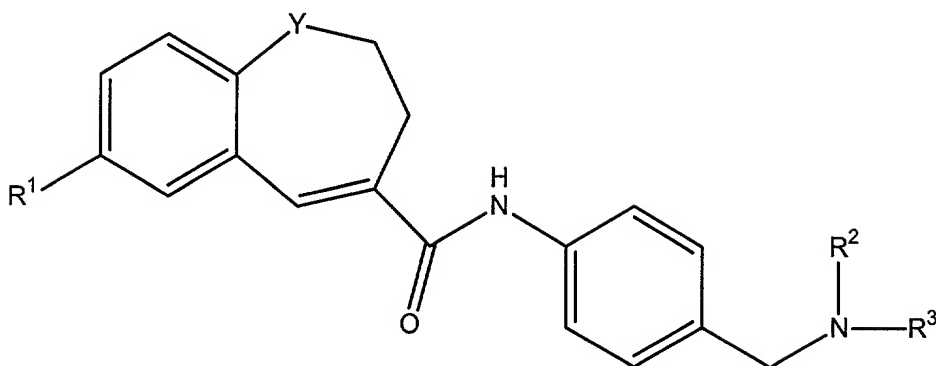
This application is the National Stage of International Application No. PCT/JP00/03879, filed on June 15, 2000.

**In the Claims**

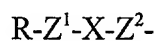
Please substitute the following claims 1, 4, 5, 6-8, 10, 12-17, 23, 25, 26, 29, 30, 35 and 37 for the claims 1, 4, 5, 6-8, 10, 12-17, 23, 25, 26, 29, 30, 35 and 37 now pending in the above-identified application.



1. A compound of the formula (I):



wherein R<sup>1</sup> is a 5- to 6- membered aromatic ring which has a group of the formula:



wherein R is a hydrogen atom or a substituted or unsubstituted hydrocarbon group,

X is a substituted or unsubstituted alkylene chain, and

Z<sup>1</sup> and Z<sup>2</sup> are respectively hetero-atoms, and which may have a further substituent,

the group R may bind to the 5- to 6- membered aromatic ring to form a ring,

Y is a substituted or unsubstituted imino group,

R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> are respectively a substituted or unsubstituted aliphatic hydrocarbon group or a substituted or unsubstituted alicyclic heterocyclic group;

or a salt thereof.

4. The compound according to claim 1, wherein the 5- to 6-membered aromatic ring is benzene.

5. The compound according to claim 1, wherein R is a halogenated or unhalogenated lower alkyl group.

6. The compound according to claim 1, wherein X is  $-(CH_2)_n-$

wherein n is an integer of 1-4.

7. The compound according to claim 1, wherein  $Z^1$  and  $Z^2$  are respectively  $-O-$ ,  $-S(O)_m-$

wherein m is an integer of 0-2 or  $-N(R^4)-$

wherein  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom or an optionally substituted lower alkyl group.

8. The compound according to claim 1, wherein  $Z^1$  is  $-O-$  or  $-S(O)_m-$

wherein m is an integer of 0-2.

10. The compound according to claim 1, wherein  $Z^2$  is  $-O-$  or  $-N(R^4)-$

wherein  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom or a substituted or unsubstituted lower alkyl group.

12. The compound according to claim 1, wherein Y is  $-N(R^5)-$

wherein  $R^5$  is a hydrogen atom, a substituted or unsubstituted hydrocarbon group or a substituted or unsubstituted acyl group.

13. The compound according to claim 12, wherein  $R^5$  is  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl, formyl or  $C_{2-5}$  alkanoyl.

14. The compound according to claim 12, wherein  $R^5$  is a group represented by the formula  $-(CH_2)_k-R^6$ ; wherein k is 0 or 1, and  $R^6$  is a substituted or unsubstituted 5- to 6- membered monocyclic aromatic group.

15. The compound according to claim 1, wherein  $R^2$  is a substituted or unsubstituted straight

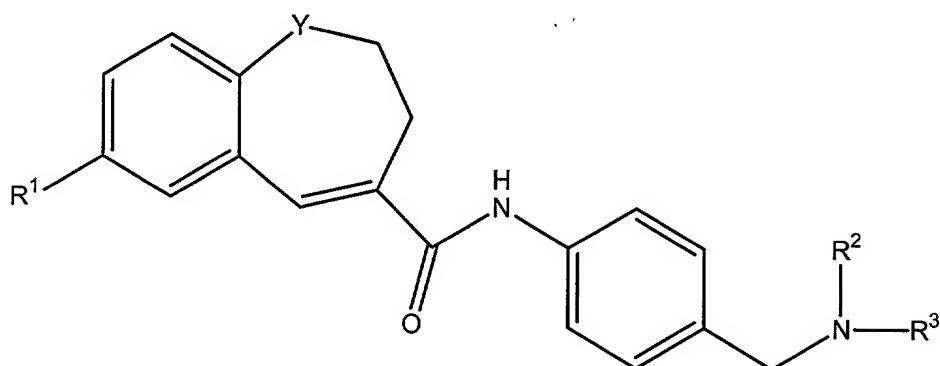
chain hydrocarbon group.

16. The compound according to claim 1, wherein  $R^2$  is an optionally substituted lower alkyl group.
17. The compound according to claim 1, wherein  $R^3$  is a substituted or unsubstituted alicyclic hydrocarbon group or a substituted or unsubstituted alicyclic heterocyclic group.
23. A compound selected from the group consisting of 7-(4-ethoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-ethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 1-ethyl-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-ethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-ethoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 1-formyl-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-propyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-propyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 1-benzyl-7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-cyclopropylmethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-

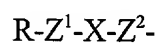


1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide and salts thereof.

25. A method for producing a compound of the formula I:



wherein R<sup>1</sup> is a 5- to 6- membered aromatic ring which has a group of the formula:



wherein R is a hydrogen atom or a substituted or unsubstituted hydrocarbon group,

X is a substituted or unsubstituted alkylene chain, and

Z<sup>1</sup> and Z<sup>2</sup> are respectively hetero-atoms, and which may have a further substituent,

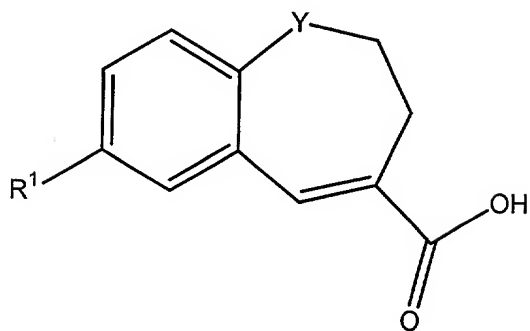
the group R may bind to the 5- to 6- membered aromatic ring to form a ring,

Y is a substituted or unsubstituted imino group,

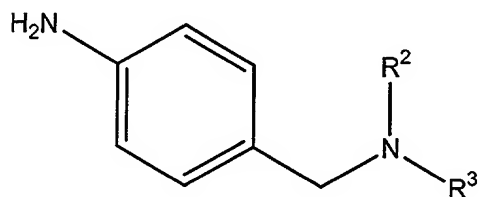
R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> are respectively a substituted or unsubstituted aliphatic hydrocarbon group or a substituted or unsubstituted alicyclic heterocyclic group;

or a salt thereof, which comprises subjecting a

compound of the formula:



wherein R<sup>1</sup> and Y are as defined above, a salt or reactive derivative thereof to a condensation reaction with a compound of the formula:



wherein R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> are as defined above, or a salt thereof;

and then optionally isolating said compound of formula I or a salt thereof.

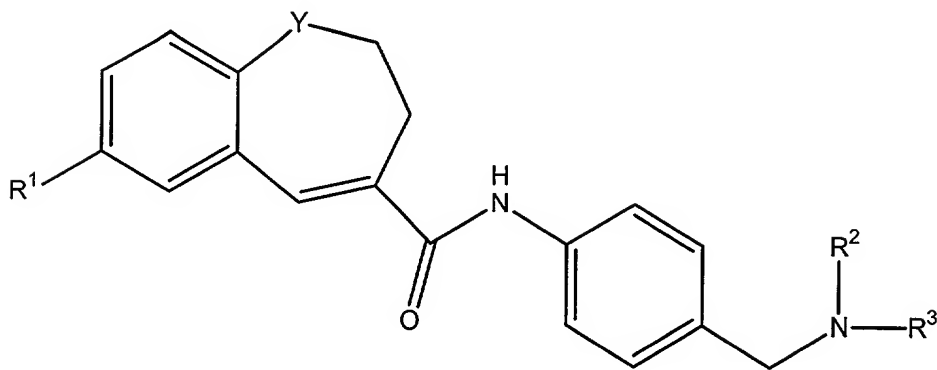
26. A pharmaceutical composition which comprises the compound according to claim 1 or a salt thereof and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, excipient, binder or diluent.
29. The composition according to claim 26, which is for the treatment of infectious diseases of HIV.
30. The composition according to claim 26, which for the treatment of AIDS.
35. A method for treating infectious diseases of HIV comprising administering
- a pharmaceutically effective amount of a compound of claim 1 or a salt thereof
- in combination with a protease inhibitor, a reverse transcriptase inhibitor or a combination thereof

to a mammal in need thereof.

37. A method for treating AIDS comprising administering a pharmaceutically effective amount of a compound of claim 1 or a salt thereof to a mammal in need thereof.

# Version with Markings to Show Changes Made

1. A compound of the formula (I):



wherein R<sup>1</sup> is a 5- to 6- membered aromatic ring which has a group of the formula: R-Z<sup>1</sup>-X-Z<sup>2</sup>- wherein R is a hydrogen atom or **[an optionally substituted] a substituted or unsubstituted** hydrocarbon group, X is **[an optionally substituted ] a substituted or unsubstituted** alkylene chain, and Z<sup>1</sup> and Z<sup>2</sup> are respectively hetero-atoms, and which may have a further substituent, the group R may bind to the 5- to 6- membered aromatic ring to form a ring, Y is **[an optionally substituted] a substituted or unsubstituted** imino group, R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> are respectively **[an optionally substituted] a substituted or unsubstituted** aliphatic hydrocarbon group or **[an optionally substituted] a substituted or unsubstituted** alicyclic heterocyclic group; or a salt thereof.

4. The compound according to claim 1, wherein the 5- to 6-membered aromatic ring is benzene[;].
5. The compound according to claim 1, wherein R is **[an optionally halogenated] halogenated or unhalogenated** lower alkyl group.
6. The compound according to claim 1, wherein X is -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>- **[(] wherein n is an integer of 1-**



4)].

7. The compound according to claim 1, wherein  $Z^1$  and  $Z^2$  are respectively  $-O-$ ,  $-S(O)_m-$  [(**wherein**  $m$  is an integer of 0-2)] or  $-N(R^4)-$  [(**wherein**  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom or [an optionally substituted] a substituted or unsubstituted lower alkyl group)].

8. The compound according to claim 1, wherein  $Z^1$  is  $-O-$  or  $-S(O)_m-$  [(**wherein**  $m$  is an integer of 0-2)].

10. The compound according to claim 1, wherein  $Z^2$  is  $-O-$  or  $-N(R^4)-$  [(**wherein**  $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom or [an optionally substituted] a substituted or unsubstituted lower alkyl group)].

12. The compound according to claim 1, wherein  $Y$  is  $-N(R^5)-$  [(**wherein**  $R^5$  is a hydrogen atom, [an optionally substituted] a substituted or unsubstituted hydrocarbon group or [an optionally substituted] a substituted or unsubstituted acyl group)].

13. The compound according to claim 12, wherein [( $R^5$ )] is  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl, formyl or  $C_{2-5}$  alkanoyl.

14. The compound according to claim 12, wherein  $R^5$  is a group represented by the formula

$-(CH_2)_k-R^6[:]$ ; wherein  $k$  is 0 or 1, and  $R^6$  is [an optionally substituted] a substituted or unsubstituted 5- to 6- membered monocyclic aromatic group.

15. The compound according to claim 1, wherein  $R^2$  is [an optionally substituted] a substituted or unsubstituted straight chain hydrocarbon group.

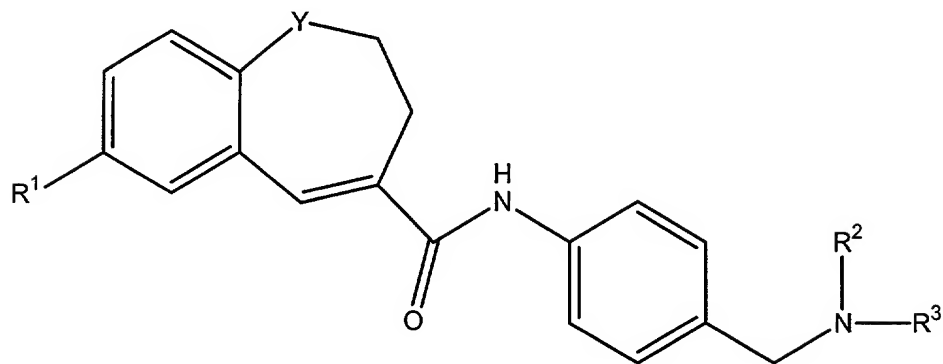
16. The compound according to claim 1, wherein  $R^2$  is [an optionally substituted] a substituted or unsubstituted lower alkyl group.

17. The compound according to claim 1, wherein R<sup>3</sup> is **[an optionally substituted] a substituted or unsubstituted** alicyclic hydrocarbon group or **[an optionally substituted] a substituted or unsubstituted** alicyclic heterocyclic group.

23. A compound selected from the **[class] group** consisting of 7-(4-[ethoxyethoxyphenyl]  
**ethoxyethoxyphenyl**)-1-ethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4- **[carbiboamide] carboxamide**, 1-ethyl-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-ethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-ethoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 1-formyl-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-propyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-propyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 1-benzyl-7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-cyclopropylmethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-phenyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3,4-

methylenedioxy)phenyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-methyloxazol-5-yl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 1-allyl-7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(3-thienyl)methyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(thiazol-2-yl)methyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(1-methylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-methylisothiazol-4-yl)methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(1-ethylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-isobutyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 1-isobutyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(thiazol-5-yl)methyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(1-methyltetrazol-5-yl)methyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, [and] 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(2-methyltetrazol-5-yl)methyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide[, or salt] and salts thereof.

25. A method for producing a compound of the formula **I**:

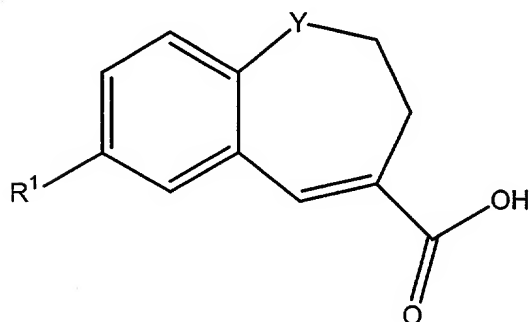


[wherein each symbol is as defined in claim 1,]

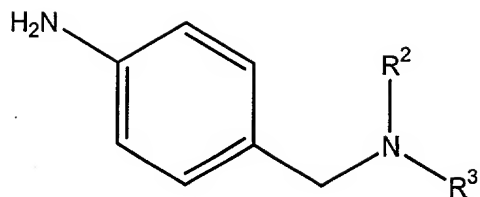
wherein  $R^1$  is a 5- to 6- membered aromatic ring which has a group of the formula:  $R-Z^1-X-Z^2$ - wherein R is a hydrogen atom or a substituted or unsubstituted hydrocarbon group, X is a substituted or unsubstituted alkylene chain, and  $Z^1$  and  $Z^2$  are respectively hetero-atoms, and which may have a further substituent, the group R may bind to the 5- to 6-membered aromatic ring to form a ring, Y is a substituted or unsubstituted imino group,  $R^2$  and  $R^3$  are respectively a substituted or unsubstituted aliphatic hydrocarbon group or a substituted or unsubstituted alicyclic heterocyclic group;

or a salt thereof, which comprises subjecting a

compound of the formula:



wherein [each symbol is as defined in claim 1,]  $R^1$  and Y are as defined above, a salt or reactive derivative thereof to a condensation reaction with a compound of the formula:



wherein [each symbol is as defined in claim 1] R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> are as defined above, or a salt thereof;

and then optionally isolating said compound of formula I or a salt thereof.

26. A pharmaceutical composition which comprises the compound according to claim 1 or a salt thereof and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, excipient, binder or diluent.

29. The composition according to claim 26, which is for the treatment [or prevention] of infectious [disease] diseases of HIV.

30. The composition according to claim 26, which for the treatment [or prevention] of AIDS.

35. A method for treating infectious diseases of HIV comprising administering a pharmaceutically effective amount of a compound of [Use of the compound according to] claim 1 or a salt thereof in combination with a protease inhibitor, [and/or] a reverse transcriptase inhibitor or a combination thereof to a mammal in need thereof [for the treatment or prebention of infectious disease of HIV].

37. [Use of a compound according to] A method for treating AIDS comprising administering a pharmaceutically effective amount of a compound of claim 1 or a salt thereof to a mammal in need thereof [in preparation of a medicament for antagonizing a CC chemokine receptor].

## REMARKS

### I. Amendments

Claims 1, 4, 5, 6-8, 10, 12-17, 23, 25, 26, 29, 30, 35 and 37 have also been modified to conform them to U.S. patent practice. These changes introduce no new matter into the specification.

The specification has also been amended to reflect the priority application.

Attached hereto is a marked-up version of the changes made to the claims by the current amendment. The attached pages are captioned "Version with Markings to Show Changes Made".

No change in inventorship is necessitated by the amendments.

### II. Conclusion

Consideration of the claims as amended is solicited. Should the Examiner believe that a conference with Applicants' Attorney would advance prosecution of this application, the Examiner is respectfully requested to call Applicants' Attorney.

Respectfully submitted,

Dated: December 12, 2001

Elaine M Ramesh

(847) 383-3391  
(847) 383-3372

Elaine M. Ramesh, Ph.D., Reg. No. 43,032  
Mark Chao, Ph.D., Reg. No. 37,293

Attorney for Applicants  
Customer No. 23,115

Takeda Pharmaceuticals North America, Inc.  
Intellectual Property Department  
Suite 500, 475 Half Day Road  
Lincolnshire, IL 60069 USA

(19) 世界知的所有権機関  
国際事務局



(43) 国際公開日  
2000年12月21日 (21.12.2000)

PCT

(10) 国際公開番号  
WO 00/76993 A1

(51) 国際特許分類<sup>7</sup>: C07D 405/12, 405/14, 409/14, 413/14, 417/14, A61K 31/55, A61P 31/18, 43/00

(21) 国際出願番号: PCT/JP00/03879

(22) 国際出願日: 2000年6月15日 (15.06.2000)

(25) 国際出願の言語: 日本語

(26) 国際公開の言語: 日本語

(30) 優先権データ:  
特願平11/170345 1999年6月16日 (16.06.1999) JP

(71) 出願人 (米国を除く全ての指定国について): 武田薬品工業株式会社 (TAKEDA CHEMICAL INDUSTRIES, LTD.) [JP/JP]; 〒541-0045 大阪府大阪市中央区道修町四丁目1番1号 Osaka (JP).

(72) 発明者; および

(75) 発明者/出願人 (米国についてのみ): 白石 充 (SHI-RAISHI, Mitsuru) [JP/JP]; 〒661-0002 兵庫県尼崎市塚口町4丁目33番地の26 Hyogo (JP). 馬場昌範 (BABA, Masanori) [JP/JP]; 〒891-0103 鹿児島県鹿児島市皇

徳寺台3丁目54-19 Kagoshima (JP). 荒牧慶夫 (ARMAKI, Yoshio) [JP/JP]; 〒664-0858 兵庫県伊丹市西台1丁目3番5-602 Hyogo (JP). 神崎直之 (KANZAKI, Naoyuki) [JP/JP]; 〒567-0867 大阪府茨木市大正町2番15-203 Osaka (JP). 西村 紀 (NISHIMURA, Osamu) [JP/JP]; 〒305-0812 茨城県つくば市大字平塚平塚586番地2 Ibaraki (JP).

(74) 代理人: 弁理士 高橋秀一, 外(TAKAHASHI, Shuichi et al.); 〒532-0024 大阪府大阪市淀川区十三本町2丁目17番85号 武田薬品工業株式会社 大阪工場内 Osaka (JP).

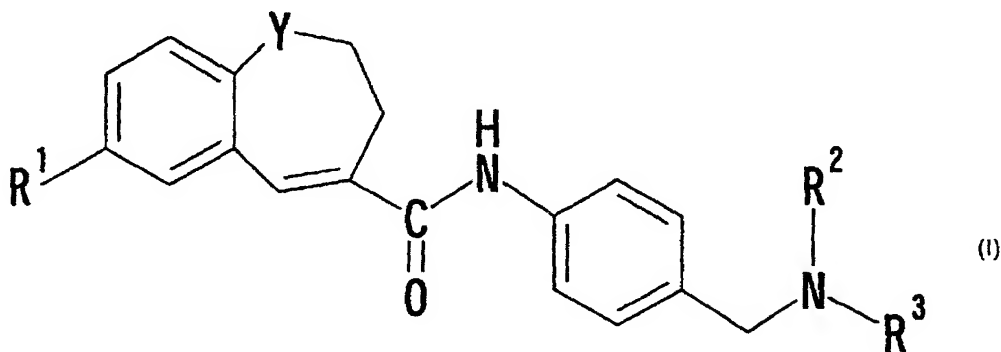
(81) 指定国 (国内): AE, AG, AL, AM, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CN, CR, CU, CZ, DM, DZ, EE, GD, GE, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KG, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LT, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MX, MZ, NO, NZ, PL, RO, RU, SG, SI, SK, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA.

(84) 指定国 (広域): ARIPO 特許 (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), ユーラシア特許 (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), ヨーロッパ特許 (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI 特許 (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

[続葉有]

(54) Title: BENZAZEPINE DERIVATIVES, PROCESS FOR THE PREPARATION OF THE SAME AND USES THEREOF

(54) 発明の名称: ベンゾアゼピン誘導体、その製造法および用途



(57) Abstract: Compounds of general formula (I) or salts thereof, which exhibit CCR5 antagonism and exert preventive and therapeutic effects against HIV infections: wherein R<sup>1</sup> is a five- or six-membered aromatic ring which bears a substituent represented by the general formula: R-Z<sup>1</sup>-X-Z<sup>2</sup>- (wherein R is hydrogen or optionally substituted hydrocarbyl; X is optionally substituted alkylene; and Z<sup>1</sup> and Z<sup>2</sup> are each a heteroatom) and may be further substituted, with R being optionally bonded to the aromatic ring to form another ring; Y is optionally substituted imino; and R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> are each optionally substituted aliphatic hydrocarbyl or an optionally substituted heteroalicyclic group.

[続葉有]

10013321 121201

WO 00/76993 A1

BENZAZEPINE DERIVATIVE, PRODUCTION AND USE THEREOF

Technical Field

5           The present invention relates to a novel benzazepine derivative, production and use thereof.

Background Art

10           Recently, HIV (human immunodeficiency virus) protease inhibitors are developed for method of the treatment of AIDS (acquired immunological deficient syndrome) and use of the protease inhibitors in combination with conventional two HIV reverse transcriptase inhibitors provides with a further progress  
15           of the treatment of AIDS. However, these drugs and their combination use are not sufficient for the eradications of AIDS, and development of new anti-AIDS drugs having different activity and mechanism are sought for.

20           As a receptor from which HIV invades to a target cell, CD4 is so far known, and recently CCR5 as a second receptor of macrophage-tropic HIV and CXCR4 as a second receptor of T cell-tropic HIV, each of which is G protein-coupled chemokine receptor having seven transmembrane domains, are respectively found out. These  
25           chemokine receptors are thought to play an essential role



in establishment and spread of HIV infection. In fact, it is reported that a person who is resistant to HIV infection in spite of several exposures retains mutation of homo deletion of CCR5 gene. Therefore, a CCR5

5 antagonist is expected to be a new anti-HIV drug.

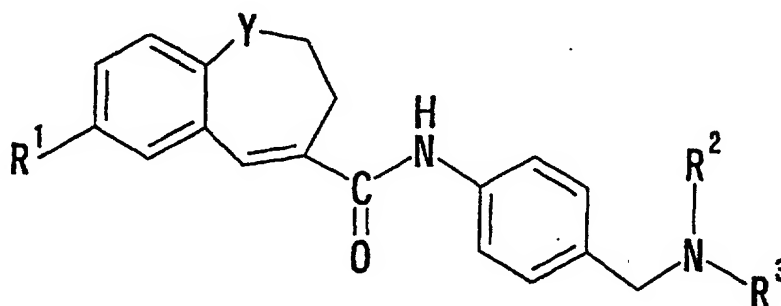
However, so far, there has been no report that a CCR5 antagonist is developed as a therapeutic agent of AIDS.

#### Disclosure of the Invention

10 In order to investigate an anti-AIDS drug having CCR5 antagonistic activity, it is necessary to clone CCR5 gene from human tissue derived cDNA library, to ligate said gene with a vector for expression in animal cells, to introduce said gene into animal cells and to obtain  
15 cells expressing CCR5. In addition, with using this transformant, it is necessary to screen a compound which strongly inhibits binding of CC chemokine RANTES, natural ligand, to CCR5. However, so far there has been almost no report on a low molecule compound which has this CCR5  
20 antagonistic activity and is suitable for oral administration. The present invention is to provide a novel anilide derivative which is useful for the treatment or prevention of infectious diseases of HIV and, in particular, AIDS and also which is suitable for oral  
25 administration, production and use thereof.

The present inventors diligently made extensive studies on compounds having CCR5 antagonistic activity and, as a result, they found that a benzazepine derivative of the following formula (I) or a salt thereof [hereinafter, referred to as Compound (I) in some cases] possesses CC chemokine receptor (CCR) antagonistic activity, in particular, potent CCR5 antagonistic activity and clinically desirable pharmaceutical effect (e.g. remarkable inhibition of HIV infection to human peripheral mononuclear cells, etc.) and also that Compound (I) has superior absorbability when orally administered. Based on the finding, the present invention was accomplished.

More specifically, the present invention relates to (1) A compound of the formula (I):



wherein R<sup>1</sup> is a 5- to 6-membered aromatic ring which has a group of the formula: R-Z<sup>1</sup>-X-Z<sup>2</sup>- wherein R is a hydrogen atom or an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, X is an optionally substituted alkylene chain, and Z<sup>1</sup> and Z<sup>2</sup>

are respectively hetero-atoms, and which may have a further substituent, the group R may bind to the 5- to 6-membered aromatic ring to form a ring, Y is an optionally substituted imino group,  $R^2$  and  $R^3$  are respectively an

5 optionally substituted aliphatic hydrocarbon group or an optionally substituted alicyclic heterocyclic group; or a salt thereof;

(2) A pro-drug of the compound as described in the above (1) or a salt thereof;

10 (3) The compound as described in the above (1), wherein the 5- to 6-membered aromatic ring is benzene, furan or thiophene;

(4) The compound as described in the above (1), wherein the 5- to 6-membered aromatic ring is benzene;

15 (5) The compound as described in the above (1), wherein R is an optionally halogenated lower alkyl group;

(6) The compound as described in the above (1), wherein X is  $-(CH_2)_n-$  (n is an integer of 1-4);

(7) The compound as described in the above (1), wherein

20  $Z^1$  and  $Z^2$  are respectively  $-O-$ ,  $-S(O)_m-$  (m is an integer of 0-2) or  $-N(R^4)-$  ( $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom or an optionally substituted lower alkyl group);

(8) The compound as described in the above (1), wherein  $Z^1$  is  $-O-$  or  $-S(O)_m-$  (m is an integer of 0-2);

25 (9) The compound as described in the above (1), wherein

$Z^1$  is -O-;

(10) The compound as described in the above (1), wherein  $Z^2$  is -O- or -N(R<sup>4</sup>)- (R<sup>4</sup> is a hydrogen atom or an optionally substituted lower alkyl group);

5 (11) The compound as described in the above (1), wherein  $Z^2$  is -O-;

(12) The compound as described in the above (1), wherein Y is -N(R<sup>5</sup>)- (R<sup>5</sup> is a hydrogen atom, an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group or an optionally substituted acyl group);

(13) The compound as described in the above (12), wherein (R<sup>5</sup>) is C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, formyl or C<sub>2-5</sub> alkanoyl;

(14) The compound as described in the above (12), wherein R<sup>5</sup> is a group represented by the formula  $-(CH_2)_k-R^6$ :  
15 wherein k is 0 or 1, and R<sup>6</sup> is an optionally substituted 5- to 6-membered monocyclic aromatic group;

(15) The compound as described in the above (1), wherein R<sup>2</sup> is an optionally substituted straight chain hydrocarbon group;

20 (16) The compound as described in the above (1), wherein R<sup>2</sup> is an optionally substituted lower alkyl group;

(17) The compound as described in the above (1), wherein R<sup>3</sup> is an optionally substituted alicyclic hydrocarbon group or an optionally substituted alicyclic heterocyclic group;  
25

(18) The compound as described in the above (17), wherein the alicyclic hydrocarbon group is a lower cycloalkyl group;

(19) The compound as described in the above (17), wherein  
5 the alicyclic hydrocarbon group is cyclohexyl;

(20) The compound as described in the above (17), wherein the alicyclic heterocyclic group is a saturated alicyclic heterocyclic group;

(21) The compound as described in the above (17), wherein  
10 the alicyclic heterocyclic group is tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydrothiopyranyl or piperidyl;

(22) The compound as described in the above (17), wherein the alicyclic heterocyclic group is tetrahydropyranyl;

(23) The compound selected from the class consisting of  
15 7-(4-ethoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-ethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,

1-ethyl-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-  
20 benzazepine-4-carboxamide,

7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-ethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,

7-(4-ethoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-  
25

- benzazepine-4-carboxamide,  
 1-formyl-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,
- 5 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,
- 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-propyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,
- 10 N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-propyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,
- 1-benzyl-7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,
- 15 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-cyclopropylmethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,
- 20 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-phenyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,
- 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3,4-methylenedioxy)phenyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-
- 25

carboxamide,

7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-methyloxazol-5-yl)-N-[4-  
[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-  
2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,

5 1-allyl-7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-  
(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-  
benzazepine-4-carboxamide,

7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-  
(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(3-  
10 thienyl)methyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,

7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-  
(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(thiazol-2-  
yl)methyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,

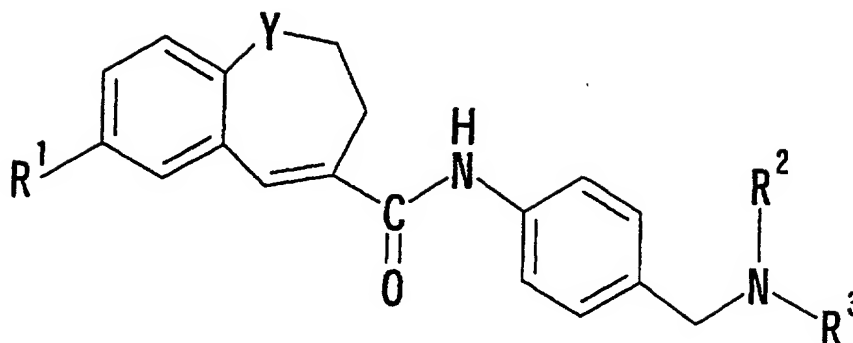
7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(1-methylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl-  
15 N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-  
yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-  
carboxamide,

7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-methylisothiazol-4-  
yl)methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-  
20 yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-  
carboxamide,

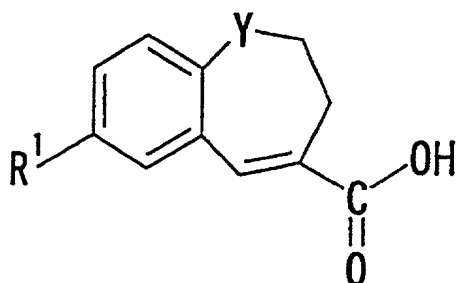
7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(1-ethylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl-N-  
[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-  
yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-  
25 carboxamide,

- 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-isobutyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,
- 1-isobutyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,
- 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(thiazol-5-yl)methyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,
- 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(1-methyltetrazol-5-yl)methyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, and
- 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(2-methyltetrazol-5-yl)methyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, or salt thereof;
- (24) A pro-drug of the compound as described in the above (23) or a salt thereof;
- (25) A method for producing a compound of the formula:

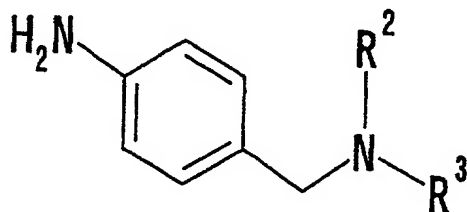




wherein each symbol is as described in the above (1), or  
 a salt thereof, which comprises subjecting a compound of  
 the formula:



wherein each symbol is as described in the above (1), a  
 salt or a reactive derivative thereof to a condensation  
 reaction with a compound of the formula:



wherein each symbol is as described in the above (1), or  
 a salt thereof;

(26) A pharmaceutical composition which comprises the

compound as described in the above (1) or a salt thereof;

(27) The composition as described in the above (26),  
which is a CC chemokine receptor (CCR) antagonist;

(28) The pharmaceutical composition as described in the  
5 above (26), which is a CCR5 antagonist;

(29) The composition as described in the above (26),  
which is for the treatment or prevention of infectious  
disease of HIV;

(30) The composition as described in the above (26),  
10 which is for the treatment or prevention of AIDS;

(31) The composition as described in the above (26),  
which is for the prevention of the progression of AIDS;

(32) The composition as described in the above (29),  
which is used in combination with a protease inhibitor  
15 and/or a reverse transcriptase inhibitor;

(33) The composition as described in the above (32),  
wherein the reverse transcriptase inhibitor is zidovudine,  
didanosine, zalcitabine, lamivudine, stavudine,  
nevirapine, delavirdine, efavirenz or abacavir;

(34) The composition as described in the above (32),  
20 wherein the protease inhibitor is saquinavir, ritonavir,  
indinavir or nelfinavir;

(35) Use of the compound as described in the above (1) or  
a salt thereof in combination with a protease inhibitor  
25 and/or a reverse transcriptase inhibitor for the

treatment or prebention of infectious diseases of HIV;

(36) A method for antagonizing a CC chemokine receptor (CCR) in a mammal, which comprises administering an effective amount of a compound described in the above (1)

5 or a salt thereof to a mammal;

(37) Use of a compound described in the above (1) or a salt thereof in preparation of a medicament for antagonizing a CC chemokine receptor (CCR); etc.

10 In the above formula(I), examples of the "5- to 6-membered aromatic ring" of the "5- to 6-membered aromatic ring which has a group of the formula:  $R-Z^1-X-Z^2$ - wherein R is a hydrogen atom or an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, X is an optionally substituted

15 alkylene chain, and  $Z^1$  and  $Z^2$  are respectively hetero-atoms, and which may have a further substituent" represented by  $R^1$  include a 6-membered aromatic hydrocarbon such as benzene, etc.; 5- to 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 4 hetero-atoms

20 consisting of 1 to 2 kinds of hetero-atoms selected from oxygen atom, sulfur atom and nitrogen atom such as furan, thiophene, pyrrole, imidazole, pyrazole, thiazole, oxazole, isothiazole, isoxazole, tetrazole, pyridine, pyrazine, pyrimidine, pyridazine, triazole, etc.; and the

25 like. Among others, benzene, furan, thiophene, pyridine,

etc. are preferable, benzene, furan or thiophene is more preferable, and in particular, benzene is preferable.

- Examples of the "hydrocarbon group" of the "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R include
- (1) alkyl (e.g.,  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, hexyl, heptyl, octyl, nonyl, decyl, etc., preferably lower ( $C_{1-6}$ ) alkyl, etc., more preferable lower ( $C_{1-4}$ ) alkyl, etc.);
  - (2) cycloalkyl (e.g.,  $C_{3-7}$  cycloalkyl, etc. such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, etc.);
  - (3) alkenyl (e.g.,  $C_{2-10}$  alkenyl such as allyl, crotyl, 2-pentenyl, 3-hexenyl, etc., preferably lower ( $C_{2-6}$ ) alkenyl, etc.);
  - (4) cycloalkenyl (e.g.,  $C_{3-7}$  cycloalkenyl, etc. such as 2-cyclopentenyl, 2-cyclohexenyl, 2-cyclopentenylmethyl, 2-cyclohexenylmethyl, etc.);
  - (5) alkynyl (e.g.,  $C_{2-10}$  alkynyl, such as ethynyl, 1-propynyl, 2-propynyl, 1-butylnyl, 2-pentylnyl, 3-hexynyl, etc., preferably lower ( $C_{2-6}$ ) alkynyl, etc.);
  - (6) aralkyl (e.g., phenyl- $C_{1-4}$  alkyl (e.g., benzyl, phenethyl, etc.), etc.);
  - (7) aryl (e.g., phenyl, naphthyl, etc.);
  - (8) cycloalkyl-alkyl (e.g.,  $C_{3-7}$  cycloalkyl- $C_{1-4}$  alkyl such

as cyclopropylmethyl, cyclobutylmethyl, cyclopentylmethyl, cyclohexylmethyl, cycloheptylmethyl, etc.), and the like.

Examples of the substituents, which the above-mentioned (1) alkyl, (2) cycloalkyl, (4) cycloalkenyl, 5 (5) alkynyl, (6) aralkyl, (7) aryl and (8) cycloalkyl-alkyl may have, include halogen (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.), nitro, cyano, hydroxy group, an optionally substituted thiol group (e.g., thiol, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylthio, etc.), an optionally substituted amino group 10 (e.g., amino; mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; 5- to 6-membered cyclic amino such as tetrahydropyrrole, piperazine, piperidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyrrole, imidazole, etc.; etc.), an optionally esterified or amidated carboxyl group (e.g., carboxyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-4</sub> 15 alkylcarbamoyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl (e.g., trifluoromethyl, methyl, ethyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, butoxy, trifluoromethoxy, trifluoroethoxy, etc.), 20 C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylenedioxy (e.g., -O-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-, -O-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O, etc.), optionally substituted sulfonamide [e.g., a group formed by binding of an optionally substituted amino group (e.g., amino; mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; 5- to 6-membered cyclic amino such as tetrahydropyrrole, 25 piperazine, piperidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine,

pyrrole, imidazole, etc.; etc.) to  $-SO_2-$ ], formyl,  $C_{2-4}$  alkanoyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, etc.),  $C_{1-4}$  alkylsulfonyl (e.g., methanesulfonyl, ethanesulfonyl, etc.), etc., and the number of the substituents are preferably 1 to 3.

Examples of the "heterocyclic group" of the "optionally substituted heterocyclic group" as substituents of "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R include a group formed by removing one hydrogen atom from aromatic heterocyclic ring or non-aromatic heterocyclic ring. Examples of the aromatic heterocyclic ring include 5- to 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 4 hetero-atoms consisting of 1 to 2 kinds of hetero-atoms selected from oxygen atom, sulfur atom and nitrogen atom such as furan, thiophene, pyrrole, imidazole, pyrazole, thiazole, oxazole, isothiazole, isoxazole, tetrazole, pyridine, pyrazine, pyrimidine, pyridazine, triazole, oxadiazole, thiadiazole, etc. Examples of the non-aromatic heterocycle include 5- to 6-membered non-aromatic heterocycle containing 1 to 4 hetero-atoms consisting of 1 to 2 kinds of hetero-atoms selected from nitrogen atom, sulfur atom and oxygen atom, such as tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, dioxolane, dithiolane, oxathiolane, pyrrolidine, pyrroline, imidazolidine, imidazoline,

pyrazolidine, pyrazoline, piperidine, piperazine, oxazine, oxadiazine, thiazine, thaziadine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyran and tetrahydropyran, as well as non-aromatic heterocycle in which a part or whole bond(s) of the aforementioned aromatic heterocycle is (are) a saturated bond, and the like (preferably, aromatic heterocycle such as pyrazole, thiazole, oxazole, tetrazole, etc.).

The "heterocyclic group" of the "optionally substituted heterocyclic group" as the substituent for the "optionally substituent hydrocarbon group" represented by R, may have 1 to 3 substituents at an optional replaceable position. Examples of such the substituent include halogen (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine and iodine), nitro, cyano, a hydroxy group, an optionally substituted thiol group (e.g., thiol, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylthio etc.), an optionally substituted amino group (e.g., amino; mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; 5- to 6-membered cyclic amino such as tetrahydropyrrole, piperazine, piperidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyrrole, imidazole, etc.; etc.), an optionally esterified or amidated carboxyl group (e.g., carboxyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl carbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl carbamoyl etc.), optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl (e.g., trifluoromethyl, methyl, ethyl, etc.), optionally

halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, butoxy, trifluoromethoxy, trifluoroethoxy, etc.), C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylenedioxy (e.g., -O-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-, -O-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-, etc.), optionally substituted sulfonamide [e.g., an optionally substituted amino group (e.g., amino; mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; 5- to 6-membered cyclic amino such as tetrahydropyrrole, piperazine, piperidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyrrole, imidazole, etc.; etc.) binding to -SO<sub>2</sub>-], formyl, C<sub>2-4</sub> alkanoyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, etc.), C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylsulfonyl (e.g., methanesulfonyl, ethanesulfonyl, etc.), etc. (preferably, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, etc.).

When the group of the formula: R-Z<sup>1</sup>-X-Z<sup>2</sup>- wherein each symbol is as defined above is a monovalent group, that is, it does not bind to the 5- to 6-membered aromatic ring to form a ring, as the group R, an optionally substituted alkyl group is preferable, an optionally halogenated lower alkyl group is more preferable, and in particular, an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl group is preferable.

Examples of the "optionally substituted alkylene chain" represented by X include an optionally substituted straight or branched C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylene, etc. In said alkylene chain, a straight portion is preferably constituted by 1-4 carbon atoms, and in particular, an



optionally substituted straight C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene (preferably ethylene or propylene) is preferable as X.

Examples of the substituent, which the "alkylene chain" of the "optionally substituted alkylene chain" represented by X may have, include any one which can bind to a divalent chain constituting the straight portion, for example, C<sub>1-6</sub> lower alkyl (e.g., methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, hexyl, etc.), lower (C<sub>3-7</sub>) cycloalkyl (e.g., cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, etc.), formyl, lower (C<sub>2-7</sub>) alkanoyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, butyryl, etc.), an optionally esterified phosphono group, an optionally esterified carboxyl group, hydroxy group, oxo, etc., and more preferably C<sub>1-6</sub> lower alkyl (preferably C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl), hydroxy group, oxo, etc.

Examples of the optionally esterified phosphono group include a group of the formula: P(O)(OR<sup>7</sup>)(OR<sup>8</sup>) wherein R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> are independently hydrogen, a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl group or a C<sub>3-7</sub> cycloalkyl group, and R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> may bind to each other to form a 5- to 7-membered ring.

In the above formula, examples of the C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl group represented by R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> include methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, hexyl, etc., and examples

of the C<sub>3-7</sub> cycloalkyl include cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, etc. Among others, a straight C<sub>1-6</sub> lower alkyl is preferable and C<sub>1-3</sub> lower alkyl is more preferable. The groups R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> may be the same or different, and preferably the groups R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> are the same. When R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> may bind to each other to form a 5- to 7-membered ring, the groups R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> bind to each other to represent a straight C<sub>2-4</sub> alkylene chain of the formula: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-, etc. Said chain may have a substituent, and examples of the substituent include hydroxy group, halogen, etc.

Examples of the optionally esterified carboxyl group include a carboxyl group and an ester group formed by binding a carboxyl group to a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl group or a C<sub>3-7</sub> cycloalkyl group (e.g., methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, propoxycarbonyl, isopropoxycarbonyl, butoxycarbonyl, isobutoxycarbonyl, sec-butoxycarbonyl, tert-butoxycarbonyl, pentyloxycarbonyl, hexyloxycarbonyl, etc.).

As the group X, an optionally substituted C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene is preferable, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylene which may be substituted with C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl, hydroxy group or oxo is more preferable, and in particular, a group of the formula: -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>- (n is an integer of 1-4) is preferable.

Examples of the hetero-atom represented by Z<sup>1</sup> and Z<sup>2</sup> include -O-, -S(O)<sub>m</sub>- (m is an integer of 0-2), -N(R<sup>4</sup>)- (R<sup>4</sup>

is a hydrogen atom or an optionally substituted lower alkyl group), etc. As the group  $Z^1$ ,  $-O-$  or  $-S(O)_m-$  ( $m$  is an integer of 0-2) is preferable, and  $-O-$  is more preferable. As the group  $Z^2$ ,  $-O-$  or  $-N(R^4)-$  ( $R^4$  is a hydrogen atom or an optionally substituted lower alkyl group) is preferable, and  $-O-$  is more preferable.

Examples of the "optionally substituted lower alkyl group" represented by  $R^4$  include the same as the above "optionally substituted lower alkyl group" exemplified with respect to the "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by  $R$ .

Examples of the further substituent, which the "5- to 6-membered ring" of the "5- to 6-membered aromatic ring which has a group of the formula:  $R-Z^1-X-Z^2-$  wherein each symbol is as defined above, and which may have a further substituent" represented by  $R^1$  may have, in addition to the group of the formula:  $R-Z^1-X-Z^2-$ , include a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, an optionally substituted alkyl, an optionally substituted cycloalkyl, an optionally substituted hydroxy group, an optionally substituted thiol group (wherein a sulfur atom may be oxidized to form an optionally substituted sulfinyl group or an optionally substituted sulfonyl group), an optionally substituted amino group, an optionally substituted acyl group, an optionally esterified or

amidated carboxyl group, an optionally substituted aromatic group and the like.

Examples of the halogen as the substituents for  $R^1$  include fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc. Among  
5 others, fluorine and chlorine are preferable.

Examples of the alkyl in the optionally substituted alkyl as the substituents for  $R^1$  include a straight or branched  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl  
10 isopentyl, neopentyl, hexyl, heptyl, octyl, nonyl, decyl, etc., and preferably lower ( $C_{1-6}$ ) alkyl. Examples of the substituents in the optionally substituted alkyl include halogen (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.), nitro, cyano, hydroxy group, an optionally substituted  
15 thiol group (e.g., thiol,  $C_{1-4}$  alkylthio, etc.), an optionally substituted amino group (e.g., amino; mono- $C_{1-4}$  alkylamino; di- $C_{1-4}$  alkylamino; 5-to 6-membered cyclic amino such as tetrahydropyrrole, piperazine, piperidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyrrole, imidazole, etc.;  
20 etc.), an optionally esterified or amidated carboxyl group (e.g., carboxyl,  $C_{1-4}$  alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono- $C_{1-4}$  alkylcarbamoyl, di- $C_{1-4}$  alkylcarbamoyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated  $C_{1-4}$  alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, butoxy, trifluoromethoxy, trifluoroethoxy, etc.),  
25 an optionally halogenated  $C_{1-4}$  alkoxy- $C_{1-4}$  alkoxy (e.g.,

methoxymethoxy, methoxyethoxy, ethoxyethoxy, trifluoromethoxyethoxy, trifluoroethoxyethoxy, etc.), formyl, C<sub>2-4</sub> alkanoyl (e.g. acetyl, propionyl, etc.), C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylsulfonyl (e.g., methanesulfonyl, ethanesulfonyl, etc.), etc., and the number of the substituents are preferable 1 to 3.

Examples of the cycloalkyl in the optionally substituted cycloalkyl as the substituents for R<sup>1</sup> include C<sub>3-7</sub> cycloalkyl, etc. such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, etc. Examples of the substituents in the optionally substituted cycloalkyl include halogen (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.), nitro, cyano, hydroxy group, an optionally substituted thiol group (e.g., thiol, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylthio, etc.), an optionally substituted amino group (e.g., amino, mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; 5- to 6-membered cyclic amino such as tetrahydropyrrole, piperazine, piperidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyrrole, imidazole, etc.; etc.), an optionally esterified or amidated carboxyl group (e.g., carboxyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl (e.g., trifluoromethyl, methyl, ethyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, butoxy, trifluoromethoxy, trifluoroethoxy, etc.),

formyl, C<sub>2-4</sub> alkanoyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, etc.), C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylsulfonyl (e.g. methanesulfonyl, ethanesulfonyl, etc.), etc., and the number of the substituents are preferably 1 to 3.

5        Examples of the substituents in the optionally substituted hydroxy group as the substituents for R<sup>1</sup> include

10        (1) an optionally substituted alkyl (e.g., C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, hexyl, heptyl, octyl, nonyl, decyl, etc., preferably lower (C<sub>1-6</sub>) alkyl, etc.);

15        (2) an optionally substituted cycloalkyl which may contain a hetero-atom (e.g., C<sub>3-7</sub> cycloalkyl such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, etc.; a saturated 5- to 6-membered heterocyclic ring group containing 1-2 hetero-atoms such as tetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydrothienyl, pyrrolidinyl, pyrazolidinyl, piperidyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl, tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydrothiopyranyl, etc.; etc., (preferably, tetrahydropyranyl, etc.));

20        (3) an optionally substituted alkenyl (e.g., C<sub>2-10</sub> alkenyl such as allyl, crotyl, 2-pentenyl, 3-hexenyl, etc., preferably lower (C<sub>2-6</sub>) alkenyl, etc.);

25        (4) an optionally substituted cycloalkenyl (e.g. C<sub>3-7</sub>

cycloalkenyl, etc. such as 2-cyclopentenyl, 2-cyclohexenyl, 2-cyclopentenylmethyl, 2-cyclohexenylmethyl, etc.);

(5) an optionally substituted aralkyl (e.g. phenyl-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl (e.g. benzyl, phenethyl, etc.), etc.);

(6) formyl or an optionally substituted acyl (e.g. C<sub>2-4</sub> alkanoyl (e.g. acetyl, propionyl, butyryl, isobutyryl, etc.), C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylsulfonyl (e.g. methanesulfonyl, ethanesulfonyl, etc.), etc.);

(7) an optionally substituted aryl (e.g. phenyl, naphthyl, etc.); etc.

Examples of the substituents which the above-mentioned (1) optionally substituted alkyl, (2) optionally substituted cycloalkyl, (3) optionally substituted alkenyl, (4) optionally substituted cycloalkenyl, (5) optionally substituted aralkyl, (6) optionally substituted acyl and (7) optionally substituted aryl may have include halogen (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.), nitro, cyano, hydroxy group, an optionally substituted thiol group (e.g., thiol, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylthio, etc.), an optionally substituted amino group (e.g. amino; mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; 5- to 6-membered cyclic amino such as tetrahydropyrrole, piperazine, piperidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyrrole, imidazole, etc.; etc.), an

optionally esterified or amidated carboxyl group (e.g., carboxyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl (e.g., trifluoromethyl, methyl, ethyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy (e.g., trifluoromethoxy, trifluoroethoxy, etc.; preferably an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy), formyl, C<sub>2-4</sub> alkanoyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, etc.), C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy), C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylsulfonyl (e.g., methanesulfonyl, ethanesulfonyl, etc.), an optionally substituted 5- to 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic ring [e.g., 5- to 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 4 hetero-atoms consisting of 1 to 2 kinds of hetero-atoms selected from oxygen atom, sulfur atom and nitrogen atom such as furan, thiophene, pyrrole, imidazole, pyrazole, thiazole, oxazole, isothiazole, isoxazole, tetrazole, pyridine, pyrazine, pyrimidine, pyridazine, triazole, etc.; examples of the substituents which said heterocyclic ring may have include halogen (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.), nitro, cyano, hydroxy group, thiol group, amino group, carboxyl group, an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl (e.g., trifluoromethyl, methyl, ethyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, butoxy, trifluoromethoxy, trifluoroethoxy, etc.), formyl, C<sub>2-4</sub> alkanoyl (e.g.,



acetyl, propionyl, etc.),  $C_{1-4}$  alkylsulfonyl (e.g., methanesulfonyl, ethanesulfonyl, etc.), etc.; and the number of the substituents are preferable 1 to 3, etc., and the number of the substituents are preferably 1 to 3.

5        Examples of the substituents in the optionally substituted thiol group as the substituents for  $R^1$  are the same as the above-described substituents of the optionally substituted hydroxy group as the substituents for  $R^1$ , and among others,

10        (1) an optionally substituted alkyl (e.g.,  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, hexyl, heptyl, octyl, nonyl, decyl, etc. preferably lower ( $C_{1-6}$ ) alkyl, etc.);

15        (2) an optionally substituted cycloalkyl (e.g.,  $C_{3-7}$  cycloalkyl, etc. such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, etc.);

(3) an optionally substituted aralkyl (e.g., phenyl- $C_{1-4}$  alkyl (e.g. benzyl, phenethyl, etc.), etc.);

20        (4) an optionally substituted aryl (e.g., phenyl, naphthyl, etc.); etc. are preferable.

      Examples of the substituents which the above-mentioned (1) optionally substituted alkyl, (2) optionally substituted cycloalkyl, (3) optionally substituted aralkyl and (4) optionally substituted aryl

25

may have include halogen (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.), nitro, cyano, hydroxy group, an optionally substituted thiol group (e.g., thio, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylthio, etc.), an optionally substituted amino group (e.g., amino; mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; 5- to 6-membered cyclic amino such as tetrahydropyrrole, piperazine, piperidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyrrole, imidazole, etc.; etc.), an optionally esterified or amidated carboxyl group (e.g., carboxyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl (e.g., trifluoromethyl, methyl, ethyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, butoxy, trifluoromethoxy, trifluoroethoxy, etc.), formyl, C<sub>2-4</sub> alkanoyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, etc.), C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylsulfonyl (e.g., methanesulfonyl, ethanesulfonyl, etc.), etc., and the number of the substituents are preferably 1 to 3.

Examples of the substituents of the optionally substituted amino group as the substituents for R<sup>1</sup> include an amino group which may have the same one to two substituents as those of the above-described substituents of "the optionally substituted hydroxy group as the substituents for R<sup>1</sup>", etc. Among others,

(1) an optionally substituted alkyl (e.g., C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl such

as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, hexyl, heptyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, hexyl, heptyl, octyl, nonyl, decyl, etc., preferably

5 lower ( $C_{1-6}$ ) alkyl, etc.);

(2) an optionally substituted cycloalkyl (e.g.,  $C_{3-7}$  cycloalkyl, etc. such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, etc.);

(3) an optionally substituted alkenyl (e.g.,  $C_{2-10}$  alkenyl  
10 such as allyl, crotyl, 2-pentenyl, 3-hexenyl, etc., preferably lower ( $C_{2-6}$ ) alkenyl, etc.);

(4) an optionally substituted cycloalkenyl (e.g.,  $C_{3-7}$  cycloalkenyl, etc. such as 2-cyclopentenyl, 2-cyclohexenyl, 2-cyclopentenylmethyl, 2-cyclohexenylmethyl,  
15 etc.);

(5) formyl or an optionally substituted acyl (e.g.,  $C_{2-4}$  alkanoyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, butyryl, isobutyryl, etc.),  $C_{1-4}$  alkylsulfonyl (e.g., methanesulfonyl, ethanesulfonyl, etc.), etc.);

(6) an optionally substituted aryl (e.g., phenyl, naphthyl, etc.); etc. are preferable.  
20

Examples of the substituents, which each of the above-described (1) optionally substituted alkyl, (2) optionally substituted cycloalkyl, (3) optionally substituted alkenyl, (4) optionally substituted  
25

cycloalkyl, (5) optionally substituted acyl and (6) optionally substituted aryl may have, include halogen (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.), nitro, cyano, hydroxy group, an optionally substituted thiol group (e.g., thiol, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylthio, etc.), an optionally substituted amino group (e.g., amino; mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; 5-to 6-membered cyclic amino such as tetrahydropyrrole, piperazine, piperidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyrrole, imidazole, etc.; etc.), an optionally esterified or amidated carboxyl group (e.g., carboxyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C<sub>1-14</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl (e.g., trifluoromethyl, methyl, ethyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, butoxy, trifluoromethoxy, trifluoroethoxy, etc.), formyl, C<sub>2-4</sub> alkanoyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, etc.), C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylsulfonyl (e.g., methanesulfonyl, ethanesulfonyl, etc.), etc., and the number of the substituents are preferably 1 to 3.

The substituents in the optionally substituted amino group as the substituents for R<sup>1</sup> may bind to each other to form a cyclic amino group (e.g., 5- to 6-membered cyclic amino, etc. such as tetrahydropyrrole, piperazine, piperidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyrrole,

imidazole, etc.). Said cyclic amino group may have a substituent and examples of the substituents include halogen (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.), nitro cyano, hydroxy group, an optionally substituted

5 thiol group (e.g., thiol, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylthio, etc.), an optionally substituted amino group (e.g., amino; mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; 5-to 6-membered cyclic amino such as tetrahydropyrrole, piperazine, piperidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyrrole, imidazole, etc.;

10 etc.), an optionally esterified or amidated carboxyl group (e.g., carboxyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl (e.g., trifluoromethyl, methyl, ethyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub>

15 alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, butoxy, trifluoromethoxy, trifluoroethoxy, etc.), formyl, C<sub>2-4</sub> alkanoyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, etc.), C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylsulfonyl (e.g., methanesulfonyl, ethanesulfonyl, etc.), etc., and the number of the substituents are

20 preferably 1 to 3.

Examples of the optionally substituted acyl as the substituents for R<sup>1</sup> include

- (1) hydrogen;
- (2) an optionally substituted alkyl (e.g., C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl such
- 25 as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl,

sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, hexyl, octyl, nonyl, decyl, etc., preferably lower ( $C_{1-6}$ ) alkyl, etc.);

(3) an optionally substituted cycloalkyl (e.g.,  $C_{3-7}$  cycloalkyl, etc. such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, etc.);

(4) an optionally substituted alkenyl (e.g.,  $C_{2-10}$  alkenyl such as allyl, crotyl, 2-pentenyl, 3-hexenyl, etc., preferably lower ( $C_{2-6}$ ) alkenyl, etc.);

(5) an optionally substituted cycloalkenyl (e.g.,  $C_{3-7}$  cycloalkenyl, etc. such as 2-cyclopentenyl, 2-cyclohexenyl, 2-cyclopentenylmethyl, 2-cyclohexenylmethyl, etc.);

(6) an optionally substituted 5- to 6-membered monocyclic aromatic group (e.g., phenyl, 5- to 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group (e.g., 5- to 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero-atoms consisting of 1 to 2 kinds of hetero-atoms selected from oxygen atom, sulfur atom and nitrogen atom, such as furyl, thienyl, pyrrolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, thiazolyl, oxazolyl, isothiazolyl, isoxazolyl, tetrazolyl, pyridyl, pyrazyl, pirimidinyl, pyridazinyl, triazolyl, etc.);

(7) an optionally substituted 5- to 6-membered monocyclic non-aromatic heterocyclic group (e.g., a group which is formed by removing one hydrogen atom from a 5- to 6-

membered monocyclic non-aromatic heterocycle containing 1  
to 4 hetero-atoms consisting of 1 to 2 kinds of hetero-  
atoms selected from nitrogen atom, sulfur atom and  
nitrogen atom, such as tetrahydrofuran,  
5 tetrahydrothiophene, dioxolane, dithiolane, oxathiolane,  
pyrrolidine, pyrroline, imidazolidine, imidazoline,  
pyrazolidine, pyrazoline, piperidine, piperazine, oxazine,  
oxadiazine, thiazine, thiadiazine, morpholine,  
thiomorpholine, pyran, tetrahydropyran, etc.; preferably  
10 dioxolanyl, etc) which is bound to a carbonyl group or a  
sulfonyl group (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, butyryl,  
isobutyryl, valeryl, isovaleryl, pivaloyl, hexanoyl,  
butanoyl, octanoyl, cyclobutanecarbonyl,  
cyclopentanecarbonyl, cyclohexanecarbonyl,  
15 cyclobutanecarbonyl, crotonyl, 2-cyclohexenecarbonyl,  
benzoyl, nicotinyl, methanesulfonyl, ethanesulfonyl,  
etc.). Examples of the substituents, which the above-  
mentioned (2) optionally substituted alkyl, (3)  
optionally substituted cycloalkyl, (4) optionally  
20 substituted alkenyl, (5) optionally substituted  
cycloalkenyl, (6) optionally substituted 5- to 6-membered  
monocyclic aromatic group and (7) optionally substituted  
5- to 6-membered monocyclic non-aromatic heterocycle may  
have, include halogen (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine,  
25 iodine, etc.), nitro, cyano, hydroxy group, an optionally

substituted thiol group (e.g., thiol, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylthio, etc.), an optionally substituted amino group (e.g., amino; meno-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; 5- to 6-membered cyclic amino such as tetrahydropyrrole, piperazine, piperidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyrrole, imidazole, etc.; etc.), an optionally esterified or amidated carboxyl group (e.g., carboxyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl (e.g., trifluoromethyl, methyl, ethyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, butoxy, trifluoromethoxy, trifluoroethoxy, etc.), C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylenedioxy (e.g., -O-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-, -O-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-, etc.), optionally substituted sulfonamide [e.g., an optionally substituted amino group (e.g. amino; mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; 5- to 6-membered cyclic amino such as tetrahydropyrrole, piperazine, piperidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyrrole, imidazole, etc.) which is bound to -SO<sub>2</sub>-, etc.], formyl, C<sub>2-4</sub> alkanoyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, etc.), C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylsulfonyl (e.g., methanesulfonyl, ethanesulfonyl, etc.), etc., and the number of the substituents are preferably 1 to 3.

Examples of the optionally esterified carboxyl group as the substituents for R<sup>1</sup> include

(1) hydrogen;



(2) an optionally substituted alkyl (e.g.,  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, hexyl, heptyl, octyl, nonyl, decyl, etc., preferably lower ( $C_{1-6}$ ) alkyl, etc.);

(3) an optionally substituted cycloalkyl (e.g.,  $C_{3-7}$  cycloalkyl, etc. such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, etc.);

(4) an optionally substituted alkenyl (e.g.,  $C_{2-10}$  alkenyl such as allyl, crotyl, 2-pentenyl, 3-hexenyl, etc., preferably lower ( $C_{2-6}$ ) alkenyl, etc.);

(5) an optionally substituted cycloalkenyl (e.g.,  $C_{3-7}$  cycloalkenyl, etc. such as 2-cyclopentenyl, 2-cyclohexenyl, 2-cyclopentenylmethyl, 2-cyclohexenylmethyl, etc.);

(6) an optionally substituted aryl (e.g., phenyl, naphthyl, etc.); etc., and preferably carboxyl, lower ( $C_{1-6}$ ) alkoxy carbonyl, aryloxy carbonyl (e.g., methoxy carbonyl, ethoxy carbonyl, propoxy carbonyl, phenoxy carbonyl, naphthoxy carbonyl, etc.), etc.

Examples of the substituents, which the above-mentioned (2) optionally substituted alkyl, (3) optionally substituted cycloalkyl, (4) optionally substituted alkenyl, (5) optionally substituted cycloalkenyl and (6) optionally substituted aryl may have,

include halogen (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.), nitro, cyano, hydroxy group, an optionally substituted thiol group (e.g., thiol, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylthio, etc.), an optionally substituted amino group (e.g., amino; mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; 5- to 6-membered cyclic amino such as tetrahydropyrrole, piperazine, piperidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyrrole, imidazole, etc.; etc.), an optionally esterified or amidated carboxyl group (e.g., carboxyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl (e.g., trifluoromethyl, methyl, ethyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, butoxy, trifluoromethoxy, trifluoroethoxy, etc.), formyl, C<sub>2-4</sub> alkanoyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, etc.), C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylsulfonyl (e.g., methanesulfonyl, ethanesulfonyl, etc.), etc., and the number of the substitutes are preferably 1 to 3.

Examples of the optionally amidated carboxyl group as the substitutes for R<sup>1</sup> include an carbonyl group binding to "an optionally substituted amino group", etc. which is the same as that of the above-described "optionally substituted amino group as the substituents for R<sup>1</sup>", and among others, carbamoyl, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, etc. are

preferable.

Examples of the aromatic group in the optionally substituted aromatic group as the substituents for  $R^1$  include 5- to 6-membered aromatic homocyclic or  
5 heterocyclic ring such as phenyl, pyridyl, furyl, thienyl, pyrrolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, thiazolyl, oxazolyl, isothiazolyl, isoxazolyl, tetrazolyl, pyrazinyl pyrimidinyl, pyridazinyl, triazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, etc.; fused aromatic heterocyclic ring such  
10 as benzofuran, indole, benzothiophene, benzoxazole, benzothiazole, indazole, benzimidazole, quinoline, isoquinoline, quinoxaline, phthalazine, quinazoline, cinnoline, etc.; etc. Examples of the substituents for these aromatic groups include halogen (e.g., fluorine,  
15 chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.), nitro, cyano, hydroxy group, an optionally substituted thiol group (e.g., thiol,  $C_{1-4}$  alkylthio, etc.), an optionally substituted amino group (e.g., amino; mono- $C_{1-4}$  alkylamino; di- $C_{1-4}$  alkylamino; 5- to 6-membered cyclic amino such as  
20 tetrahydropyrrole, piperazine, piperidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyrrole, imidazole, etc.; etc.), an optionally esterified or amidated carboxyl group (e.g., carboxyl,  $C_{1-4}$  alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono- $C_{1-4}$  alkylcarbamoyl, di- $C_{1-4}$  alkylcarbamoyl, etc.), an  
25 optionally halogenated  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl (e.g., trifluoromethyl,

methyl, ethyl, etc.), an optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub>  
 alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, butoxy,  
 trifluoromethoxy, trifluoroethoxy, etc.), formyl, C<sub>2-4</sub>  
 alkanoyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, etc.), C<sub>1-4</sub>  
 5 alkylsulfonyl (e.g., methanesulfonyl, ethanesulfonyl,  
 etc.), etc., and the number of the substituents are  
 preferably 1 to 3.

The number of the above-mentioned substituents for R<sup>1</sup>  
 is 1-4 (preferably 1-2) and they may be the same or  
 10 different and present at any possible position on the  
 ring represented by R<sup>1</sup>.

When the group represented by R binds to the 5- to  
 6-membered aromatic ring to form a ring, the group of the  
 formula: R-Z<sup>1</sup>-X-Z<sup>2</sup>- wherein each symbol is as defined  
 15 above (as the group R is preferably hydrogen atom) forms  
 a divalent group such as lower (C<sub>1-6</sub>) alkylenedioxy (e.g.,  
 -O-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-, -O-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-, -O-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-, etc.), oxy-  
 lower (C<sub>1-6</sub>) alkylene-amino (e.g., -O-CH<sub>2</sub>-NH-, -O-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-  
 NH-, etc.), oxy-lower (C<sub>1-6</sub>) alkylenethio (e.g., -O-CH<sub>2</sub>-S-,  
 20 -O-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-S-, etc.), lower (C<sub>1-6</sub>) alkylenediamino (e.g., -  
 NH-CH<sub>2</sub>-NH-, -NH-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-NH-, etc.), thia-lower (C<sub>1-6</sub>)  
 alkylene-amino (e.g., -S-CH<sub>2</sub>-NH-, -S-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-NH-, etc.),  
 etc.

Preferred examples of the further substituent, which  
 25 the "5- to 6-membered ring" of the "5- to 6-membered

aromatic ring which has a group of the formula:  $R-Z^1-X-Z^2-$  wherein each symbol is as defined above, and which may have a further substituent" represented by  $R^1$  may have, in addition to the group of the formula:  $R-Z^1-X-Z^2-$ ,  
 5 include, in particular, a lower ( $C_{1-4}$ ) alkyl optionally substituted with a halogen or a lower ( $C_{1-4}$ ) alkoxy (e.g., methyl, ethyl, t-butyl, trifluoromethyl, methoxymethyl, ethoxymethyl, propoxymethyl, butoxymethyl, methoxyethyl, ethoxyethoxy, propoxyethyl, butoxyethyl, etc.), a lower  
 10 ( $C_{1-4}$ ) alkoxy optionally substituted with a halogen or a lower ( $C_{1-4}$ ) alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, butoxy, t-butoxy, trifluoromethoxy, methoxymethoxy, ethoxymethoxy, propoxymethoxy, butoxymethoxy, methoxyethoxy, ethoxyethoxy, propoxyethoxy, butoxyethoxy,  
 15 methoxypropoxy, ethoxypropoxy, propoxypropoxy, butoxypropoxy, etc.), halogen (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, etc.), nitro, cyano, an amino group optionally substituted with 1-2 lower ( $C_{1-4}$ ) alkyl groups, formyl group or lower ( $C_{2-4}$ ) alkanoyl groups (e.g., amino, methylamino, dimethylamino, fromylamino, acethylamino,  
 20 etc.), 5- to 6-membered cyclic amino (e.g., 1-pyrrolidinyl, 1-piperazinyl, 1-piperidinyl, 4-morpholino, 4-thiomorpholino, 1-imidazolyl, 4-tetrahydropyranyl, etc.), etc.

25 When  $R^1$  is a benzene, the "group of the formula: R-

$Z^1-X-Z^2-$  is preferably present at para position and the further substituent, which the "5- to 6-membered aromatic ring which may have, in addition to the group of the formula:  $R-Z^1-X-Z^2-$  is preferably present at meta position.

In the above formula, examples of the "optionally substituted imino group" represent by Y include a divalent group of the formula:  $-N(R^5)-$  wherein  $R^5$  is hydrogen atom or a substituent, etc.

As  $R^5$ , hydrogen atom, an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, an optionally substituted heterocyclic group, an optionally substituted hydroxy group, an optionally substituted thiol group (the sulfur atom may be oxidized to form an optionally substituted sulfinyl group or an optionally substituted sulfonyl group), an optionally substituted amino group, an optionally esterified or amidated carboxyl group, and an optionally substituted acyl group, etc. are preferable, and hydrogen atom, an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, an optionally substituted heterocyclic group and an optionally substituted acyl group, etc. are more preferable.

As the preferable  $R^5$ , hydrogen atom, an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, an optionally substituted acyl group, etc. are preferable,  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-4}$

alkylsulfonyl, formyl, C<sub>2-5</sub> alkanoyl etc. are more preferable, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, formyl, C<sub>2-5</sub> alkanoyl etc. are further more preferable, and in particular, formyl or ethyl is preferable. As other preferably R<sup>5</sup>, there is a group represented by the formula  $-(CH_2)_k-R^6$  [wherein k represents 0 or 1, R<sup>6</sup> represents an optionally substituted 5- to 6-membered monocyclic aromatic group (similar to "(6) an optionally substituted 5- to 6-membered monocyclic aromatic group" exemplified with respect to an optionally substituted acyl group as the substituent for R<sup>1</sup>; preferably phenyl, pyrazolyl, thiazolyl, oxazolyl, tetrazolyl, etc., each being optionally substituent with halogen, optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, optionally halogenated C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy, etc.)].

Example of the "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" as R<sup>5</sup> are the same as the "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" of R. Examples of the "optionally substituted heterocyclic group" as R<sup>5</sup> include the same "optionally substituted heterocyclic group" as the substituent for the "optionally substituted hydrocarbon group" represented by R, and examples of the "optionally substituted hydroxy group", the "optionally substituted thiol group", the "optionally substituted amino group", the "optionally esterified or amidated carboxyl group"

and the "optionally substituted acyl group" as  $R^5$  include the same "optionally substituted hydroxy group", "optionally substituted thiol group", "optionally substituted amino group", "optionally esterified or amidated carboxyl group" and "optionally substituted acyl group" as the substituent for  $R^1$ .

In the above formula (I), examples of the "optionally substituted aliphatic hydrocarbon group" (aliphatic straight chain hydrocarbon group and aliphatic cyclic hydrocarbon group) represented by  $R^2$  and  $R^3$  include

- (1) an optionally substituted alkyl (e.g.,  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, hexyl, heptyl, octyl, nonyl, decyl, etc., preferably lower ( $C_{1-6}$ ) alkyl, etc.);
- (2) an optionally substituted cycloalkyl (e.g.,  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, cyclooctyl, etc.; etc.), provided that

(2-1) said cycloalkyl may contain one hetero-atom selected from a sulfur atom, an oxygen atom and a nitrogen atom to form oxirane, thiorane, aziridine, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, pyrrolidine, tetrahydropyran, tetrahydrothiopyran, tetrahydrothiopyran 1-oxide, piperidine, etc. (preferably, 6-membered ring



such as tetrahydropyran, tetrahydrothiopyran, piperidine, etc.); that

(2-2) said cycloalkyl may be fused with a benzene ring to form indane, tetrahydronaphthalene, etc. (preferably,

5 indane, etc.); and that

(2-3) said cycloalkyl may have a bridging through a straight chain constituted by 1-2 carbon atoms to form a bridged hydrocarbon residue such as bicyclo[2.2.1]heptyl, bicyclo[2.2.2]octyl, bicyclo[3.2.1]octyl,

10 bicyclo[3.2.2]nonyl, etc., preferably, a cyclohexyl group, etc. having a bridging through a straight chain constituted by 1-2 carbon atoms, and more preferably bicycle[2.2.1]heptyl, etc.;

(3) an optionally substituted alkenyl (e.g., C<sub>2-10</sub> alkenyl such as allyl, crotyl, 2-pentenyl, 3-hexenyl etc., preferably lower (C<sub>2-6</sub>) alkenyl, etc.);

(4) an optionally substituted cycloalkenyl (e.g., C<sub>3-7</sub> cycloalkenyl, etc. such as 2-cyclopentenyl, 2-cyclohexenyl, 2-cyclopentenylmethyl, 2-cyclohexenylmethyl, etc.); etc.

Examples of the substituents, which the above-mentioned (1) optionally substituted alkyl, (2) optionally substituted cycloalkyl, (3) optionally substituted alkenyl and (4) optionally substituted cycloalkenyl may have, include halogen (e.g., fluorine,

chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.), an optionally halogenated lower (C<sub>1-4</sub>) alkyl, an optionally halogenated lower C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, butoxy, trifluoromethoxy, trifluoroethoxy, etc.), C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylenedioxy (e.g., -O-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-, -O-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-, etc.), formyl, C<sub>2-4</sub> alkanoyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, etc.), C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylsulfonyl (e.g., methanesulfonyl, ethanesulfonyl, etc.), phenyl-lower (C<sub>1-4</sub>) alkyl, C<sub>3-7</sub> cycloalkyl, cyano, nitro, hydroxy group, an optionally substituted thiol group (e.g., thiol, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylthio, etc.), an optionally substituted amino group (e.g., amino; mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylamino; 5- to 6-membered cyclic amino such as tetrahydropyrrole, piperazine, piperidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyrrole, imidazole, etc.; etc.), an optionally esterified or amidated carboxyl group (e.g., carboxyl, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkylcarbamoyl, etc.), a lower (C<sub>1-4</sub>) alkoxy-carbamoyl, oxo group (preferably, halogen, an optionally halogenated lower (C<sub>1-4</sub>) alkyl, an optionally halogenated lower (C<sub>1-4</sub>) alkoxy, phenyl-lower (C<sub>1-4</sub>) alkyl, C<sub>3-7</sub> cycloalkyl, cyano, hydroxy group, etc.), etc., and the number of the substituents are preferably 1 to 3.

Preferred examples of the "optionally substituted aliphatic hydrocarbon group" represented by R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup>

include (1) a lower ( $C_{1-6}$ ) straight or branched alkyl which may have 1-3 substituents selected from the class consisting of halogen, cyano, hydroxy group and  $C_{3-7}$  cycloalkyl;

- 5 (2)  $C_{5-8}$  cycloalkyl which may be substituted with 1-3 substituents selected from the class consisting of a halogen, an optionally halogenated lower ( $C_{1-4}$ ) alkyl and a phenyl-lower ( $C_{1-4}$ ) alkyl, which may contain a hetero-atom selected from the class consisting of a sulfur atom,  
 10 an oxygen atom and a nitrogen atom, which may be fused with a benzene ring and which may have a bridging through a  $C_{1-2}$  straight chain (e.g., cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, cyclooctyl, tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydrothiapyranyl, piperidinyl, indanyl,  
 15 tetrahydronaphthalenyl, piperidinyl, indanyl, tetrahydronaphthalenyl, bicyclo[2.2.1]heptyl, etc., each of which may be substituted); etc.

In the above formula (I), example of the "optionally substituted alicyclic (non-aromatic)  
 20 heterocyclic group" represented by  $R^2$  and  $R^3$  include 5- to 6-membered non-aromatic heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 4 hetero-atoms consisting of 1 to 2 kinds of hetero-atoms selected from oxygen atom, sulfur atom and nitrogen atom such as tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene,  
 25 dioxolane, dithiolane, oxathiolane, pyrrolidine,

pyrroline, imidazolidine, imidazoline, pyrazolidine,  
 pyrazoline, piperidine, piperazine, oxazine, oxadiazine,  
 thiazine, thiadiazine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyran,  
 tetrahydropyran etc. Among others, a 5- to 6-membered  
 5 non-aromatic heterocyclic ring containing 1 hetero-atom  
 such as tetrahydrofuran, piperidine, tetrahydropyran,  
 tetrahydrothiopyran, etc. and so on are preferable.

Examples of the substituent, which the "alicyclic  
 heterocyclic group" in the "optionally substituted  
 10 alicyclic heterocyclic group" represented by  $R^2$  and  $R^3$   
 may have, include halogen (e.g., fluorine, chlorine,  
 bromine, iodine, etc.), an optionally halogenated lower  
 ( $C_{1-4}$ ) alkyl, an optionally halogenated  $C_{1-4}$  alkoxy (e.g.,  
 methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, butoxy, trifluoromethoxy,  
 15 trifluoroethoxy, etc.),  $C_{1-4}$ alkylenedioxy (e.g.,  $-O-CH_2-O-$ ,  
 $-O-CH_2-CH_2-O-$ , etc.), formyl,  $C_{2-4}$ alkanoyl (e.g., acetyl,  
 propionyl, etc.),  $C_{1-4}$ alkylsulfonyl (e.g., methanesulfonyl,  
 ethanesulfonyl, etc.), phenyl-lower( $C_{1-4}$ )alkyl,  $C_{3-7}$   
 cycloalkyl, cyano, nitro, hydroxy group, an optionally  
 20 substituted thiol group (e.g., thiol,  $C_{1-4}$  alkylthio,  
 etc.), an optionally substituted amino group (e.g. amino;  
 mono- $C_{1-4}$  alkylamino; di- $C_{1-4}$ alkylamino; 5- to 6-membered  
 cyclic amino such as tetrahydropyrrole, piperazine,  
 piperidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine, pyrrole,  
 25 imidazole, etc.; etc.), an optionally esterified or

amidated carboxyl group (e.g., carboxyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C<sub>1-4</sub>alkylcarbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-4</sub>alkylcarbamoyl, etc.), a lower (C<sub>1-4</sub>) alkoxy-carbonyl, oxo group (preferably, halogen, an optionally halogenated lower (C<sub>1-4</sub>) alkyl, an optionally halogenated lower (C<sub>1-4</sub>) alkoxy, phenyl-lower (C<sub>1-4</sub>) alkyl, C<sub>3-7</sub> cycloalkyl, cyano, hydroxy group, etc.), etc., and the number of the substituents are preferably 1 to 3.

Among others, as R<sup>2</sup>, an optionally substituted acyclic hydrocarbon group (e.g., alkyl, alkenyl, etc., each of which may be substituted) is preferable, an optionally substituted lower C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl group is more preferable, and in particular, an optionally substituted methyl group is preferable.

As R<sup>3</sup>, an optionally substituted alicyclic hydrocarbon group (e.g., cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, etc., each of which may be substituted; preferably, an optionally substituted lower C<sub>3-8</sub> cycloalkyl group; and more preferably, an optionally substituted cyclohexyl) or an optionally substituted alicyclic heterocyclic group (preferably, an optionally substituted saturated alicyclic heterocyclic group (preferably, 6-membered ring group); more preferably, an optionally substituted tetrahydropyranyl, an optionally substituted tetrahydrothiopyranyl or an optionally substituted

piperidyl; an in particular, an optionally substituted tetrahydropyranyl) is preferable.

- As the compound represented by the above formula (I),
- 7-(4-ethoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-ethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-
- 5 (tetrahydropyran-4-yl) amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,
- 1-ethyl-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-
- (tetrahydropyran-4-yl) amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,
- 10 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-ethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-
- (tetrahydropyran-4-yl) amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,
- 7-(4-ethoxythoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-
- (tetrahydropyran-4-yl) amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-
- 15 benzazepine-4-carboxamide,
- 1-formyl-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-
- (tetrahydropyran-4-yl) amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,
- 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-
- 20 (tetrahydropyran-4-yl) amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,
- 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-
- (tetrahydropyran-5-yl) amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-propyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,
- 25 N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-

- yl) amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-propyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,  
1-benzyl-7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl) amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-
- 5 benzazepine-4-carboxamide,  
7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-cyclopropylmethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl) amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,  
7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-
- 10 (tetrahydropyran-4-yl) amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-phenyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,  
7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3,4-methylenedioxy)phenyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-
- 15 yl) amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,  
7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-methyloxazol-5-yl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl) amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,  
1-allyl-7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-
- 20 (tetrahydropyran-4-yl) amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,  
7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl) amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(3-
- 25 thienyl)methyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,  
7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-

- (tetrahydropyran-4-yl) amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(thiazol-2-yl)methyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,  
7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(1-methylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl) amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,
- 5 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-methylisothiazol-4-yl)methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl) amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,
- 10 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(1-ethylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl) amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,
- 15 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-isobutyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl) amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,
- 1-isobutyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl) amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,
- 20 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl) amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(thiazol-5-yl)methyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,
- 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl) amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(1-
- 25



methyltetrazol-5-yl)methyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide,

7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(2-

5 methyltetrazol-5-yl)methyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide etc. are preferable.

Examples of the salts of the compound represented by the formula (I) include a pharmaceutically acceptable salt such as a salt with inorganic base, a salt with  
10 organic base, a salt with inorganic acid, a salt with organic acid, a salt with basic or acidic amino acid, etc. Suitable examples of the salt with the inorganic base include a salt with alkali metal (e.g. sodium, potassium, etc.), alkaline earth metal (e.g. calcium, magnesium,  
15 etc.), aluminum, ammonium, etc. Suitable examples of the salt with the organic base include a salt with trimethylamine, triethylamine, pyridine, picoline, ethanolamine, diethanolamine, triethanolamine, dicyclohexylamine, N,N'-dibenzylethylenediamine, etc.  
20 Suitable examples of the salt with the inorganic acid include a salt with hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, nitric acid, sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid, etc. Suitable examples of the salt with the organic acid include a salt with formic acid, acetic acid,  
25 trifluoroacetic acid, fumaric acid, oxalic acid, tartaric

acid, maleic acid, citric acid, succinic acid, malic acid, methanesulfonic acid, benzenesulfonic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, etc. Suitable examples of the salt with the basic amino acid include a salt with arginine, lysine, ornithine, etc. Suitable examples of the salt with the acidic amino acid include a salt with aspartic acid, glutamic acid, etc. The compound of the formula (I) of the present invention may be hydrated or non-hydrated. When the compound of the formula (I) of the present invention exists as configuration isomer, diastereomer, conformer, etc., it is possible to isolate individual isomers with a per se known separation and purification method, if desired. When the compound of the formula (I) of the present invention is racemate, it can be separated into (S)-isomer and (R)-isomer with usual optical resolution and individual optical isomers and a mixture thereof are included in the scope of the present invention.

The pro-drug of the compound of the formula (I) or a salt thereof of the present invention [hereinafter, referred to as Compound (I) in some cases] means a compound which is converted to Compound (I) under the physiological condition or with a reaction due to an enzyme, an gastric acid, etc. in the living body, that is, a compound which is converted to Compound (I) with

oxidation, reduction, hydrolysis, etc. according to an enzyme; a compound which is converted to Compound (I) with hydrolysis by gastric acid, etc.; etc. Examples of the pro-drug of Compound (I) include a compound wherein an amino group of Compound (I) is substituted with acyl, alkyl, phosphoric acid, etc. (e.g. a compound wherein an amino group of Compound (I) is substituted with eicosanyl, alanyl, pentylaminocarbonyl, (5-methyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methoxycarbonyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, pyrrolidylmethyl, pivaloyloxymethyl, tert-butyl, etc.); a compound wherein an hydroxy group of Compound (I) is substituted with acyl, alkyl, phosphoric acid, boric acid, etc. (e.g. a compound wherein an hydroxy group of Compound (I) is modified with acetyl, palmitoyl, propanoyl, pivaloyl, succinyl, fumaryl, alanyl, dimethylaminomethylcarbonyl, etc.); a compound wherein a carboxyl group of Compound (I) is modified with ester, amide, etc. (e.g. a compound wherein a carboxyl group of Compound (I) is modified with ethyl ester, phenyl ester, carboxymethyl ester, dimethylaminomethyl ester, pivaloyloxymethyl ester, ethoxycarbonyloxyethyl ester, phthalidyl ester, (5-methyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl ester, cyclohexyloxycarbonylethyl ester, methyl amide, etc.); etc. These pro-drugs can be produced by per se known method from Compound (I).

The pro-drug of Compound (I) may be a compound which is converted into Compound (I) under the physiological conditions as described in "Pharmaceutical Research and Development", Vol.7 (Drug Design), pages 163-198 published in 1990 by Hirokawa Publishing Co.

Compound (I) may be labeled with isotope (e.g.  $^3\text{H}$ ,  $^{14}\text{C}$ ,  $^{35}\text{S}$ ,  $^{125}\text{I}$ , etc), etc.

The present compound of the formula (I) or a salt thereof alone or as an admixture with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier (e.g. solid formulations such as tablets, capsules, granules, powders, etc.; liquid formulations such as syrups, injections, etc.) may be orally or non-orally (preferably orally) administered.

Examples of non-oral formulations include injections, drops, suppositories, pessaries, etc. In particular, pessary is useful for the prevention of infectious diseases of HIV.

Examples of the carriers include various organic or inorganic carriers which are generally used in this field. For example, an excipient, a lubricant, a binder, a disintegrating agent, etc. are used in solid formulations, and a solvent, a solubilizer, a suspending agent, an isotonizing agent, a buffer, a soothing agent, etc. are used in liquid formulations. In addition, if desired, an appropriate additive such as a preservative, an

antioxidant, a colorant, a sweetener, etc. may be used.

Suitable examples of the excipient include lactose, sucrose, D-mannitol, starch, crystalline cellulose, light silicic acid anhydride, etc. Suitable examples of the

5 lubricant include magnesium stearate, calcium stearate, talc, colloidal silica, etc. Suitable examples of the binder include crystalline cellulose, sucrose, D-mannitol, dextrin, hydroxypropyl cellulose, hydroxypropylmethyl cellulose, polyvinyl-pyrrolidone, etc. Suitable examples

10 of the disintegrating agent include starch, carboxymethyl cellulose, carboxymethyl cellulose calcium, croscarmellose sodium, sodium carboxymethyl starch, etc. Suitable examples of the solvent include water for injection, alcohol, propylene glycol, macrogol, sesame

15 oil, corn oil, etc. Suitable examples of the solubilizer include polyethylene glycol, propylene glycol, D-mannitol, benzyl benzoate, ethanol, trisaminomethane, cholesterol, triethanolamine, sodium carbonate, sodium citrate, etc. Suitable examples of the suspending agent include

20 surfactants such as stearyl triethanolamine, sodium laurylsulfate, laurylaminopropionic acid, lecithin, benzalkonium chloride, benzetonium chloride, glycerin monostearate, etc.; hydrophilic polymers such as polyvinylalcohol, polyvinylpyrrolidone, sodium

25 carboxymethyl cellulose, methyl cellulose, hydroxymethyl

cellulose hydroxyethyl cellulose, hydroxypropyl cellulose,  
etc. Suitable examples of the isotonizing agent include  
sodium chloride, glycerin, D-mannitol, etc. Suitable  
examples of the buffer include a buffer solution of  
5 phosphate, acetate, carbonate, citrate, etc. Suitable  
examples of the soothing agent include benzylalcohol, etc.  
Suitable examples of the preservative include  
paraoxybenzoic acid esters, chlorobutanol, benzylalcohol  
phenethylalcohol, dehydroacetic acid, sorbic acid, etc.  
10 Suitable examples of the antioxidant include sulfites,  
ascorbic acid, etc.

The present invention further provides production  
methods of the compound of the formula (I) or a salt  
thereof.

15 The compound of the formula (I) or a salt thereof  
can be produced in accordance with per se known methods,  
for example, the methods described in JP-A-73476/1996, or  
analogous methods thereto, etc.

A salt of the compound of the formulas (II), (III),  
20 (IV), (V), (I-1) and (I-2) (hereinafter, abbreviated as  
Compound(II), Compound(III), Compound(IV), Compound(V),  
Compound(I-1) and Compound(I-2), respectively, in some  
cases) may be similar to that of Compound (I).

In the following reactions, when the starting  
25 compounds have, as substituents, amino group, carboxyl

group and/or hydroxy group, these groups may be protected by conventional protective groups such as those generally employed in peptide chemistry, etc. After the reaction, if necessary, the protective groups may be removed to obtain the desired compound.

Examples of an amino-protective group include an optionally substituted  $C_{1-6}$  alkylcarbonyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, etc.), formyl, phenylcarbonyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyloxycarbonyl (e.g., methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, t-butoxycarbonyl, etc.), phenyloxycarbonyl (e.g., benzyloxycarbonyl, etc.),  $C_{7-10}$  aralkyloxycarbonyl (e.g., benzyloxycarbonyl, etc.), trityl, phthaloyl, etc. These protective groups may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents such as halogen atom (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.),  $C_{1-6}$  alkylcarbonyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, butyryl, etc.), nitro group, etc.

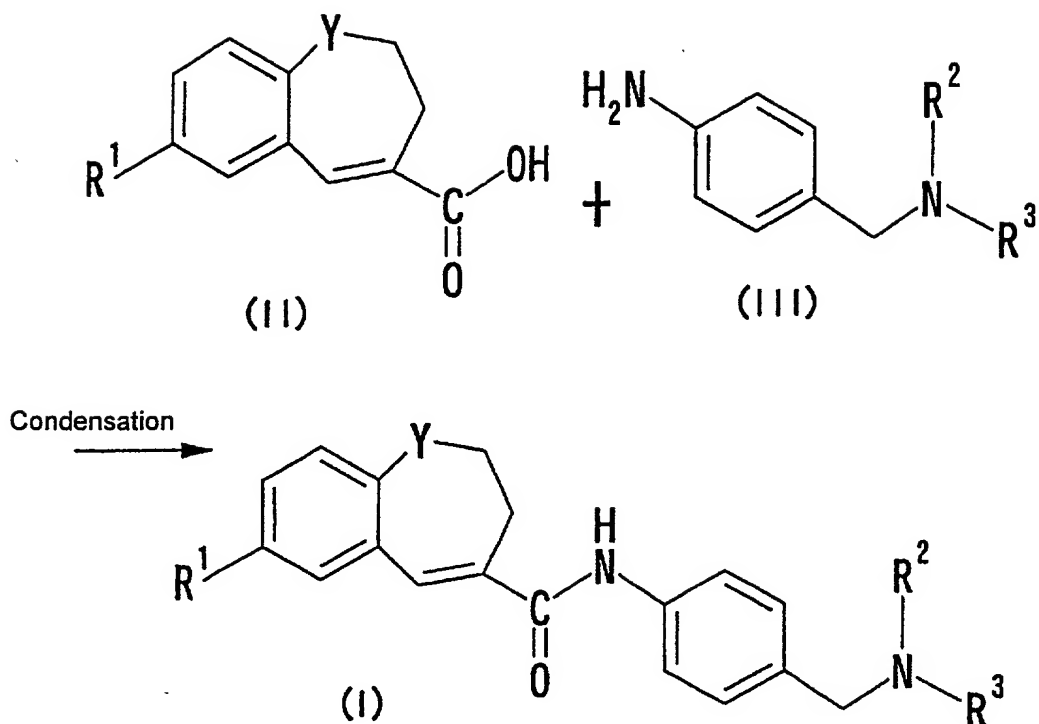
Examples of a carboxyl-protective group include an optionally substituted  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl (e.g., methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, tert-butyl, etc.), phenyl, trityl, silyl, etc. These protective groups may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents such as halogen atom (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.),  $C_{1-6}$  alkylcarbonyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, butyryl, etc.), formyl, nitro group, etc.

Examples of a hydroxy-protective group include an

optionally substituted C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl (e.g., methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, tert-butyl, etc.), phenyl, C<sub>7-10</sub> aralkyl (e.g., benzyl, etc.), C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylcarbonyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, etc.), formyl, phenyloxycarbonyl, C<sub>7-10</sub> aralkyloxycarbonyl (e.g., benzyloxycarbonyl, etc.),  
pyranyl, furanyl, silyl, etc. These protective groups may be substituted by 1 to 4 substituents such as halogen atom (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.), C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, phenyl, C<sub>7-10</sub> aralkyl, nitro group, etc.

These protective group may be introduced or removed by per se known methods (e.g. a method described in Protective Groups in Organic Chemistry (J.F.W. McOmie et al.; Plenum Press Inc.). For example, employable method for removing the protective groups is a method using an acid, a base, reduction, ultraviolet ray, hydrazine, phenylhydrazine, sodium N-methyldithiocarbamate, tetrabutylammonium fluoride, palladium acetate, etc.  
[Method A]





wherein each symbol is as defined above.

This production method is carried out by reacting Compound (II) with Compound (III) to obtain the anilide Compound (I).

The condensation reaction of Compounds (II) and (III) is carried out by usual methods for peptide synthesis. Said methods for peptide synthesis are employed according to optional known methods, for example, methods described in "Peptide Synthesis" written by M. Bodansky and M. A. Ondetti, Interscience, New York, 1966; "The Proteins", volume 2, written by F. M. Finn and K. Hofmann, H. Nenrath and R. L. Hill edition,

Academic Press Inc., New York, 1976; "peputido-gosei no kiso to jikken (Basis and Experiment of Peptide Synthesis)" written by Nobuo Izumiya et al., Maruzen K.K., 1985; etc., as well as azide method, chloride method, acid anhydride method, mixed acid anhydride method, DCC method, active ester method, method using Woodward reagent K, carbonyldiimidazole method, oxidation-reduction method, DCC/HONB method, etc. and in addition WSC method, method using diethyl cyanophosphate (DEPC), etc. The condensation reaction can be carried out in a solvent.

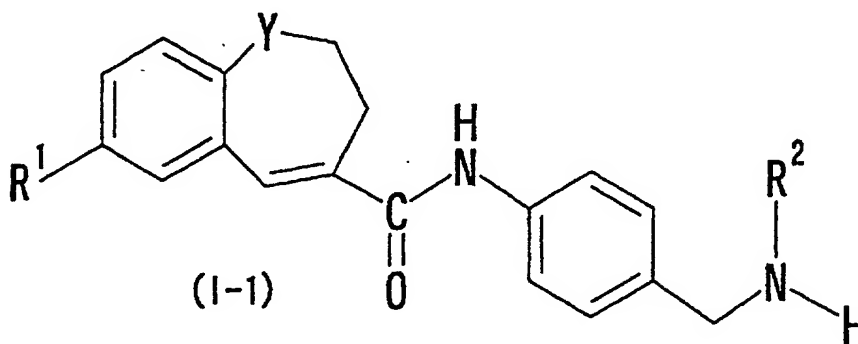
Examples of the solvents to be employed in the reaction include anhydrous or hydrous N,N-dimethylformamide (DMF), dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO), pyridine, chloroform, dichloromethane, tetrahydrofuran (THF), dioxane, acetonitrile, or a suitable mixture of these solvents.

Usually, about 1-2 moles of the Compound (III) are used per 1 mole of the Compound (II). The reaction temperature is generally about  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  to about  $50^{\circ}\text{C}$ , preferably about  $-10^{\circ}\text{C}$  to about  $30^{\circ}\text{C}$  and the reaction time is generally about 1 to about 100 hours, preferably about 2 to about 40 hours. The thus obtained anilide derivative (I) can be isolated and purified by known separation and purification methods such as concentration,

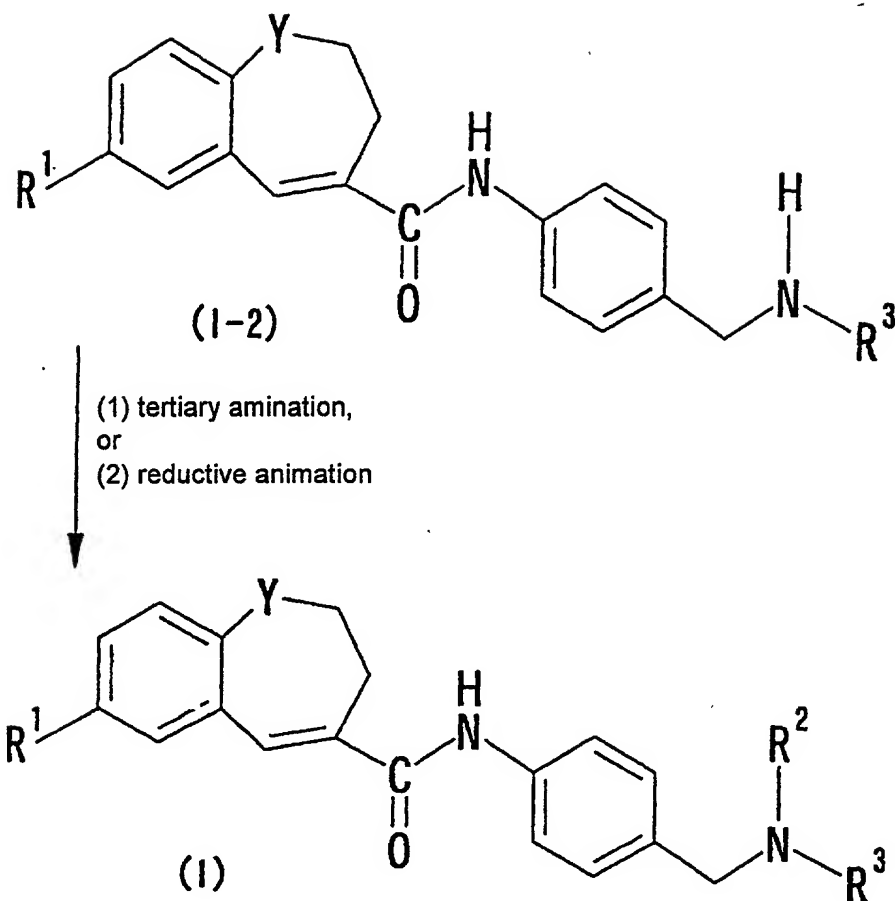
concentration under reduced pressure, extraction, crystallization, recrystallization, solvent convert, chromatography, etc.

In addition, the compound of the formula (II) or a salt thereof is a novel compound and useful as an intermediate for producing the compound of the formula (I) or a salt thereof.

[Method B]



or



(1) Compound (I) can be produced by reacting Compound (I-1) or (I-2) with halogenated alkyl or halogenated aralkyl. Examples of a halogen atom include chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc. and usually about 1 to 2 moles of the halogenated alkyl or halogenated aralkyl is used per mole of Compound (I-1) or (I-2). If necessary, the reaction smoothly proceeds by addition of about once to thrice moles of a base such as triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, pyridine, lithium hydride, sodium

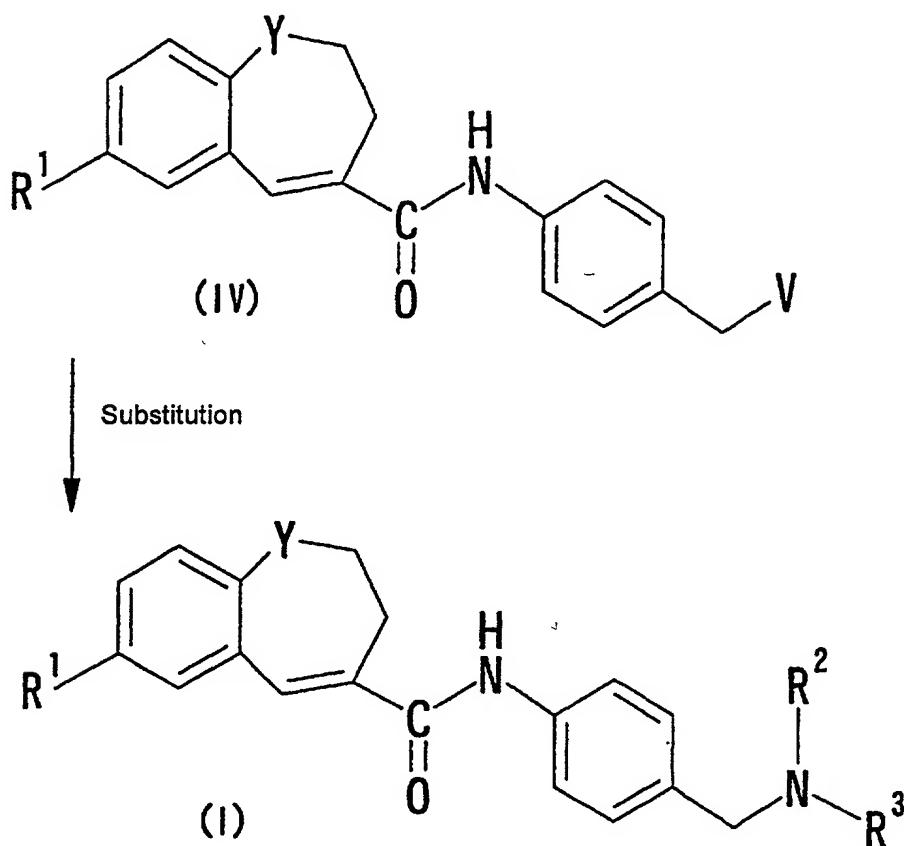
hydride, sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, sodium hydrogen carbonate and further sodium iodide, potassium iodide, etc.

This tertiary amination reaction is carried out in  
5 an inert solvent such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, isopropanol, n-butanol, tetrahydrofuran, diethyl ether, dimethoxyethane, 1,4-dioxane, toluene, benzene, xylene, dichloromethane, chloroform, 1,2-dichloroethane, dimethylformamide (DMF), dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO),  
10 pyridine, etc., or a mixture of these solvents. The reaction temperature is generally about 0°C to 180°C, and the reaction time is generally about 1 hour to about 40 hours. This reaction is preferably carried out under inert gas (e.g. nitrogen, argon, etc.) atmosphere.

15 (2) Compound (I) having a tertiary amino can be produced by reacting Compound (I-1) or (I-2) with an aldehyde compound in the presence of a reductive amination reagent such as triacetoxysodium borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, sodium borohydride, etc. The  
20 conditions of this reductive amination reaction vary depending on the reagent to be used. For example, when sodium triacetoxysodium borohydride is used, reaction is carried out in an inert solvent such as dichloromethane, chloroform, 1,2-dichloroethane, tetrahydrofuran, diethyl  
25 ether, dioxane, acetonitrile, dimethylformamide (DMF),

etc., or a mixture of these solvents. In this case, about 1 to 2 moles of the reagent is used per mole of Compound (I-1) or (I-2). The reaction temperature is generally about 0°C to about 80°C, and the reaction time is generally about 1 hour to about 40 hours. This reaction is preferably carried out under inert gas (e.g. nitrogen, argon, etc.) atmosphere.

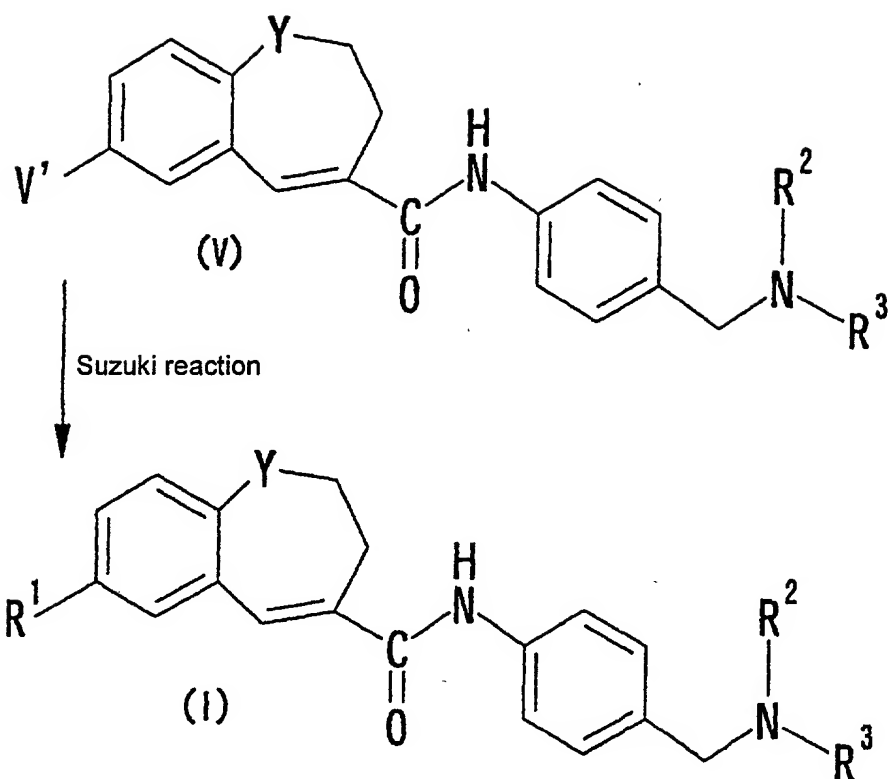
[Method C]



wherein  $V$  in the Compound (IV) is a halogen atom (chlorine, bromine, iodine, etc.), or a sulfonyloxy group

(methanesulfonyloxy group, trifluoromethanesulfonyloxy group, benzenesulfonyloxy group, toluenesulfonyloxy group, etc.), and the other symbols are as defined above.

Compound (I) having a tertiary amino group can be  
5 produced by reacting Compound (IV) and a secondary amine compound. Usually, about 1 to 3 moles of the secondary amine compound is used per mole of Compound (IV). If necessary, the reaction smoothly proceeds by addition of about once to thrice moles of a base such as  
10 triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, pyridine, lithium hydride, sodium hydride, sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, sodium hydrogen carbonate and further sodium iodide, potassium iodide, etc. This substitution reaction is carried out  
15 in an inert solvent such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, isopropanol, n-butanol, tetrahydrofuran, diethyl ether, dimethoxyethane, 1,4-dioxane, toluene, benzene, xylene, dichloromethane, chloroform, 1,2-dichloroethane, dimethylformamide (DMF), dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO),  
20 pyridine, etc., or a mixture of these solvents. The reaction temperature is generally about  $-10^{\circ}\text{C}$  to about  $180^{\circ}\text{C}$ , and the reaction time is generally about 1 hour to about 40 hours. The reaction is carried out preferably under inert gas (e.g. nitrogen, argon, etc.) atmosphere.  
25 [Method D]



wherein V' in Compound (V) is a halogen atom (bromine, iodine, etc.) or a sulfonyloxy group (trifluoromethanesulfonyloxy group, etc.), and the other symbols are as defined above.

Compound (I) wherein the group R<sup>1</sup> is a 5- to 6-membered aromatic ring group can be produced by subjecting Compound (V) to, for example, Suzuki reaction [cross condensation reaction of aryl borate with e.g. aryl halide or aryloxytrifluoromethane-sulfonate in the presence of a palladium catalyst; A. Suzuki et al., Synth. Commun. 1981, 111, 513]. Usually, about 1-1.5 times moles of aryl borate is used per mole of Compound (V) to



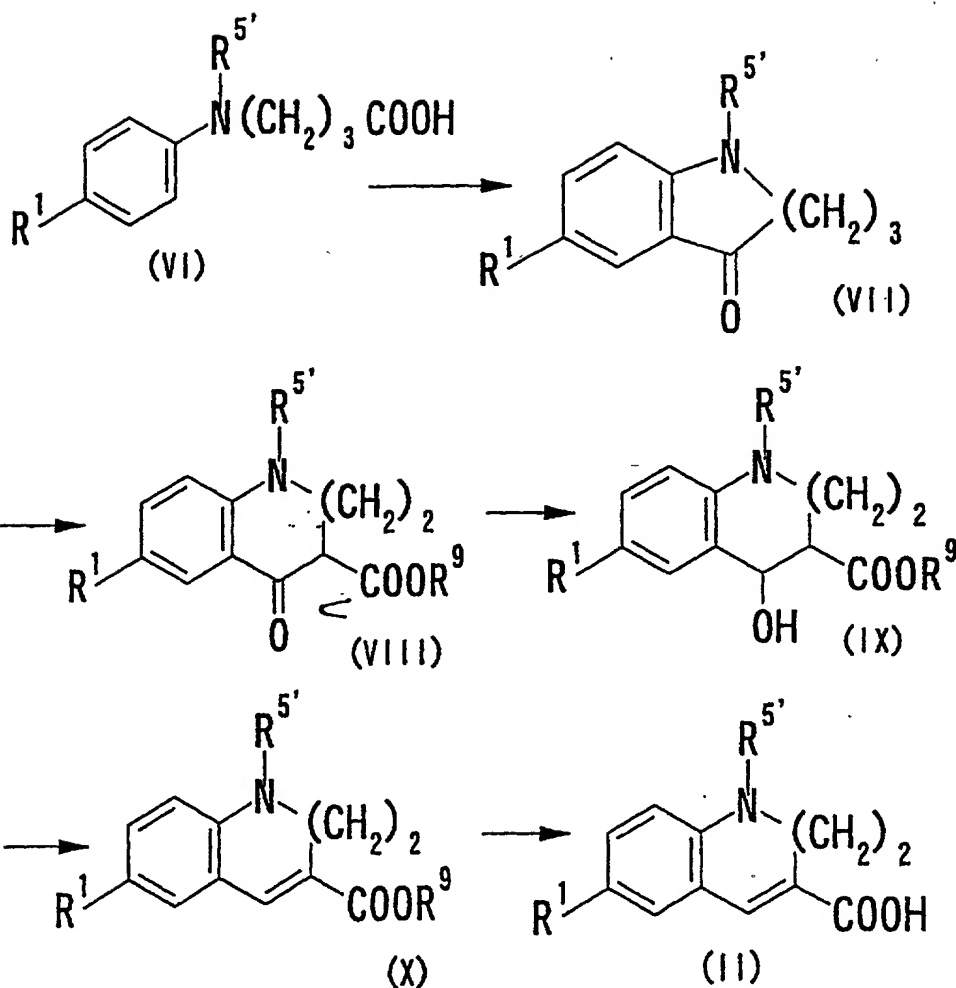
obtain Compound (I).

The thus obtained Compound (I) can be isolated and purified by known separation and purification methods such as concentration, concentration under reduced  
5 pressure, extraction, crystallization, recrystallization, solvent convert, chromatography, etc.

Compound (II) used as a starting material can be produced by a known method (e.g. method described in JP-A-73476/1996, etc.) or the methods analogous thereto.  
10 For example, Compound (II) can be produced by a method described in the following Reaction Scheme I or II, a method described in the following Reference Examples or the methods analogous thereto.

Reaction Scheme I

1004831-12401

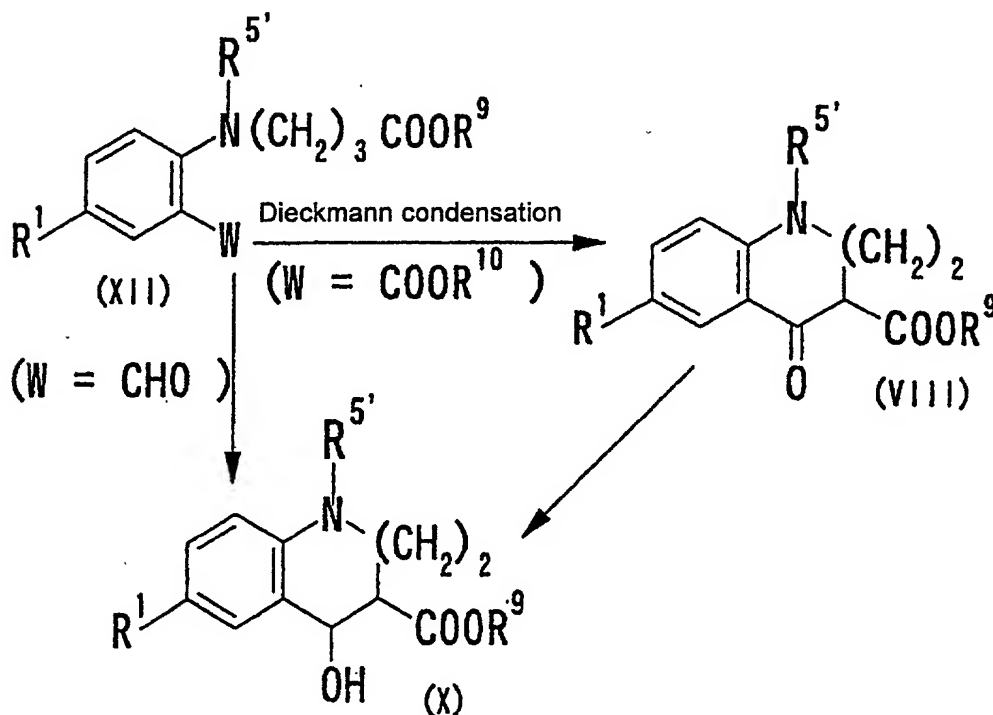


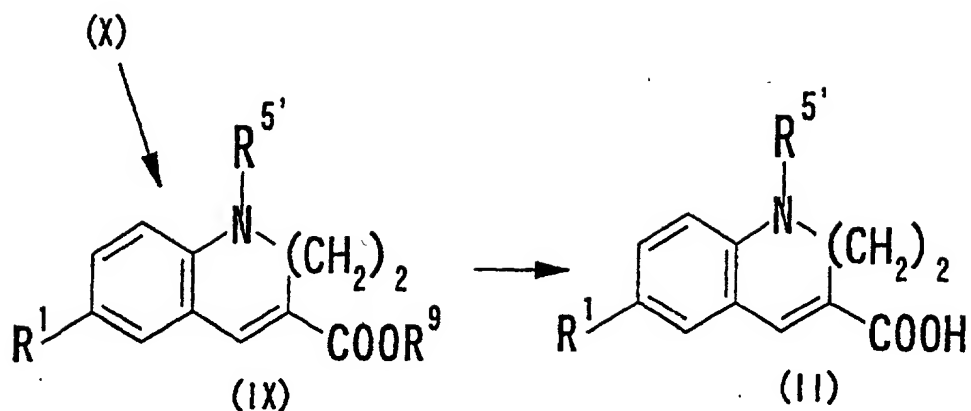
wherein  $R^9$  is a  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl group,  $R^5$  has the same meaning as the substituent represented by  $R^5$ , and the other symbols are as defined above.

- 5 In this reaction, the Compound (VI) is heated with polyphosphoric acid, or Compound (VI) is converted to acid chloride with thionyl chloride, oxalyl chloride, phosphorus oxychloride, phosphorus pentachloride, etc., followed by subjecting the resulting acid chloride to

usual Friedel-Crafts reaction and cyclizing the same to produce Compound (VII). Compound (VII) is then reacted with carbonate ester in the presence of a base to produce ketoester (VIII). Compound (VIII) is subjected to  
 5 reduction with catalytic hydrogenation or sodium borohydride, etc. to produce Compound (IX). Compound (IX) is subjected to dehydration by the conventional method to produce Compound (X). Compound (X) is  
 10 subjected to ester hydrolysis to produce unsaturated carboxylic acid (II).

Reaction Scheme II



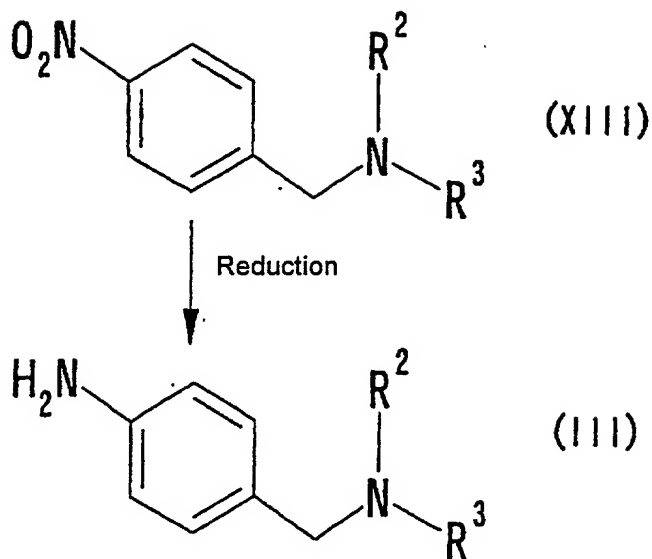


wherein  $\text{R}^{10}$  is  $\text{C}_{1-4}$  alkyl group and the other symbols are as defined above.

The Compound (VIII) or (IX) can be produced by  
 5    subjecting the Compound (XII) to Dieckmann condensation  
 (J. P. Schaefer and J. J. Bloomfield, Org. Reactions,  
 1967, 15, 1). Compound (VIII) or (IX) is subjected to  
 the reactions as described in Reaction Scheme I to  
 produce unsaturated carboxylic acid (II).

10    Compound (III) can be produced by a known method  
 (e.g. method described in JP-A-73476/1996, etc.) or the  
 methods analogous thereto. For example, Compound (III)  
 can be produced by a method described in the following  
 Reaction Scheme III, a method described in the following  
 15    Reference Examples or the methods analogous thereto.

Reaction Scheme 111



The reduction of Compound (XIII) can be carried out by per se known methods, for example, reduction with metal, reduction with metal hydride, reduction with metal hydride complex compound, reduction with metal hydride complex compound, reduction with diborane or substituted borane, catalytic hydrogenation, etc. That is, this reaction is carried out by treating Compound (XIII) with a reducing agent. Examples of the reducing agent include

5 metal such as reduced iron, zinc powder, etc.; alkali metal borohydride (e.g., sodium borohydride, lithium borohydride, etc.); metal hydride complex compound such as aluminum lithium hydride, etc.; metal hydride such as sodium hydride etc.; organic tin compound (triphenyltin

10 hydride, etc.), metal complex compound and metal salt such as nickel compound, zinc compound etc.; catalytic

15

reducing agent using hydrogen and transition metal catalyst such as palladium, platinum, rhodium, etc.; diborane; etc. Among others, as the reducing agent, catalytic reducing agent using hydrogen and transition metal catalyst such as palladium, platinum, rhodium, etc.; metal such as reduced iron, etc. are preferable.

The reaction is carried out in a solvent which does not affect the reaction. Examples of the solvent include benzene, toluene, xylene, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, dichloromethane, 1,2-dichloroethane, 1,1,2,2-tetrachloroethane, diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, methanol, ethanol, propanol, isopropanol, 2-methoxyethanol, N,N-dimethylformamide, acetic acid, or a mixture of these solvents, etc. The solvent is appropriately selected depending on kind of the reducing agent. The reaction temperature is generally about -20°C to about 150°C, preferably about 0°C to about 100°C, and the reaction time is generally about 1 to about 24 hours.

The thus resulted Compound (II) or (III) can be separated and purified with know separation and purification methods such as concentration, concentration under reduced pressure, extraction, crystallization, solvent conversion, chromatography, etc.

The compound of the formula (I) or a salt thereof of the present invention may be used in combination with

other drug for the treatment or prevention of infectious diseases of HIV (in particular, a pharmaceutical composition for the treatment or prevention of AIDS). In this case, these drugs can be formulated by mixing

5 individually or simultaneously with pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, excipients, binders, diluents or the like, which can be administered orally or non-orally as a pharmaceutical composition for the treatment or prevention of infectious diseases of HIV. In the case of

10 formulating these effective components individually, while the individually formulated agents can be administered in the form of their mixture prepared by using e.g. a diluent when administered, the individually formulated agents can also be administered separately or

15 simultaneously or with time intervals to the one and same subject. A kit for administering the individually formulated effective components in the form of their mixture prepared by using e.g., a diluent when administered (e.g., a kit for injection which comprises

20 two or more ampoules each comprising a powdery component and a diluent for mixing and dissolving two or more components when administered, etc.), a kit for administering the individually formulated agents simultaneously or with time intervals to the one and the

25 same subject (e.g., a kit for tablets to be administered

simultaneously or with time intervals, characterized by having two or more tablets each comprising an agent and said tablets being put in one or separate bags and, if necessary, a column to describe time to be administered each agent, etc.), etc. are also included by the pharmaceutical composition of the present invention.

Example of the other pharmaceutical agent for the treatment or prevention of infectious disease of HIV to be used in combination with the compound of the formula (I) or a salt thereof of the present invention include nucleotide reverse transcriptase inhibitors such as zidovudine, didanosine, zalcitabine, lamivudine, stavudine, abacavir, adefovir, adefovir dipivoxil, fozivudine tidoxil, etc.; non-nucleotide reverse transcriptase inhibitors (including an agent having anti-oxidation activity such as immunocal, oltipraz, etc.) such as nevirapine, delavirdine, efavirenz, loviride, immunocal, oltipraz, etc.; protease inhibitors such as saquinavir, ritonavir, indinavir, nelfinavir, amprenavir, palinavir, lasinavir, etc.; etc.

As the nucleotide reverse transcriptase inhibitor, zidovudine, didanosine, zalcitabine, lamivudine, stavudine, etc. are preferable; as the non-nucleotide reverse transcriptase inhibitor, nevirapine, delavirdine etc. are preferable; and as the protease inhibitor,



saquinavir, ritonavir, indinavir, nelfinavir etc. are preferable.

The compound of the formula (I) or a salt thereof of the present invention may be used in combination with, for example, CXCR4 antagonist (CXCR4 being a second receptor of T cell-tropic HIV-1) such as AMD-3100, etc., antibody against HIV-1 surface antigen. HIV-1 vaccine, etc., in addition to the above-mentioned protease inhibitor, nucleotide reverse transcriptase inhibitor, etc.

The compound of the formula (I) or a salt thereof of the present invention has CC chemokine receptor (CCR) antagonistic activity, in particular, potent CCR5 antagonistic activity and, therefore, can be used for the treatment or prevention of various infectious diseases of HIV, for example, AIDS in human. The compound of the formula (I) or a salt thereof of the present invention is low toxic and safely used.

The compound of the formula (I) or a salt thereof of the present invention can be used as CCR5 antagonist for the treatment or prevention of AIDS and also for the prevention of the progression of the AIDS.

The dose per day of the compound of the formula (I) or a salt thereof varies depending on the condition and body weight of a patient, administration route, etc.

Typical daily dose per adult patient (body weight: 50Kg) for oral administration is about 5-1000mg, preferably about 10-600mg, more preferably about 10-300mg, and in particular about 15-150mg, as active ingredient [the compound of the formula (I) or a salt thereof] and the compound of the formula (I) or a salt thereof is administered once or 2-3 times per day.

When the compound of the formula (I) or a salt thereof is used in combination with a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and/or a protease inhibitor. The dose of the reverse transcriptase inhibitor or the protease inhibitor ranges, for example, from about 1/200-1/2 or more of usual dose to about 2-3 times or less of usual dose. In case that two or more drugs are used in combination, each dose of the drugs is appropriately adjusted if one drug affects metabolism of the other drug, while each dose of the drugs when they are used in combination is generally the same as the dose when they are used alone.

Usual doses of the typical reverse transcriptase inhibitors and the protease inhibitors are as follows:

zidovudine : 100mg

didanosine : 125-200mg

zalcitabine : 0.75mg

lamivudine : 150mg

stavudine : 30-40mg

saquinavir : 600mg

ritonavir : 600mg

indinavir : 800mg

5 nelfinavir : 750mg

In case of combination use of the compound of the formula (I) or a salt thereof with a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and/or a protease inhibitor, preferred embodiments are shown below.

- 10 (1) A drug containing about 10-300mg of the compound of the formula (I) or a salt thereof and a drug containing about 50-200mg of zidovudine to one adult patient (body weight: 50Kg) are administered. Each of the drugs may be administered to the one and the same subject
- 15 simultaneously or with time intervals of 12 hours or less.
- (2) A drug containing about 10-300mg of the compound of the formula (I) or a salt thereof and a drug containing about 300-1200mg of saquinavir to one adult patient (body weight: 50Kg) are administered. Each of the drugs may be
- 20 administered to the one and the same subject simultaneously or with time intervals of 12 hours or less.

#### Best Mode for Carrying out the Invention

The present invention is hereinafter described in more detail by means of the following Test Example.

25

Formulation Example, Reference Examples and Working Examples, which are mere examples of the present invention and are not construed as limitative to the present invention.

5       The following gene manipulation is carried out in accordance with methods described in textbook (Maniatis et al., Molecular Cloning, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, 1989) or protocol attached to reagents.

10       Examples

Test Example

(1) Cloning of human CCR5 chemokine receptor

Cloning of CCR5 gene was carried out by a PCR method from human spleen cDNA. With using 0.5ng of spleen cDNA  
15       (Toyobo, QUICK-Clone cDNA) as template, PCR was performed in DNA Thermal Cycler 480 (Perkin-Elmer) (reaction conditions: 30 cycles of 95°C for 1 minute, 60°C for 1 minute, and 75°C for 5 minutes) by adding each 25 pmol of primers of a primer set,

20       SEQ ID NO.: 1 described in Test Example (1) of WO 99/32100 [length of sequence: 34; type of sequence: nucleic acid; strandedness: single; topology: straight; kind of sequence: other nucleic acid synthetic DNA, and  
SEQ ID NO.: 2 described in Test Example (1) of WO  
25       99/32100 [length of sequence: 34; type of sequence:

nucleic acid; strandedness: single; topology: straight;  
kind of sequence: other nucleic acid synthetic DNA  
which were designed referring to nucleotide sequence of  
CCR5 gene reported by Samson et. al. (Biochemistry,  
5 35(11), 3362-3367 (1996)) and by using TaKaRa EX Taq  
(Takara Shuzo). The resultant PCR product was subjected  
to agarose gel electrophoresis to collect about 1.0kb DNA  
fragment, which was subjected to Original TA Cloning Kit  
(Funakoshi) to carry out cloning of CCR5 gene.

10 (2) Preparation of plasmid for expression of human CCR5

The plasmid obtained in the above (1) was digested  
with restriction enzymes XbaI (Takara Shuzo) and BamHI  
(Takara Shuzo) and subjected to agarose gel  
electrophoresis to collect about 1.0kb DNA fragment.

15 The DNA fragment was mixed with plasmid pcDNA3.1  
(Funakoshi) for expression in animal cells, said plasmid  
being digested with XbaI and BarnHI, and they were  
ligated with DNA Ligation Kit Ver.2 (Takara Shuzo). The  
resulting plasmid was subjected to transformation of  
20 competent cell of E. coli JM109 (Takara Shuzo) to obtain  
plasmid pCKR5.

(3) Introduction of plasmid for expression of human  
CCR5 into CHO-K1 cell and Expression of said plasmid in  
CHO-K1 cell

25 CHO-K1 cells were grown in 750ml of tissue culture

flask (Becton Dickinson) using Ham' s F12 medium (Nihon  
Pharmaceutical) containing 10% fetal calf serum (Life  
Tech Oriental) and took off with 0.5g/L trypsin-0.2g/L  
EDTA (Life Tech Oriental). The cells were washed with  
5 PBS (Life Tech Oriental), centrifuged (1000rpm, 5  
minutes), and suspended in PBS. With using Gene Pulser  
(Bio-Rad Laboratories), DNA was introduced into the cells  
under the conditions shown below. That is, to the  
cuvette of 0.4cm gap were added  $8 \times 10^6$  cells and 10 $\mu$ g of  
10 plasmid pCKR5 for expression of human CCR5, and  
electroporation was carried out under 0.25kV of voltage  
and 960 $\mu$ F of capacitance. The cells were transferred  
into Ham' s F12 medium containing 10% fetal calf serum,  
and cultivated for 24 hours. The cells were again took  
15 off and centrifuged, and suspended in Ham' s F12 medium  
containing 10% fetal calf serum and 500 $\mu$ g/ml of geneticin  
(Life Tech Oriental). The suspension was diluted to give  
104 cells/ml of the suspension, which was inoculated on  
96 well plate (Becton Dickinson) to give geneticin  
20 resistant cells.

The resulting geneticin resistant cells were  
cultivated in 96 well plate (Becton Dickinson), and cells  
expressing CCR5 were selected from the geneticin  
resistant cells. That is, in assay buffer (Ham' s F12  
25 medium containing 0.5% BSA and 20mM HEPES (Wako Pure

Chemical, pH7.2)) to which was added 200pM of [<sup>125</sup>I]-  
RANTES (Amersham) as a ligand, a binding reaction was  
carried out at room temperature for 40 minutes, and the  
buffer was washed with cooled PBS. To the buffer was  
5 added 50µl/well of IM NaOH, and the mixture was stirred.  
Radioactivity was determined with a γ-counter to select  
CCR5/CHO cells which specifically bind to the ligand.

(4) Evaluation of Test Compounds based on CCR5  
antagonistic activity

10 The CCR5/CHO cells were inoculated on 96 well  
microplate (5 × 10<sup>4</sup> cells/well) and cultivated for 24  
hours. The medium was removed by means of suction, and  
to each well was added an assay buffer containing Test  
Compound (1µM) and then 100pM of [<sup>125</sup>I]-RANTES (Amersham)  
15 as a ligand. A binding assay was carried out at room  
temperature for 40 minutes, and an assay buffer was  
removed by means of suction. Each well was washed twice  
with cooled PBS, and 200µl of Microscint-20 (Packard  
Instrument, Inc.) was added to each well. Radio-activity  
20 was determined with Top-Count Micro Scintillation Counter  
(Packard Instrument, Inc.).

According to the method described above, inhibitory  
rate of Test Compound to CCR5 binding was measured. The  
results are shown in Table 1.

Table 1

Compound Number	Inhibitory Rate (%)
1	93
2	96
14	96
16	96
17	99
19	100
20	94
23	97
26	100
27	100
33	98
35	100
39	98
43	100
45	100
49	100
50	100
58	99
68	95
69	100
71	100
77	97
79	100
84	97
85	100
98	100
101	100
102	100
104	98
112	100



(5) Inhibitory effect on HIV-1 infection to MAGI-CCR5 cell

The plasmid where  $\beta$ -galactosidase gene was ligated downstream of HIV-1 LTR was introduced into CD4 positive HeLa cell, to which human CCR5 was further introduced to obtain transformant MAGI-CCR5.

By using said transformant MAGI-CCR5, a degree of HIV-1 infection was calculated using  $\beta$ -galactosidase activity (blue color due to decomposition of 5-bromo-4-chloro-3-indolyl- $\beta$ -D-galactopyranoside) as an index. Specifically, MAGI-CCR5 cells were suspended in DMEM medium containing 10% serum to prepare  $5 \times 10^4$  cells/ml suspension. To each well of 96 well plate was inoculated 200 $\mu$ l of the suspension, and the cells were cultivated at 37°C overnight. The medium was removed by means of suction, and to the residue was added 100 $\mu$ l of the above medium containing 1.6 $\mu$ M of Test Compound and 100 $\mu$ l of the above medium containing 300PFU of HIV-1 BA-L cells. The cells were cultivated at 37°C for 2 days. The medium was removed by means of suction. To the residue was added 200 $\mu$ l of a cell fixative (PBS containing 1% formaldehyde and 0.2% glutaraldehyde), and the mixture was allowed to stand at room temperature for 5 minutes and washed twice with PBS. To the mixture was added 100 $\mu$ l of staining solution (PBS containing 4 $\mu$ M potassium ferrocyanide, 4 $\mu$ M

potassium ferricyanade, 2 $\mu$ M MgCl<sub>2</sub> and 0.4mg/ml X-gal), and the mixture was allowed to stand at 37°C for 50 minutes and washed twice with PBS. The number of blue cells was counted by a microscope and defined as the number of cells infected with HIV-1. According to this method, inhibition rate on HIV-1 infection was determined. The results are shown in Table 2.

Table 2

Compound Number	Inhibition Rate (%)
1	85
14	91
16	94
17	94

The pharmaceutical composition for antagonizing CCR5 (e.g., a medicament for the treatment or prevention of infectious disease of HIV, a medicament for the treatment or prevention of AIDS, etc.) comprising the compound of the formula (I) or a salt thereof of the present invention, as an active ingredient, can be prepared, for example, by the following prescriptions:

## Formulation Example

## 1. Capsule

- (1) Compound obtained in Working Example 1 40mg
- (2) lactose 70mg

(3) fine crystalline cellulose 9mg

(4) magnesium stearate 1mg

1 capsule 120mg

5 (1), (2), (3) and 1/2 of (4) are mixed and then granulated. To the granules is added the remainder of (4), and the whole is filled into a gelatin capsule.

## 2. Tablet

(1) Compound obtained in Working Example 1 40mg

(2) lactose 58mg

10 (3) corn starch 18mg

(4) fine crystalline cellulose 3.5mg

(5) magnesium stearate 0.5mg

1 capsule 120mg

15 (1), (2), (3), 2/3 of (4) and 1/2 of (5) are mixed and then granulated. To the granules are added the remainders of (4) and (5), followed by subjecting the mixture to compression molding.

## Reference Example 1

20 In DMF (14ml) was dissolved 1- formyl-7-(4-morpholinophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.18g). To the solution was added, under ice-cooling, thionyl chloride (0.1ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and  
25 the residue was suspended in THF (50ml). The suspension

was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.13g) and triethylamine (0.33ml) in THF (5ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 2 hours. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from ethanol/hexane to give 1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-(4-morpholinophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (0.16g) as colorless crystals.

mp 234 - 243°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.70 - 1.75 (4H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.60 - 2.67 (1H, m), 3.03 (2H, t, J = 5.4 Hz), 3.21 - 3.26 (4H, m), 3.37 (2H, dt, J = 2.8, 11.2 Hz), 3.58 (2H, s), 3.87 - 3.95 (6H, m), 4.02 - 4.07 (2H, m), 7.00 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.19 (1H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.32 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.47 - 7.59 (7H, m), 7.69 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 8.55 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) ν: 2953, 2845, 1667 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>35</sub>H<sub>40</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>4</sub>: C, 72.39; H, 6.94; N, 9.65.

Found C, 72.03; H, 6.65; N, 9.49.

## Reference Example 2

In DMF (5ml) was dissolved 7-(4-ethoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.2g). To the solution was added, under ice-cooling, thionyl chloride (0.11ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and the residue was suspended in THF (15ml). The suspension was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.15g) and triethylamine (0.41ml) in THF (5ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from ethyl acetate/hexane to give 7-(4-ethoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (0.25g) as colorless crystals. mp 211 - 215°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.45 (3H, t, J = 6.9 Hz), 1.59 - 1.75 (4H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.60 - 2.68 (1H, m), 3.04 (2H, t, J

= 5.5 Hz), 3.37 (2H, dt,  $J = 2.8, 11.3$  Hz), 3.58 (2H, s),  
3.93 (2H, t,  $J = 5.5$  Hz), 4.01 - 4.18 (4H, m), 6.99 (2H, d,  
 $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.19 (1H, d,  $J = 8.6$  Hz), 7.32 (2H, d,  $J = 8.4$   
Hz), 7.46 - 7.58 (6H, m), 7.68 (1H, d,  $J = 2.0$  Hz), 8.55  
5 (1H, s).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2940, 1667  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{33}\text{H}_{37}\text{N}_3\text{O}_4 \cdot 0.2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 72.96; H, 6.94; N, 7.73.  
Found C, 72.89; H, 6.91; N, 7.59.

#### Reference Example 3

10 In DMF (5ml) was dissolved 7-(3-diethoxyphenyl)-1-  
formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid  
(0.25g). To the solution was added, under ice-cooling,  
thionyl chloride (0.12ml), and the mixture was stirred at  
room temperature for 30 minutes. Under reduced pressure,  
15 the solvent was evaporated, and the residue was suspended  
in THF (25ml). The solution was added dropwise to a  
solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-  
yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.16g) and triethylamine (0.46ml)  
in THF (4ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture was  
20 stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for  
5 hours. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was  
evaporated. To the residue was added water, and the  
mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic  
layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried  
25 with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was

evaporated to give crude crystals, which were  
 recrystallized from ethyl acetate/diethyl ether to give  
 7-(3,4-diethoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-  
 (tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-  
 5 dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (0.26g) as yellow  
 crystals.

mp 145 - 148°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.49 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.50 (3H, t,  
 J = 7.0 Hz), 1.62 - 1.75 (4H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.61 - 2.70  
 10 (1H, m), 3.04 (2H, t, J = 5.4 Hz), 3.38 (2H, dt, J = 3.0,  
 11.2 Hz), 3.58 (2H, s), 3.93 (2H, t, J = 5.4 Hz), 3.95 -  
 4.10 (2H, m), 4.10 - 4.24 (4H, m), 6.97 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz),  
 7.11 - 7.21 (3H, m), 7.33 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.49 - 7.59  
 (4H, m), 7.68 (1H, d, J = 2.0 Hz), 8.55 (1H, s).

15 IR (KBr) v: 2980, 2944, 1667 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>35</sub>H<sub>41</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub>·0.2H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 71.58; H, 7.10; N, 7.15.

Found C, 71.40; H, 7.00; N, 7.22.

#### Reference Example 4

In DMF (10ml) was dissolved 1- methanesulfonyl-7-(4-  
 20 morpholinophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-  
 carboxylic acid (0.3g). To the solution was added, under  
 ice-cooling, thionyl chloride (0.15ml), and the mixture  
 was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. Under  
 reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and the  
 25 residue was suspended in THF (50ml). The suspension was

added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.19g) and triethylamine (0.5ml) in THF (5ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from ethyl acetate/ethanol to give 1-methanesulfonyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-(4-morpholinophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (0.26g) as pale crystals.

mp 239 - 243°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.70 - 1.77 (4H, m), 2.22 (3H, s), 2.60 - 2.70 (1H, m), 2.89 (3H, s), 3.13 (2H, t-like), 3.21 - 3.26 (4H, m), 3.37 (2H, dt, J = 2.6, 11.5 Hz), 3.59 (2H, s), 3.87 - 3.91 (6H, m), 4.02 - 4.11 (2H, m), 7.00 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.34 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.50 - 7.66 (9H, m).

IR (KBr) v: 2951, 2847, 1661, 1609, 1520 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>35</sub>H<sub>42</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>5</sub>S·0.3H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 66.08; H, 6.75; N, 8.81. Found C, 66.06; H, 6.50; N, 8.55.



In DMF (12ml) was suspended 7-(4-ethoxyphenyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.13g). To the suspension was added, under ice-cooling, thionyl chloride (0.04ml) and DMF (catalytic amount), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and the residue was dissolved in THF (15ml). The solution was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.08g) and triethylamine (0.14ml) in THF (5ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from ethyl acetate/hexane to give 7-(4-ethoxyphenyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (0.16g) as colorless crystals.

mp 184 - 186°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.45 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.64 - 1.75 (4H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.61 - 2.72 (1H, m), 2.88 (3H, s),

3.13 (2H, t,  $J = 5.3$  Hz), 3.37 (2H, dt,  $J = 2.6, 11.2$  Hz),  
3.59 (2H, s), 3.91 (2H, t,  $J = 5.3$  Hz), 4.01 - 4.07 (2H, m),  
4.09 (2H, q,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 6.98 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.33  
(2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.48 - 7.68 (9H, m).

5 IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2946, 2843, 1661, 1609, 1518, 1495  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{33}\text{H}_{39}\text{N}_3\text{O}_5\text{S}$ : C, 67.21; H, 6.67; N, 7.13.

Found C, 67.25; H, 6.33; N, 7.05.

#### Reference Example 6

In DMF (8ml) was dissolved 1-methoxycarbonyl-7-(4-  
10 morpholinophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-  
carboxylic acid (0.15g). To the solution was added,  
under ice-cooling, thionyl chloride (0.07ml), and the  
mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes.  
Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and  
15 the residue was suspended in THF (25ml). The suspension  
was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-  
(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.12g) and  
triethylamine (0.26ml) in THF (5ml), under ice-cooling,  
and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at  
20 room temperature for 4 hours. Under reduced pressure,  
the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added  
water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate.  
The organic layer was washed with water and saturated  
brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the  
25 solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified with

silica gel column chromatography (elution solvent: methanol/triethylamine/ethyl acetate) to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from ethyl acetate/hexane to give 1-methoxycarbonyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-(4-morpholinophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (0.14g) as colorless crystals.

mp 193 - 197°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.57 - 1.80 (4H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.65 (1H, br), 3.03 (2H, br), 3.20 - 3.23 (4H, m), 3.37 (2H, dt, J = 3.0, 9.9 Hz), 3.58 (2H, s), 3.78 (3H, s), 3.78 (2H, br), 3.87 - 3.92 (4H, m), 4.01 - 4.14 (2H, m), 6.99 (2H, d, J = 9.2 Hz), 7.30 - 7.60 (10H, m).

IR (KBr) v: 2957, 2855, 1701 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>36</sub>H<sub>42</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>5</sub>·0.2H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 70.38; H, 6.96; N, 9.12. Found C, 70.35; H, 6.81; N, 9.09.

#### Reference Example 7

In a mixture of water : ethanol : toluene (1 : 1 : 10, v/v, 18.0ml) were dissolved 3,4-diethylphenyl borate (264mg) and 7-bromo-1-methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide(406mg), and to the solution was added potassium carbonate (162mg). The mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes, and to the mixture was added

tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (39mg). The mixture was refluxed under argon atmosphere for 13 hours, diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (45g, ethyl acetate : ethanol = 20 : 1) and recrystallized from ethanol to give 7-(3,4-diethylphenyl)-1-methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (263mg, 55%) as yellow crystals.

mp 127 - 129°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.47 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.48 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.69 - 1.76 (4H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.53 - 2.74 (1H, m), 2.96 (2H, t, J = 4.5 Hz), 3.09 (3H, s), 3.31 - 3.43 (4H, m), 3.57 (2H, s), 4.01 - 4.07 (2H, m), 4.13 (2H, q, J = 7.0 Hz), 4.17 (2H, q, J = 7.0 Hz), 6.87 (1H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.93 (1H, d, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.07 (1H, dd, J = 6.9, 2.1 Hz), 7.09 (1H, s), 7.30 (2H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.41 - 7.42 (2H, m), 7.48 (1H, dd, J = 9.1, 2.3 Hz), 7.54 (2H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.59 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 1653, 1599, 1514, 1503, 1478, 1406, 1312, 1246, 1188, 1140, 1044 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>35</sub>H<sub>43</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>: C, 73.78; H, 7.61; N, 7.38.

Found C, 73.49; H, 7.54; N, 7.15.

Reference Example 8

In a mixture of THF and ethanol (1 : 1, v/v, 30.0ml) was dissolved ethyl 1-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]-7-[4-(4-morpholino)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (454mg). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (3.0ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 62 hours. To the mixture was added 1N hydrochloric acid to make the solution weak acidic, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give 1-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]-7-[4-(4-morpholino)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid as white crystals. The obtained 1-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]-7-[4-(4-morpholino)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid was suspended in DMF(15.0ml). To the suspension was added thionyl chloride (0.15ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and the residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (10.0ml). On the other hand, to 4-[[N-methyl-N-tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline dihydrochloride (296mg) was added dichloromethane (15.0ml), and then was added triethylamine (0.88ml). To

the obtained mixture was added dropwise at 0°C the previously prepared acid chloride solution, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. To the mixture was added water, and the separated organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was recrystallized from ethanol to give 1-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-[4-(4-morpholino)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (359mg, 60%) as white crystals.

mp 258 - 262°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.70 - 1.77 (4H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.35 (3H, s), 2.53 - 2.74 (1H, m), 2.98 (2H, t, J = 5.5 Hz), 3.23 (4H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 3.38 (2H, td, J = 10.4, 3.2 Hz), 3.58 (2H, s), 3.89 (4H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.99 (2H, t, J = 5.4 Hz), 4.01 - 4.09 (2H, m), 6.99 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.97 - 7.06 (2H, m), 7.19 (2H, d, J = 7.6 Hz), 7.29 - 7.34 (2H, m), 7.45 (2H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.53 (2H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.50 - 7.65 (5H, m).

IR (KBr) 1663, 1609, 1605, 1518, 1495, 1345, 1308, 1233, 1159, 1121, 1090, 928, 816, 733, 671 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>41</sub>H<sub>46</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>5</sub>S (0.1H<sub>2</sub>O additive): C, 69.49; H, 6.57; N, 7.91. Found C, 69.27; H, 6.63; N, 7.92.

Reference Example 9

In DMF (15.0ml) was suspended 1-acetyl-7-[4-(4-morpholino)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (365mg). To the suspension was added thionyl chloride (0.17ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and the residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (10.0ml). On the other hand, to 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline dihydrochloride (327mg) was added dichloromethane (15.0ml), and then was added triethylamine (0.97ml). To the obtained mixture: was added dropwise the previously prepared acid chloride suspension at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. To the mixture was added water, and the separated organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (50g, ethyl acetate : ethanol = 9 : 1) and washed with hexane/ethyl acetate to give 1-acetyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-[4-(4-morpholino)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (116mg, 21%) as pale yellow crystals. mp 141 - 145°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.65 - 1.87 (4H, m), 2.09 (3H, s), 2.23 (3H, s), 2.61 - 2.78 (1H, m), 2.81 - 3.05 (3H, m),

3.24 (4H, t,  $J = 4.7$  Hz), 3.37 (2H, td,  $J = 11.4, 2.7$  Hz),  
 3.60 (2H, s), 3.90 (4H, t,  $J = 4.8$  Hz); 4.02 - 4.07 (2H, m),  
 4.75 - 4.91 (1H, m), 7.23 - 7.27 (1H, m), 7.34 (2H, d,  $J =$   
 8.4 Hz), 7.52 - 7.69 (8H, m).

5 IR (KBr) 1657, 1609, 1514, 1497, 1451, 1395, 1314, 1258,  
 1235  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{36}\text{H}_{42}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4$  (1.2 $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  additive): C, 70.15; H,  
 7.26; N, 9.09. Found C, 69.91; H, 7.05; N, 9.03.

#### Reference Example 10

10 In water : ethanol : toluene (1 : 1 : 10, v/v,  
 18.0ml) were dissolved (4-diethylamino)phenyl borate  
 (234mg) and 7-bromo-1-methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-  
 (tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-  
 dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (391mg). To the  
 15 solution was added potassium carbonate (268mg), and the  
 mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room  
 temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added  
 tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (37mg), and the  
 mixture was heated to reflux under argon atmosphere for  
 20 10 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate,  
 and washed with water and saturated brine, and the  
 organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate.  
 The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and  
 the residue was purified with silica gel column  
 25 chromatography (45g, ethyl acetate:ethanol=20:1) and



recrystallized from ethanol to give 7-(4-diethylaminophenyl)-1-methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (145mg, 33%) as  
 5 yellow crystals.

mp 178 - 180°C.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.19 (6H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.64 - 1.76 (4H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.54 - 2.72 (1H, m), 2.95 (2H, t, J = 4.5 Hz), 3.07 (3H, s), 3.31 - 3.44 (4H, m), 3.39 (4H, q, J = 7.1 Hz), 3.57 (2H, s), 4.01 - 4.07 (2H, m), 6.74 (2H, d, J = 9.0 Hz), 6.86 (1H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.30 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.41 - 7.59 (8H, m).  
 10

IR (KBr) 2948, 1644, 1597, 1514, 1497, 1406, 1312, 1283, 1246, 1188, 1071, 810, 733 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

15 Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>35</sub>H<sub>44</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>2</sub> (0.1H<sub>2</sub>O additive): C, 75.80; H, 8.03; N, 10.10. Found C, 75.51; H, 7.95; N, 10.10.

#### Reference Example 11

In water : ethanol : toluene (1 : 1 : 10, v/v, 18.0ml) were dissolved 4-propoxyphenyl borate (203mg) and  
 20 7-bromo-1-methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide(455mg). To the solution was added potassium carbonate (312mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To  
 25 the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium

(43mg), and the mixture was heated to reflux under argon atmosphere for 10 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (30g, ethyl acetate : ethanol : triethyleamine = 100 : 5 : 1) and recrystallized from ethanol/hexane to give 1-methyl-N-[4-[[ N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (349mg, 69%) as yellow crystals.

mp 149 - 151°C.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.05 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.63 - 1.76 (4H, m), 1.83 (2H, sextet, J = 7.2 Hz), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.53 - 2.73 (1H, m), 2.95 (2H, t, J = 4.5 Hz), 3.07 (3H, s), 3.31 - 3.43 (4H, m), 3.56 (2H, s), 3.96 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 4.01 - 4.07 (2H, m), 6.87 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.95 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.29 (2H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.39 (1H, s), 7.43 (1H, dd, J = 8.6, 2.2 Hz), 7.47 (2H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 1H (d) was concealed under 7.49, 7.54 (2H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.62 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 2946, 1651, 1607, 1514, 1505, 1312, 1242, 1182, 814 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>34</sub>H<sub>41</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>3</sub> (0.1H<sub>2</sub>O additive): C, 75.41; H,

7.67; N, 7.76. Found C, 75.30; H, 7.75; N, 7.82.

Reference Example 12

In DMF (10.0ml) was suspended 1-formyl-7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (433mg). To the suspension was added thionyl chloride (0.22ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and to the mixture was added THF (15.0ml). On the other hand, to 4-[[N-methyl-N'-tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline dihydrochloride (434mg) was added THF (10.0ml) and then added triethylamine (1.29ml). The previously prepared acid chloride suspension was added dropwise at 0°C. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours. To the mixture was added water, and the mixture was washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was recrystallized from ethanol to give 1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (554mg, 81%) as white crystals.

mp 207 - 209°C.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.06 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.63 - 1.77 (4H, m), 1.85 (2H, sextet, J = 7.0 Hz), 2.21 (3H, s),

2.57 - 2.72 (1H, m), 3.04 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.37 (2H, td, J = 11.4, 3.1 Hz), 3.57 (2H, s), 3.90 - 4.08 (6H, m), 7.00 (2H, d, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.20 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.32 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.47 - 7.54 (6H, m), 7.57 (1H, dd, J = 8.0, 2.2 Hz), 7.68 (1H, d, J = 2.0 Hz), 8.56 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 1669, 1609, 1522, 1497, 1360, 1314, 1252  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{34}\text{H}_{39}\text{N}_3\text{O}_4$ : C, 73.75; H, 7.10; N, 7.59.

Found C, 73.48; H, 7.11; N, 7.50.

#### Reference Example 13

10 In THF (10.0ml) and catalytic amount of DMF was suspended 1-methylsulfonyl-7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (236mg). To the suspension was added oxalyl chloride (0.13ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour.

15 Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added THF (10.0ml). On the other hand, to 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline dihydrochloride (207mg) was added THF (10.0ml), and then was added triethylamine (0.61ml).

20 To the obtained mixture was added dropwise at 0°C the previously prepared acid chloride suspension, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3.5 hours. To the mixture was added ethyl acetate, and the mixture was washed with water, 1N sodium hydroxide solution,

25 water and saturated brine. The organic layer was dried

with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (10g, ethyl acetate : ethanol : triethylamine = 100 : 10 : 1) and recrystallized from ethanol to give 1-methylsulfonyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (205mg, 58%) as white crystals.

mp 199 - 202°C.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.06 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.63 - 1.79 (4H, m), 1.85 (2H, sextet, J = 7.0 Hz), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.54 - 2.74 (1H, m), 2.98 (3H, s), 3.14 (2H, t, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.38 (2H, td, J = 11.3, 3.2 Hz), 3.58 (2H, s), 3.89 - 4.07 (6H, m), 6.96 - 7.03 (2H, m), 7.33 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.47 - 7.67 (9H, m).

IR (KBr) 1653, 1609, 1518, 1493, 1341, 1314, 1248, 1154 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>34</sub>H<sub>41</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub>S: C, 67.64; H, 6.84; N, 6.96.

Found C, 67.37; H, 6.77; N, 6.89.

#### Reference Example 14

In THF (10.0ml) and catalytic amount of DMF was suspended 7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-1-methylsulfonyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (182mg).

To the suspension was added oxalyl chloride (0.12ml), and

the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and to the residue was added THF (10.0ml). On the other hand, to 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl] aniline dihydrochloride (158mg) was added THF (10.0ml), and then was added triethylamine (0.47ml). To the obtained mixture was added dropwise at 0°C the previously prepared acid chloride suspension, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. To the mixture was added ethyl acetate, and the mixture was washed with water, N sodium hydroxide solution, water and saturated brine. The organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (15g, ethyl acetate → ethyl acetate : ethanol : triethylamine = 100 : 10 : 1), and recrystallized from ethanol to give 7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-1-methylsulfonyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (140mg, 51%) as white crystals.

mp 199 - 202°C.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.49 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.64 - 1.77 (4H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.57 - 2.70 (1H, m), 2.89 (3H, s), 3.14 (2H, t, J = 5.4 Hz), 3.38 (2H, td, J = 11.3, 2.9

Hz), 3.57 (2H, s, 3.91 (2H, t,  $J = 5.7$  Hz), 4.02 - 4.07 (2H, m), 4.17 (2H, q,  $J = 6.9$  Hz), 7.04 (1H, t,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.28 - 7.35 (3H, m), 7.48 - 7.61 (7H, m), 7.65 (1H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz).

5 IR (KBr) 1661, 1522, 1497, 1343, 1310, 1269, 1238, 1154, 1138  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{33}\text{H}_{38}\text{FN}_3\text{O}_5\text{S}$  (0.3 $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  additive)] C, 64.64; H, 6.35; N, 6.85. Found C, 64.46; H, 6.41; N, 6.80.

#### Reference Example 15

10 In DMF (5.5ml) was dissolved 7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (398mg). To the solution was added thionyl chloride (0.20ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. Under reduced pressure, 15 the solvent was evaporated, and to the residue was added THF (10.0ml). On the other hand, to 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline dihydrochloride (394mg) was added THF (10.0ml), and then was added triethylamine (1.17 ml). To the obtained 20 mixture was added dropwise at 0°C the previously prepared acid chloride suspension, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours. To the mixture was added ethyl acetate, and the mixture was washed with water, 1N sodium hydroxide solution, water and saturated brine. 25 The organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium

sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was recrystallized from ethanol to give 7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-  
5 2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (453mg, 73%) as white crystals.

mp 193 - 196°C.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.49 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.64 - 1.75 (4H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.58 - 2.74 (1H, m), 3.04 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.37 (2H, td, J = 11.3, 3.1 Hz), 3.58 (2H, s), 3.92 (2H, t, J = 5.3 Hz), 4.02 - 4.07 (2H, m), 4.17 (2H, q, J = 7.1 Hz), 7.05 (1H, t, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.20 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.29 - 7.37 (5H, m), 7.45 (1H, s), 7.54 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.56 (1H, s), 7.66 (1H, d, J = 2.0 Hz), 8.55 (1H, s).  
10  
15

IR (KBr) 1667, 1514, 1501, 1360, 1314, 1269, 1238 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>33</sub>H<sub>36</sub>FN<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub> (0.1H<sub>2</sub>O additive): C, 70.85; H, 6.52; N, 7.51. Found C, 70.55; H, 6.54; N, 7.45.

#### Reference Example 16

20 A solution of methyl 5-bromo-N-tosylanthranylate (200g) in DMF (450ml) was added dropwise, under ice-cooling, to a suspension of 60% sodium hydride (25g) in DMF (50ml). Under nitrogen atmosphere, the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours, and to the  
25 mixture were added sodium iodide (78g) and ethyl 4-



bromobutyrate (82ml). The mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at 85°C for 24 hours, and to the mixture was added potassium t-butoxide (70g) under ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred at 85°C for 1.5 hours, and the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added ice-water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give ethyl (methyl) 7-bromo-5-hydroxy-1-tosyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (mixture) (153g) as white crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.31 (1.5H, t, J = 7.1 Hz), 2.29 (2H, t, J = 6.4 Hz), 2.40 (3H, s), 3.72 (1.5H, s), 4.08 (2H, t, J = 6.4 Hz), 4.17 (1H, q, J = 7.1 Hz), 7.17 (2H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.38 (2H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.41 - 7.46 (1H, m), 7.60 - 7.66 (2H, m), 11.83 (0.5H, s), 11.91 (0.5H, s).

#### Reference Example 17

To ethyl (methyl) 7-bromo-5-hydroxy-1-tosyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (mixture) (32.4g) were added acetic acid (200ml) and concentrated sulfuric acid (120ml), and the mixture was stirred at 80°C for 2.5 hours. The mixture was poured into ice-water, and the mixture was neutralized with sodium hydroxide solution and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was

washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate) to give 7-bromo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-1-benzazepin-5-one (8.55g) as pale yellow crystals.

mp 99 - 101°C.

$^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 2.18 (2H, quint,  $J = 7.1$  Hz), 2.82 (2H, t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 3.25 (2H, t,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 4.65 (1H, br), 6.65 (1H, d,  $J = 8.6$  Hz), 7.20 (1H, dd,  $J = 2.2, 8.6$  Hz), 7.82 (1H, d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 3364, 2955, 1661  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

#### Reference Example 18

In THF (200ml) were dissolved 7-bromo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-1-benzazepin-5-one (7g) and dimethylaminopyridine (22g). To the solution was added di-*t*-butyl dicarbonate (60g), and the mixture was refluxed for 1.5 hours. The solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with 1M citric acid solution, water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give a mixture of 7-bromo-1-(*t*-

butoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-1-benzazepin-5-one and 7-bromo-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-5-(t-butoxycarbonyloxy)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine (24.6g) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.43 (4.5H, s), 1.49 (9H, s), 2.15 (1H, quint, J = 6.8 Hz), 2.76 (2H, t, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.73 (2H, t, J = 6.8 Hz), 5.97 (0.5H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 7.17 (0.5H, br), 7.35 (1H, br), 7.54 - 7.59 (1H, m), 7.98 (0.5H, d, J = 2.6 Hz).

#### Reference Example 19

10 In dimethyl carbonate (400ml) was dissolved a mixture (3.3g) of 7-bromo-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-1-benzazepin-5-one and 7-bromo-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-5-(t-butoxycarbonyloxy)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine. To the solution was added sodium methoxide  
15 (23.0g), and the mixture was refluxed under nitrogen atmosphere for 2.5 hours and poured into ice-water. To the mixture was added 1M citric acid solution, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried  
20 with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 7-bromo-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-1-benzazepin-5-one-4-carboxylate (23.8g) as yellow oil.

25 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.36 (4.5H, s), 1.52 (4.5H, s), 2.43 -

2.55 (2H, m), 3.39 - 3.54 (0.5H, m), 3.72 (1.5H, s), 3.84  
(1.5H, s), 3.89 - 4.04 (2H, m), 7.12 (0.5H, br), 7.42 (0.5H,  
br), 7.51 (0.5H, dd, J = 2.2, 8.4 Hz), 7.58 (0.5H, dd, J =  
2.4, 8.6 Hz), 7.82 (0.5H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 8.00 (0.5H, d, J  
5 = 2.2 Hz).

#### Reference Example 20

In THF (150ml) was dissolved methyl 7-bromo-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-1-benzazepin-5-one-4-carboxylate (7.2g). To the solution was added sodium  
10 borohydride (0.7g) at -40°C, and then was added dropwise methanol (15ml). The mixture was stirred at -15°C for 1 hour. To the mixture was added 1M citric acid, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried  
15 with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was dissolved in THF (150ml), and to the solution was added triethylamine (7.5ml). To the mixture was added dropwise, under ice-cooling, methanesulfonyl chloride (2.1ml). Under nitrogen  
20 atmosphere, the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hours, and to the mixture was added dropwise DBU (13.5ml) at room temperature. The mixture was stirred at 90°C for 10 minutes, and the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was  
25 extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was

washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give  
5 methyl 7-bromo-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (5.18g) as colorless crystals.  
mp 144 - 145°C.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.47 (9H, s), 2.89 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz),  
3.61 (2H, br), 3.83 (3H, s), 7.27 (1H, br), 7.39 (1H, dd, J  
10 = 1.8, 8.4 Hz), 7.54 - 7.55 (2H, m).

IR (KBr) v: 2978, 1709 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>17</sub>H<sub>20</sub>BrNO<sub>4</sub>: C, 53.42; H, 5.27; N, 3.66.

Found C, 53.58; H, 5.12; N, 3.52.

#### Reference Example 21

15 In ethyl acetate (50ml) was dissolved methyl 7-bromo-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.5g). To the solution was added 6N  
hydrochloric acid (2ml), and the mixture was heated to stir at 80°C for 2 hours, neutralized with 1N sodium  
20 hydroxide solution and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.0g) as yellow crystals.  
25 mp 143 - 145°C.

$^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 2.85 (2H, t,  $J = 4.8$  Hz), 3.35 (2H, t,  $J = 4.8$  Hz), 3.80 (3H, s), 4.62 (1H, br), 6.49 (1H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.15 (1H, dd,  $J = 2.4, 8.4$  Hz), 7.37 (1H, d,  $J = 2.4$  Hz), 7.53 (1H, s).

5 IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 3384, 2949, 1694  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{12}\text{BrNO}_2$ : C, 51.09; H, 4.29; N, 4.96.

Found C, 51.17; H, 4.32; N, 4.97.

#### Reference Example 22

To anhydrous acetic acid (0.84ml) was added dropwise  
10 formic acid (0.4ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture  
was stirred, under nitrogen atmosphere, at  $50^\circ\text{C}$  for 2  
hours. To the mixture was added THF (5ml), and to the  
mixture was added dropwise, under ice-cooling, a solution  
of methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxy  
15 late (1.0g) in THF (15ml). The mixture was stirred at  
room temperature overnight. The solvent was evaporated,  
and to the residue was added water. The mixture was  
extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was  
washed with sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, water an  
20 saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium  
sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give methyl 7-  
bromo-1-formyl -2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-  
carboxylate (1.07g) as colorless crystals.

mp  $175 - 176^\circ\text{C}$ .

25  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 2.93 (2H, t,  $J = 5.3$  Hz), 3.80 (2H, t,

J = 5.3 Hz), 3.83 (3H, s), 7.01 (1H, d J = 8.5 Hz), 7.50 (1H, dd, J = 2.2, 8.5 Hz), 7.58 (1H, s), 7.65 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 8.46 (1H, s).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2951, 1713, 1680  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

- 5     Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{12}\text{BrNO}_3$ : C, 50.34; H, 3.90; N, 4.52.  
Found C, 50.43; H, 3.75; N, 4.45.

#### Reference Example 23

- To a mixture of methyl 7-bromo-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (3.51g), 4-
- 10     morpholinophenyl borate (3.51g) and potassium carbonate (3.75g) was added a mixture of water (20ml), ethanol (20ml) and toluene (100ml), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 40 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)-
- 15     palladium (0.52g), and the mixture was refluxed under argon atmosphere for 12 hours and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue was
- 20     purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 1-formyl-7-(4-morpholinophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (3.64g) as pale yellow crystals.
- mp 178 - 181°C.
- 25      $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 2.95 (2H, t, J = 5.1 Hz), 3.23 (4H, t,

$J = 4.9$  Hz), 3.82 - 3.92 (6H, m), 3.84 (3H, s), 6.97 - 7.04 (2H, m), 7.17 (1H, d,  $J = 8.2$  Hz), 7.45 - 7.60 (3H, m), 7.69 (1H, d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 7.76 (1H, s), 8.53 (1H, s).  
IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2951, 2830, 1709, 1674  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

5           Reference Example 24

In methanol (250ml) and THF (250ml) was dissolved methyl 1-formyl-7-(4-morpholinophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (3.54g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (90ml), and the  
10 mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight and concentrated. To the mixture was added water, and the mixture was neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent  
15 was evaporated to give 1-formyl-7-(4-morpholinophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (3.30g) as colorless crystals.

mp 247 - 257°C (dec.).

$^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{DMSO}-d_6$ ) 2.75 (2H, t-like) 3.14 - 3.19 (4H, m), 3.70 - 3.78 (6H, m), 7.03 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.36 (1H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.62 - 7.71 (4H, m), 7.87 (1H, s), 8.51 (1H, s).  
20

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 1671  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{22}\text{H}_{22}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4 \cdot 0.7\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 67.57; H, 6.03; N, 7.16.

25 Found C, 67.48; H, 5.74; N, 6.98.



## Reference Example 25

A mixture of methyl 7-bromo-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (2.0g), 4-morpholinophenyl borate (1.2g), and 1M potassium carbonate solution (15ml), ethanol (15ml) and toluene (100ml) was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 20 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0.24g), and the mixture was refluxed under argon atmosphere for 12 hours and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-7-(4-morpholinophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (3.64g) as pale yellow crystals.

mp 183 - 185°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.49 (9H, s), 2.90 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.19 - 3.24 (4H, m), 3.69 (2H, br), 3.83 (3H, s), 3.87 - 3.91 (4H, m), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.48 (2H, br), 7.52 (2H, d, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.58 (1H, s), 7.73 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) v: 2973, 1705 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>27</sub>H<sub>32</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>: C, 69.81; H, 6.94; N, 6.03.

Found C, 69.57; H, 6.76; N, 5.76.

## Reference Example 26

In ethyl acetate (100ml) was dissolved methyl 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-7-(4-morpholinophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (2.0g). To the solution was  
5 added 6N hydrochloric acid (40ml), and the mixture was stirred at 80°C for 30 minutes, neutralized with 1N sodium hydroxide solution and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium  
10 sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give 7-(4-morpholinophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.46g) as yellow crystals.  
mp 175 - 182°C (dec.).  
<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 2.89 (2H, t, J = 4.5 Hz), 3.17 - 3.22  
15 (4H, m), 3.41 (2H, t, J = 4.5 Hz), 3.81 (3H, s), 3.87 - 3.91 (4H, m), 6.67 (1H, d, J = 8.3 Hz), 6.97 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.33 (1H, dd, J = 2.0, 8.3 Hz), 7.45 - 7.50 (3H, m), 7.73 (1H, s).  
IR (KBr) v: 3378, 2953, 1694 cm<sup>-1</sup>.  
20 Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>22</sub>H<sub>24</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>·0.2H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 71.80; H, 6.68; N, 7.61. Found C, 71.51; H, 6.72; N, 7.47.

## Reference Example 27

To anhydrous acetic acid (0.2ml) was added dropwise formic acid (0.1ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture  
25 was heated to stir under nitrogen atmosphere at 50°C for

2 hours. To the mixture was added THF (5ml), and then to the mixture was added dropwise, under ice-cooling, a solution of methyl 7-(4-morpholinophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.3g) in THF (15ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hours. The solvent was evaporated, and to the residue was added water. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give methyl 1-formyl-7-(4-morpholinophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.3g) as pale yellow crystals.

#### Reference Example 28

A mixture of methyl 7-bromo-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.0g), 4-ethoxyphenyl borate (0.5g), 1M potassium carbonate solution (8ml), ethanol (8ml) and toluene (50ml) was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0.12g), and the mixture was refluxed overnight under argon atmosphere and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was

evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-7-(4-morpholinophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-

5 carboxylate (1.1g) as colorless crystals.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 1.38 - 1.49 (12H, m), 2.91 (2H, t,  $J = 5.3$  Hz), 3.68 (2H, br), 3.83 (3H, s), 4.09 (2H, q,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 6.97 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.47 - 7.55 (4H, m), 7.58 (1H, s), 7.74 (1H, 4).

10 IR (KBr) v: 2980, 1705  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

#### Reference Example 29

In ethyl acetate (50ml) was dissolved methyl 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-7-(4-ethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.1g). To the solution was  
15 added 6N hydrochloric acid (10ml) and the mixture was stirred at 80°C for 40 minutes, neutralized with 1N sodium hydroxide solution and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium  
20 sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give methyl 7-(4-ethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.78g) as yellow crystals.

mp 157 - 158°C.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 1.43 (3H, t,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 2.88 (2H, t,  $J = 4.6$  Hz), 3.40 (2H, t,  $J = 4.6$  Hz), 3.81 (3H, s), 4.07

(2H, q,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 6.66 (1H, d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz), 6.94 (2H, d,  $J = 9.2$  Hz), 7.31 (1H, dd,  $J = 2.2, 8.3$  Hz), 7.41 - 7.47 (3H, m), 7.73 (1H, s).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 3380, 2980, 2948, 1699  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

5           Reference Example 30

To anhydrous acetic acid (0.18ml) was added dropwise formic acid (0.09ml) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at 50°C for 2 hours. To the mixture was added THF (2ml) and then was added dropwise, under ice-cooling a solution of methyl 7-(4-ethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.25g) in THF (15ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours. The solvent was evaporated, and to the residue was added water. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give methyl 7-(4-ethoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.24g) as yellow crystals.

mp 133 - 135°C.

$^1\text{H}$ -NMR ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 1.45 (3H, t,  $J = 6.9$  Hz), 2.95 (2H, t,  $J = 4.9$  Hz), 3.82 - 3.88 (5H, m), 4.09 (2H, q,  $J = 6.9$  Hz), 6.99 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.17 (1H, d,  $J = 8.0$  Hz), 7.49 - 7.58 (3H, m), 7.68 (1H, d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 7.75 (1H, s), 8.53

(1H, s).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2980, 2948, 1709, 1678  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Reference Example 31

In methanol (25ml) and THF (30ml) was dissolved  
5 methyl 7-(4-ethoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.24g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (5ml) and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight and concentrated. To the residue was added water, and the  
10 mixture was neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give 7-(4-ethoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.23g) as  
15 pale yellow crystals.

mp 224 - 226°C.

$^1\text{H}$ -NMR ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 1.46 (3H, t,  $J = 6.9$  Hz), 2.97 (2H, t,  $J = 5.1$  Hz), 3.88 (2H, t,  $J = 5.1$  Hz), 4.10 (2H, q,  $J = 6.9$  Hz), 7.00 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.20 (1H, d,  $J = 8.1$  Hz),  
20 7.53 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.59 (1H, dd,  $J = 2.0, 8.1$  Hz), 7.70 (1H, d,  $J = 2.0$  Hz), 7.86 (1H, s), 8.56 (1H, s).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2982, 1669, 1682  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{19}\text{NO}_4 \cdot 0.4\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 69.71; H, 5.79; N, 4.06.

25 Found C, 69.80; H, 6.00; N, 3.80.

## Reference Example 32

A mixture of methyl 7-bromo-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-  
2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.0g), 4-(2-  
ethoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (0.6g), 1M potassium carbonate  
5 solution (8ml), ethanol (8ml) and toluene (50ml) was  
stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 20  
minutes. To the mixture was added  
tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0.12g), and the  
mixture was refluxed overnight under argon atmosphere and  
10 extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was  
washed with water and saturated brine and dried with  
anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was  
evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was  
purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl  
15 acetate/hexane) to give methyl 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-7-[4-  
(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-  
carboxylate (1.1g) as colorless oil.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 1.26 (3H, t,  $J = 7.1$  Hz), 1.49 (9H, s),  
2.91 (2H, t,  $J = 4.8$  Hz), 3.63 (2H, q,  $J = 7.1$  Hz), 3.68  
20 (2H, br), 3.83 (2H, t,  $J = 4.9$  Hz), 3.83 (3H, s), 4.17 (2H,  
t,  $J = 4.9$  Hz), 7.00 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.47 - 7.53 (4H,  
m), 7.58 (1H, s), 7.73 (1H, s).

IR (neat)  $\nu$ : 2976, 1705  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

## Reference Example 33

25 In ethyl acetate (50ml) was dissolved methyl 1-(t-

butoxycarbonyl)-7-[4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.1g): To the solution was added 6N hydrochloric acid (20ml), and the mixture was stirred at 80°C for 45 minutes, neutralized with 1N sodium hydroxide solution and was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give methyl 7-[4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.7g) as yellow crystals.

mp 102 - 108°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.26 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 2.88 (2H, t, J = 4.7 Hz), 3.40 (2H, t, J = 4.7 Hz), 3.62 (2H, q, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.81 (3H, s), 3.82 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.67 (1H, d, J = 8.5 Hz), 6.97 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.31 (1H, dd, J = 2.2, 8.5 Hz), 7.42 - 7.47 (3H, m), 7.73 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) ν: 3370, 2976, 2946, 2870, 1698 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>22</sub>H<sub>25</sub>NO<sub>4</sub>: C, 71.91; H, 6.86; N, 3.81. Found C, 71.88; H, 6.79; N, 3.78.

#### Reference Example 34

To anhydrous acetic acid (0.25ml) was added formic acid (0.13ml) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at 50°C for 2 hours. To the mixture was added THF (2ml) and then was added



dropwise, under ice-cooling, a solution of methyl 7-[4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.25g) in THF (10ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The solvent was evaporated, and to the residue was added water. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give methyl 7-[4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.2g) as colorless crystals.

mp 138 - 142°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.27 (3H, t, J = 6.9 Hz), 2.95 (2H, t, J = 5.1 Hz), 3.63 (2H, q, J = 6.9 Hz), 3.81 - 3.88 (7H, m), 4.19 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 7.03 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.17 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.48 - 7.59 (3H, m), 7.68 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.75 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) v: 2872, 1709, 1678 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>23</sub>H<sub>25</sub>NO<sub>5</sub>: C, 69.86; H, 6.37; N, 3.54. Found C, 69.88; H, 6.43; N, 3.49.

#### Reference Example 35

In methanol (25ml) and THF (25ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.2g). To the solution

was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (5ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight and concentrated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and  
5 extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give 7-[4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.19g) as  
10 colorless crystals.

mp 190 - 192°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.27 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 2.97 (2H, t, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.64 (2H, q, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.81 - 3.90 (4H, m), 4.19 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 7.03 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.19  
15 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.52 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.59 (1H, dd, J = 2.2, 8.2 Hz), 7.69 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.85 (1H, s), 8.55 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) v: 2936, 2872, 1682, 1671 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>22</sub>H<sub>23</sub>NO<sub>5</sub>: C, 69.28; H, 6.08; N, 3.67. Found  
20 C, 69.00; H, 6.31; N, 3.56.

#### Reference Example 36

A mixture of methyl 7-bromo-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (20g), 4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (14.9g), 1M potassium  
25 carbonate solution (130ml), ethanol (130ml) and toluene

(1000ml) was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (3g), and the mixture was refluxed under argon atmosphere for 15 hours and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (25.2g) as colorless crystals.

#### Reference Example 37

A mixture of methyl 7-bromo-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.0g), 4-(3-ethoxypropoxy)phenyl borate (0.62g), 1M potassium carbonate solution (8ml), ethanol (8ml) and toluene (50ml) was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0.12g), and the mixture was refluxed overnight under argon atmosphere and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was

purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-7-[4-(3-ethoxypropoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.2g) as colorless crystals.

5 mp 125 - 128°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.21 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.49 (9H, s),  
2.02 - 2.14 (2H, m), 2.91 (2H, t, J = 4.2 Hz), 3.51 (2H, q,  
J = 7.0 Hz), 3.62 (2H, t, J = 6.3 Hz), 3.65 (2H, br), 3.83  
(3H, s), 4.12 (2H, t, J = 6.2 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz),  
10 7.40 - 7.55 (4H, m), 7.57 (1H, s), 7.73 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) v: 2976, 2948, 2872, 1705 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

#### Reference Example 38

In ethyl acetate (50ml) was dissolved methyl 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-7-[4-(3-ethoxypropoxy)phenyl]-2,3-  
15 dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.2g). To the solution was added 6N hydrochloric acid (10ml), and the mixture was stirred at 80°C for 30 minutes, neutralized with 1N sodium hydroxide solution and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water  
20 and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give methyl 7-[4-(3-ethoxypropoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.8g) as yellow crystals.

mp 99 - 102°C.

25 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.21 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 2.01 - 2.13

(2H, m), 2.88 (2H, t,  $J = 4.7$  Hz), 3.41 (2H, t,  $J = 4.7$  Hz),  
3.51 (2H, q,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 3.62 (2H, t,  $J = 6.2$  Hz), 3.81  
(3H, s), 4.10 (2H, t,  $J = 6.2$  Hz), 4.78 (1H, br), 6.67 (1H,  
d,  $J = 8.5$  Hz), 6.95 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.32 (1H, dd,  $J =$   
5 2.2, 8.5 Hz), 7.43 - 7.47 (3H, m), 7.73 (1H, s).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 3374, 2949, 2868, 1699  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{23}\text{H}_{27}\text{NO}_4$ : C, 72.42; H, 7.13; N, 3.67. Found  
C, 72.24; H, 7.04; N, 3.67.

#### Reference Example 39

10 To anhydrous acetic acid (0.22ml) was added dropwise  
formic acid (0.11ml) under ice-cooling, and the mixture  
was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at 50°C for 2 hours.  
To the mixture was added THF (2ml) and then was added  
dropwise, under ice-cooling, a solution of methyl 7-[4-  
15 (3-ethoxypropoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-  
carboxylate (0.35g) in THF (15ml), and the mixture was  
stirred at room temperature overnight. The solvent was  
evaporated, and to the residue was added water. The  
mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic  
20 layer was washed with sodium hydrogen carbonate solution,  
water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous  
magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give  
methyl 7-[4-(3-ethoxypropoxy) phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-  
dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.36g) as  
25 colorless crystals.

mp 112 - 113°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.22 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 2.03 - 2.15 (2H, m), 2.95 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.52 (2H, q, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.63 (2H, t, J = 6.3 Hz), 3.84 (3H, s), 3.84 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.13 (2H, t, J = 6.3 Hz), 7.01 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.17 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.52 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.56 (1H, dd, J = 2.2, 8.8 Hz), 7.68 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.75 (1H, s), 8.53 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) ν: 2951, 2872, 1709, 1678 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>24</sub>H<sub>27</sub>NO<sub>5</sub>·0.2H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 69.78; H, 6.69; N, 3.39.  
Found C, 69.98; H, 6.79; N, 3.28.

#### Reference Example 40

In methanol (25ml) and THF (25ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(3-ethoxypropoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.31g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (8ml), and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 1.5 hours and concentrated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give 7-[4-(3-ethoxypropoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.3g) as colorless crystals.

mp 179 - 181°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.22 (3H, t, J = 7.1 Hz), 2.03 - 2.15 (2H, m), 2.97 (2H, t, J = 5.5 Hz), 3.52 (2H, q, J = 7.1 Hz), 3.63 (2H, t, J = 6.3 Hz), 3.88 (2H, t, J = 5.5 Hz), 4.13 (2H, t, J = 6.0 Hz), 7.01 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.19 (1H, d, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.52 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.58 (1H, dd, J = 2.0, 8.1 Hz), 7.69 (1H, d, J = 2.0 Hz), 7.85 (1H, s), 8.55 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) v: 3036, 2870, 1682 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>23</sub>H<sub>25</sub>NO<sub>5</sub>: C, 69.86; H, 6.37; N, 3.54. Found C, 69.64; H, 6.32; N, 3.55.

#### Reference Example 41

A mixture of methyl 7-bromo-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.0g), 3,4-diethoxyphenyl borate (0.63g), 1M potassium carbonate solution (8ml), ethanol (8ml) and toluene (50ml) was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0.12g), and the mixture was refluxed overnight under argon atmosphere and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl

acetate/hexane) to give methyl 1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.3g) as colorless crystals.

mp 168 - 173°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.45 - 1.53 (15H, m), 2.90 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.68 (2H, br), 3.83 (3H, s), 4.09 - 4.23 (4H, m), 6.95 (1H, d, J = 9.2 Hz), 7.09 - 7.14 (2H, m), 7.40 - 7.52 (2H, m), 7.57 (1H, s), 7.74 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) v: 2980, 1705 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>27</sub>H<sub>33</sub>NO<sub>6</sub>: C, 69.36; H, 7.11; N, 3.00. Found C, 69.17; H, 7.11; N, 2.93.

#### Reference Example 42

In ethyl acetate (50ml) was dissolved methyl 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-7-(3,4-diethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.3g). To the solution was added 6N hydrochloric acid (10ml), and the mixture was stirred at 80°C for 1 hour, neutralized with 1N sodium hydroxide solution and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give methyl 7-(3,4-diethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.7g) as yellow crystals.

mp 159 - 164°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.43 - 1.52 (6H, m), 2.89 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.41 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.81 (3H, s), 4.08 -



4.22 (4H, m), 6.67 (1H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 6.92 (1H, d,  $J = 9.2$  Hz), 7.03 - 7.07 (2H, m), 7.31 (1H, dd,  $J = 2.2, 8.2$  Hz), 7.45 (1H, d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 7.73 (1H, s).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 3391, 2980, 1688  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

- 5 Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{22}\text{H}_{25}\text{NO}_4 \cdot 0.2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 71.21; H, 6.90; N, 3.77.  
Found C, 71.23; H, 6.88; N, 3.67.

Reference Example 43

To anhydrous acetic acid (0.22ml) was added dropwise formic acid (0.11ml) under ice-cooling, and the mixture  
10 was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at 50°C for 2 hours.  
To the mixture was added THF (2ml) and then was added dropwise, under ice-cooling, a solution of methyl 7-(3,4-diethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.35g) in THF (20ml), and the mixture was stirred  
15 at room temperature overnight. The solvent was evaporated, and to the residue was added water. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous  
20 magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give methyl 7-(3,4-diethoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-carboxylate (0.35g) as colorless crystals.  
mp 152 - 153°C.

- $^1\text{H}$ -NMR ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 1.45 - 1.54 (6H, m), 2.95 (2H, t,  $J =$   
25 5.3 Hz), 3.82 - 3.88 (5H, m), 4.10 - 4.24 (4H, m), 6.97 (1H,

d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.11 - 7.19 (3H, m), 7.56 (1H, dd,  $J = 2.2$ , 8.4 Hz), 7.67 (1H, d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 7.76 (1H, s), 8.53 (1H, s).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2980, 1709, 1678  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

- 5     Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{23}\text{H}_{25}\text{NO}_5 \cdot 0.2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 69.23; H, 6.42; N, 3.51.  
Found C, 69.39; H, 6.39; N, 3.48.

Reference Example 44

- In methanol (25ml) and THF (25ml) was dissolved methyl 7-(3,4-diethoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.33g). To the solution was  
10     added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (8ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight and concentrated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and  
15     extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give 7-(3,4-diethoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.32g) as  
20     colorless crystals.

mp 228 - 233°C (dec.).

- $^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 1.49 (3H, t,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 1.50 (3H, t,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 2.97 (2H, t,  $J = 5.5$  Hz), 3.88 (2H, t,  $J = 5.5$  Hz), 4.11 - 4.24 (4H, m), 6.97 (1H, d,  $J = 8.7$  Hz), 7.11 -  
25     7.21 (3H, m), 7.59 (1H, dd,  $J = 2.0, 8.7$  Hz), 7.69 (1H, d,

$J = 2.0 \text{ Hz}$ ), 7.86 (1H, s), 8.55 (1H, s).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2980, 1682, 1669  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{22}\text{H}_{23}\text{NO}_5$ : C, 69.28; H, 6.08; N, 3.67. Found C, 69.31; H, 6.23; N, 3.60.

5           Reference Example 45

A mixture of methyl 7-bromo-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.25g), 4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (0.23g), 1M potassium carbonate solution (2.5ml), ethanol (2.5ml) and toluene  
10 (25ml) was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0.04g), and the mixture was refluxed overnight under argon atmosphere and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was  
15 washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-  
20 butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.23g) as colorless oil.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 0.94 (3H, t,  $J = 7.2 \text{ Hz}$ ), 1.34 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.69 (2H, m), 2.94 (2H, t,  $J = 5.0 \text{ Hz}$ ), 3.56 (2H, t,  $J = 6.6 \text{ Hz}$ ), 3.79 - 3.87 (7H, m), 4.18 (2H, t,  $J = 5.0 \text{ Hz}$ ), 7.02 (2H, d,  $J = 9.2 \text{ Hz}$ ), 7.17 (1H, d,  $J = 8.4$

25

Hz), 7.48 - 7.58 (3H, m), 7.68 (1H, d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 7.75 (1H, s), 8.53 (1H, s).

IR (neat)  $\nu$ : 2938, 2870, 1713, 1682  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

#### Reference Example 46

5 In methanol (25ml) and THF (25ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.23g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (5ml), and the mixture was stirred at 55°C for 1.5 hours and  
10 concentrated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was  
15 evaporated to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.24g) as colorless amorphous.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 0.94 (3H, t,  $J = 7.3$  Hz), 1.27 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.66 (2H, m), 2.97 (2H, t,  $J = 4.9$  Hz),  
20 3.57 (2H, t,  $J = 6.8$  Hz), 3.80 - 3.90 (4H, m), 4.18 (2H, t,  $J = 4.9$  Hz), 7.06 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.19 (1H, d,  $J = 8.2$  Hz), 7.52 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.58 (1H, dd,  $J = 2.0, 8.2$  Hz), 7.69 (1H, d,  $J = 2.0$  Hz), 7.85 (1H, s), 8.55 (1H, s).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2955, 2934, 2867, 1682, 1669  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

25 Reference Example 47

A mixture of methyl 7-bromo-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.2g), 4-[N-(2-ethoxyethyl)-N-methylamino]phenyl borate (0.17g), potassium carbonate (0.2g), water (1.1ml), ethanol (1.1ml) and toluene (10.7ml) was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0.03g), and the mixture was refluxed overnight under argon atmosphere and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 7-[4-[N-(2-ethoxyethyl)-N-methylamino]phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.22g) as colorless amorphous. <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.21 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 2.91 - 2.97 (2H, m), 3.05 (3H, s), 3.52 (2H, q, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.58 - 3.63 (4H, m), 3.81 - 3.88 (2H, m), 3.84 (3H, s), 6.81 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.14 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.46 - 7.57 (3H, m), 7.67 (1H, d, J = 2.0 Hz), 7.75 (1H, s), 8.52 (1H, s). IR (KBr) ν: 1707, 1678, 1610, 1503, 1358, 1261, 1234, 1196 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

## Reference Example 48

In methanol (6.6ml) and THF (4.4ml) was dissolved

methyl 7-[4-[N-(2-ethoxyethyl)-N-methylamino]phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.22g).

To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (2.2ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature

5 overnight and concentrated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was neutralized with 1N

hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine

and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the

10 solvent was evaporated to give 7-[4-[N-(2-ethoxyethyl)-N-methylamino]phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-

benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.18g) as colorless amorphous.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.10 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 2.68 - 2.81  
15 (2H, m), 2.97 (3H, s), 3.26 - 3.38 (2H, m), 3.44 (2H, q, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.54 (3H, s), 3.68 - 3.73 (2H, m), 6.79 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.36 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.56 - 7.73 (4H, m), 7.86 (1H, s), 8.52 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) ν: 2975, 2876, 1678, 1611, 1503, 1312, 1431, 1292,  
20 1273, 1194, 1117, 810 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

#### Reference Example 49

A mixture of methyl 7-bromo-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.2g), 4-[N-(2-ethoxyethyl)-N-ethylamino]phenyl borate (0.46g), 1M potassium  
25 carbonate solution (3.2ml), ethanol (3.2ml) and toluene

(25ml) was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0.03g), and the mixture was refluxed overnight under argon atmosphere and  
5 extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl  
10 acetate/hexane) to give methyl 7-[4-[N-(2-ethoxyethyl)-N-ethylamino]phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.23g) as green amorphous.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 1.17 - 1.26 (6H, m), 2.94 (2H, t,  $J$  = 4.8 Hz), 3.42 - 3.64 (8H, m), 3.82 - 3.87 (5H, m), 6.78 (2H,  
15 d,  $J$  = 8.8 Hz), 7.13 (1H, d,  $J$  = 8.1 Hz), 7.47 (2H, d,  $J$  = 8.8 Hz), 7.54 (1H, dd,  $J$  = 2.1, 8.1 Hz), 7.66 (1H, d,  $J$  = 2.1 Hz), 7.75 (1H, s), 8.51 (1H, s).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2973, 2868, 1709, 1678  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

#### Reference Example 50

20 In methanol (25ml) and THF (25ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-[N-(2-ethoxyethyl)-N-ethylamino]phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.23g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (5.5ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature  
25 overnight and concentrated. To the residue was added

water, and the mixture was neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give 7-[4-[N-(2-ethoxyethyl)-N-ethylamino]phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.2g) as pale green crystals.

mp 182 - 184°C.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 1.17 - 1.30 (6H, m), 2.97 (2H, t,  $J = 5.7$  Hz), 3.43 - 3.65 (8H, m), 3.87 (2H, t,  $J = 5.7$  Hz), 6.79 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.16 (1H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.48 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.58 (1H, dd,  $J = 2.0, 8.4$  Hz), 7.68 (1H, d,  $J = 2.0$  Hz), 7.86 (1H, s), 8.54 (1H, s).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2973, 2872, 1682  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

#### Reference Example 51

A mixture of methyl 7-bromo-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.25g), 4-[N-ethyl-N-(2-propoxyethyl)amino]phenyl borate (0.3g), 1M potassium carbonate solution (2.5ml), ethanol (2.5ml) and toluene (25ml) was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0.04g), and the mixture was refluxed overnight under argon atmosphere and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with



anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 7-[4-[N-ethyl-N-(2-propoxyethyl)amino]phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.31g) as green oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.21 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.59 - 1.66 (2H, m), 2.94 (2H, t, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.39 - 3.64 (8H, m), 3.82 - 3.87 (5H, m), 6.78 (2H, d, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.14 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.47 (2H, d, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.55 (1H, dd, J = 2.0, 8.2 Hz), 7.66 (1H, d, J = 2.0 Hz), 7.75 (1H, s), 8.52 (1H, s).

IR (neat) ν: 2942, 2867, 1709, 1682 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

#### Reference Example 52

In methanol (25ml) and THF (25ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-[N-ethyl-N-(2-propoxyethyl)amino]phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.31g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (7ml), and the mixture was stirred at 60°C for 1.5 hours and concentrated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give 7-[4-[N-ethyl-N-(2-

propoxyethyl)amino]phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.29g) as pale yellow crystals.

mp 169 - 171°C.

5 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.5 Hz), 1.21 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.56 - 1.66 (2H, m), 2.96 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.39 - 3.62 (8H, m), 3.87 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.78 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.16 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.47 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.58 (1H, dd, J = 2.0, 8.0 Hz), 7.68 (1H, d, J = 2.0 Hz), 7.84 (1H, s), 8.54 (1H, s).

10 IR (KBr) v: 2967, 2870, 1680 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

#### Reference Example 53

In THF (50ml) were dissolved methyl 7-(4-morpholinophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.7g) and pyridine (1.2ml). To the solution was added methanesulfonic anhydride (1.5g), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at 50 for 3 hours. The solvent was evaporated, and to the residue was added water. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 7-methanesulfonyl-7-(4-morpholinophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-

carboxylate (0.4g) as pale yellow crystals.

mp 224 - 226°C (dec.).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 2.78 (3H, s), 3.05 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz),  
3.21 - 3.26 (4H, m), 3.85 - 3.92 (9H, m), 6.99 (2H, d, J =  
5 9.2 Hz), 7.50 - 7.58 (3H, m), 7.63 - 7.69 (2H, m), 7.80 (1H,  
s).

IR (KBr) v: 2953, 1709 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

#### Reference Example 54

In methanol (100ml) and THF (100ml) was dissolved  
10 methyl 1-methanesulfonyl-7-(4-morpholinophenyl)-2,3-  
dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.4g). To the  
solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (10ml),  
and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight.  
To the mixture was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution  
15 (5ml), and the mixture was stirred at 60°C for 1.5 hours  
and concentrated. To the residue was added water, and  
the mixture was neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and  
extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was  
washed with water and saturated brine and dried with  
20 anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was  
evaporated to give 1-methanesulfonyl-7-(4-  
morpholinophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-  
carboxylic acid (0.36g) as pale yellow crystals.  
mp 264 - 275°C (dec.).

25 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub> + CD<sub>3</sub>OD) 2.79 (3H, s), 3.02 (2H, t, J =

5.1 Hz), 3.21 - 3.26 (4H, m), 3.84 - 3.92 (6H, m), 7.00 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.50 - 7.58 (3H, m), 7.64 - 7.68 (2H, m), 7.83 (1H, s).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2969, 2832, 1671  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

5 Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{22}\text{H}_{24}\text{N}_2\text{O}_5\text{S}$ : C, 61.66; H, 5.65; N, 6.54.  
Found C, 61.48; H, 5.81; N, 6.25.

#### Reference Example 55

In THF (25ml) were dissolved methyl 7-(4-ethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.25g) and pyridine (0.6ml). To the solution was added methanesulfonic anhydride (0.67g), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at 40°C overnight. To the mixture was added methanesulfonic anhydride (0.13g), and the mixture was stirred at 40°C for 4 hours. The solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 7-(4-ethoxyphenyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.14g) as pale yellow crystals.

mp 175 - 181°C.

25  $^1\text{H}$ -NMR ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 1.45 (3H, t,  $J = 7.1$  Hz), 2.78 (3H, s),

3.05 (2H, t,  $J = 4.9$  Hz), 3.84 - 3.89 (5H, m), 4.09 (2H, q,  $J = 7.1$  Hz), 6.98 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.49 - 7.57 (3H, m), 7.63 (1H, d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 7.67 (1H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.80 (1H, s).

5 IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2984, 1711  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Reference Example 56

In methanol (25ml) and THF (25ml) was dissolved methyl 7-(4-ethoxyphenyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.14g). To the solution  
10 was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (3ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight and concentrated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was  
15 washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give 7-(4-ethoxyphenyl)-1-methanesulfonyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.13g) as pale yellow crystals.

20 mp 237 - 242°C (dec.).

$^1\text{H}$ -NMR ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 1.46 (3H, t,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 2.81 (3H, s), 3.08 (2H, t,  $J = 5.9$  Hz), 3.89 (2H, t,  $J = 5.9$  Hz), 4.10 (2H, q,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 6.99 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.52 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.58 (1H, dd,  $J = 2.0, 8.4$  Hz), 7.65 (1H, d,  $J = 2.0$  Hz), 7.70 (1H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.91 (1H, s).

25

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2984, 1669  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Reference Example 57

In THF (30ml) were dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.25g) and pyridine (0.5ml). To the solution was added methanesulfonic anhydride (0.6g), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at 50°C overnight. To the mixture was added methanesulfonic anhydride (0.1g), and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 2 hours. The solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-methanesulfonyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.13g) as pale yellow crystals. mp 143 - 146°C.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 1.27 (3H, t,  $J = 6.9$  Hz), 2.78 (3H, s), 3.06 (2H, t,  $J = 5.2$  Hz), 3.63 (2H, q,  $J = 6.9$  Hz), 3.81 - 3.89 (7H, m), 4.19 (2H, t,  $J = 4.9$  Hz), 7.03 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.49 - 7.57 (3H, m), 7.64 (1H, d,  $J = 2.0$  Hz), 7.68 (1H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.81 (1H, s).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2932, 2872, 1709  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

## Reference Example 58

In methanol (20ml) and THF (20ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-methanesulfonyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.13g). To the  
5 solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (3ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight and concentrated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was  
10 washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give 7-[4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-methanesulfonyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.12g) as pale yellow crystals.

15 mp 222 - 225°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.27 (3H, t, J = 7.1 Hz), 2.81 (3H, s), 3.08 (2H, t, J = 5.1 Hz), 3.63 (2H, q, J = 7.1 Hz), 3.81 - 3.91 (4H, m), 4.19 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 7.03 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.52 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.57 (1H, dd, J = 2.2, 9.0 Hz), 7.64 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.67 (1H, d, J = 9.0 Hz),  
20 7.90 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) v: 2978, 2872, 1694, 1669 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

## Reference Example 59

In THF (35ml) were dissolved methyl 7-[4-(3-ethoxypropoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-  
25

carboxylate (0.4g) and pyridine (0.75ml). To the solution was added methanesulfonic anhydride (0.92g), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. To the mixture was added

5 methanesulfonic anhydride (0.25g), and the mixture was stirred at 50°C overnight. The solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with  
10 anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 7-[4-(3-ethoxypropoxy)phenyl]-1-methanesulfonyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.26g) as  
15 pale yellow crystals.

mp 127 - 129°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.22 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 2.02 - 2.15 (2H, m), 2.78 (3H, s), 3.05 (2H, t, J = 5.5 Hz), 3.51 (2H, q, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.62 (2H, t, J = 6.2 Hz), 3.85 (3H, s),  
20 3.86 (2H, t, J = 5.5 Hz), 4.12 (2H, t, J = 6.2 Hz), 7.00 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.51 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.55 (1H, dd, J = 2.2, 8.4 Hz), 7.63 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.67 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.80 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) v: 2951, 2872, 1711 cm<sup>-1</sup>.



In methanol (25ml) and THF (25ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(3-ethoxypropoxy)phenyl]-1-methanesulfonyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.22g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (5ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight and concentrated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give 7-[4-(3-ethoxypropoxy)phenyl]-1-methanesulfonyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.23g) as pale yellow crystals.

mp 210 - 212°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.22 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 2.03 - 2.15 (2H, m), 2.81 (3H, s), 3.08 (2H, t, J = 5.5 Hz), 3.52 (2H, q, J = 7.2 Hz), 3.63 (2H, t, J = 6.0 Hz), 3.89 (2H, t, J = 5.5 Hz), 4.13 (2H, t, J = 6.2 Hz), 7.00 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.52 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.57 (1H, dd, J = 1.8, 8.4 Hz), 7.65 (1H, d, J = 1.8 Hz), 7.69 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.91 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) v: 3036, 2870, 1671 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>23</sub>H<sub>27</sub>NO<sub>6</sub>S: C, 62.00; H, 6.11; N, 3.14.

Found C, 62.17; H, 5.99; N, 3.17.

Reference Example 61

In dimethyl carbonate (15ml) was dissolved 7-bromo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-1-benzazepin-5-one (0.68g). To the solution was added sodium methoxide (0.92g), and the mixture was refluxed under nitrogen atmosphere for 8 hours and poured into ice-water. To the mixture was added 1N hydrochloric acid, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give pale yellow oil (0.88g), which was dissolved in THF (30ml). To the solution was added sodium borohydride (0.1g) at -40°C and then was added dropwise methanol (3ml), and the mixture was stirred at -15°C for 1 hour. To the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was dissolved in THF (25ml), and to the solution was added triethylamine (0.7ml), and then was added dropwise, under ice-cooling, methanesulfonyl chloride (0.6ml). Under nitrogen atmosphere, the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight, and to the mixture was added dropwise DBU (2.5ml) at room temperature. The mixture

was refluxed for 30 minutes, and the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 7-bromo-1-methoxycarbonyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.3g) as colorless crystals. mp 135 - 136°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 2.92 (2H, t, J = 5.1 Hz), 3.70 (2H, br), 3.74 (3H, s), 3.82 (3H, s), 7.26 (1H, br), 7.42 (1H, dd, J = 2.2, 8.4 Hz), 7.56 - 7.57 (2H, m).

IR (KBr) v: 2951, 1713 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>14</sub>H<sub>14</sub>BrNO<sub>4</sub>: C, 49.43; H, 4.15; N, 4.12. Found C, 49.53; H, 4.08; N, 4.06.

#### Reference Example 62

A mixture of methyl 7-bromo-1-methoxycarbonyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.3g), 4-morpholinophenyl borate (0.22g), 1M potassium carbonate solution (2.5ml), ethanol (2.5ml) and toluene (25ml) was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0.04g), and the mixture was refluxed overnight under argon atmosphere and

extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was

5 purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 1-methoxycarbonyl-7-(4-morpholinophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.31g) as pale yellow crystals.

mp 216 - 220°C.

10  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 2.94 (2H, t,  $J = 5.4$  Hz), 3.20 - 3.25 (4H, m), 3.75 (2H, br), 3.76 (3H, br), 3.83 (3H, s), 3.87 - 3.92 (4H, m), 6.99 (2H, d,  $J = 9.0$  Hz), 7.39 (1H, br), 7.50 - 7.55 (3H, m), 7.60 (1H, s), 7.73 (1H, s).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2953, 1713  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

15 Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{24}\text{H}_{26}\text{N}_2\text{O}_5 \cdot 0.2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 67.65; H, 6.25; N, 6.57. Found C, 67.50; H, 6.10; N, 6.58.

#### Reference Example 63

In methanol (40ml) and THF (60ml) was dissolved methyl 1-methoxycarbonyl-7-(4-morpholinophenyl)-2,3-

20 dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.31g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (5ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. To the mixture was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (2.5ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature

25 overnight and concentrated. The residue was neutralized

with 1N hydrochloric acid, precipitated crystals were filtered and washed with water to give 1-methoxycarbonyl-7-(4-morpholinophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.29g) as colorless crystals.

5 mp 274 - 279°C (dec.).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{DMSO-d}_6$ ) 2.78 (2H, t-like), 3.16 - 3.18 (4H, m), 3.60 (2H, br), 3.66 (3H, s), 3.75 - 3.77 (4H, m), 7.03 (2H, d,  $J = 8.6$  Hz), 7.40 (1H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.58 - 7.69 (4H, m), 7.79 (1H, s), 12.65 (1H, br).

10 IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2969, 1705, 1678  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{23}\text{H}_{24}\text{N}_2\text{O}_5 \cdot 0.5\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 66.17; H, 6.04; N, 6.71.

Found C, 66.15; H, 5.74; N, 6.68.

#### Reference Example 64

In pyridine (10.0ml) were dissolved ethyl 4-(4-bromo-2-formylphenyl)aminobutyrate (3.16g) and tosyl chloride (2.88g), and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 62 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with 1N hydrochloric acid and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (150g, hexane : ethyl acetate = 6 : 1  $\rightarrow$  4:1) to give ethyl 4-(4-bromo-2-formylphenyl)-4-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]aminobutyrate (1.47g, 31%) as brown oil.

15  
20  
25

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.23 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.77 (2H, quint, J = 7.2 Hz), 2.35 (2H, t, J = 7.1 Hz), 2.45 (3H, s), 3.27 - 3.38 (1H, m), 3.88 - 3.96 (1H, m), 4.09 (2H, q, J = 6.9 Hz), 6.60 (1H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.29 (2H, d, J = 9.2 Hz), 7.44 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.59 (1H, dd, J = 8.5, 2.5 Hz), 8.15 (1H, d, J = 2.6 Hz), 10.35 (1H, s).  
IR (KBr) 1732, 1694, 1474, 1377, 1350, 1184, 1163, 723, 655, 579 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

#### Reference Example 65

10 In a mixture of t-butanol and toluene (1:10, v/v, 66.0ml) was dissolved ethyl 4-(4-bromo-2-formylphenyl)-4-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]aminobutyrate (1456mg). To the solution was added at room temperature potassium t-butoxide (384mg), and the mixture was stirred at 100°C  
15 for 1 hour. To the mixture was added 1N hydrochloric acid to convert weakly acidic solution, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was  
20 evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (75g, hexane : ethyl acetate = 6 : 1) to give ethyl 7-bromo-1-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (413mg, 30%) as yellow amorphous.  
25 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.29 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 2.35 (3H,

s), 2.86 (2H, td,  $J = 5.8, 1.4$  Hz), 3.87 (2H, t,  $J = 6.1$  Hz), 4.19 (2H, q,  $J = 7.1$  Hz), 7.13 (2H, d,  $J = 8.0$  Hz), 7.15 - 7.19 (1H, m), 7.39 - 7.55 (5H, m).  
IR (KBr) 1709, 1485, 1350, 1246, 1194, 1163, 1090, 710, 696,  
5 662  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

#### Reference Example 66

In a mixture of water : ethanol : toluene (1 : 1 :  
10 v/v, 18.0ml) were dissolved 4-(4-morpholino)phenyl  
borate (278mg) and ethyl 7-bromo-1-[(4-  
10 methylphenyl)sulfonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-  
carboxylate (403mg). To the solution was added potassium  
carbonate (297mg), and the mixture was stirred under  
argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To  
the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium  
15 (41mg), and the mixture was refluxed under argon  
atmosphere for 13 hours. The mixture was diluted with  
ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine.  
The organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium  
sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced  
20 pressure. The residue was purified with silica gel  
column chromatography (45g, hexane : ethyl acetate = 4 :  
1  $\rightarrow$  3 : 1) to give ethyl 7-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]-7-  
[4-(4-morpholino)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-  
carboxylate (460mg, 96%) as yellow crystals.  
25  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.30 (3H, t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 2.34 (3H,

s), 2.87 (2H, t,  $J = 5.3$  Hz), 3.23 (4H, t,  $J = 4.9$  Hz),  
3.90 (4H, t,  $J = 4.8$  Hz), 3.90 - 3.95 (2H, m), 4.20 (2H, q,  
 $J = 7.1$  Hz), 6.99 (2H, d,  $J = 9.0$  Hz), 7.12 (2H, d,  $J = 8.2$   
Hz), 7.36 (1H, s), 7.45 (2H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.53 (2H, d,  $J$   
5 = 8.6 Hz), 7.46 - 7.68 (3H, m).

IR (KBr) 1705, 1609, 1493, 1348, 1233, 1161, 1123, 1092,  
932, 818, 671  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

#### Reference Example 67

In THF (10.0ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(4-  
10 morpholino)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-  
carboxylate (369mg), and to the solution were added  
pyridine (0.11ml) and acetyl chloride (0.086ml) at room  
temperature or at 0°C. The mixture was stirred at room  
temperature for 30 minutes, and diluted with ethyl  
15 acetate and washed with water and saturated brine. The  
organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate,  
and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to  
give methyl 1-acetyl-7-[4-(4-morpholino)phenyl]-2,3-  
dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (400mg, 97%) as  
20 pale yellow amorphous.

$^1\text{H}$ -NMR (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.05 (3H, s), 2.74 - 3.19 (3H, m),  
3.24 (4H, t,  $J = 4.8$  Hz), 3.83 (3H, s), 3.90 (4H, t,  $J =$   
4.8 Hz), 4.73 - 4.85 (1H, m), 7.01 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz),  
7.23 (1H, d,  $J = 8.2$  Hz), 7.54 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.51 -  
25 7.56 (1H, m), 7.67 (1H, d,  $J = 1.8$  Hz), 7.74 (1H, s).



IR (KBr) 1709 ,1659, 1609, 1497, 1389, 1233, 1123  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Reference Example 68

In a mixture of THF and ethanol (1:1,v/v, 10.0ml) was dissolved methyl 1-acetyl-7-[4-(4-morpholino)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (394mg). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (3.0ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours. To the mixture was added 1N hydrochloric acid to convert weakly acidic solution, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give 1-acetyl-7-[4-(4-morpholino)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (372mg, 98%) as pale yellow crystals.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{DMSO-d}_6$ )  $\delta$  1.95 (3H, s), 2.75 (3H, br), 3.17 (4H, t,  $J = 4.7$  Hz), 3.76 (4H, t,  $J = 4.8$  Hz), 4.54 (1H, br), 7.03 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.46 (1H, d,  $J = 8.2$  Hz), 7.63 - 7.72 (4H, m), 7.88 (1H, s).

Reference Example 69

In THF (500ml) was dissolved methyl anthranilate (247.8g, 130mol). To the solution were added pyridine (205.7g, 2.60ml) and tosyl chloride (260.2g, 1.37mol) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 14.5 hours (overnight). To the mixture were added ethyl acetate and water to carry out extraction, and the

organic layer was washed with 1N hydrochloric acid, water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated to give crystals which were washed with ethyl acetate and IPE (isopropyl ether) to give white crystals of methyl N-tosylanthranilate (348.0g). The mother liquor was treated by the same procedure to give methyl N-tosylanthranilate (32.4g).

Yield, 380.4 g (96%).

mp 111 - 112°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 200 MHz) δ 2.36 (3H, s), 3.88 (3H, s), 7.03 (1H, td, J = 7.6, 1.7 Hz), 7.22 (2H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.45 (1H, td, J = 7.9, 1.5 Hz), 7.67 - 7.78 (1H, m), 7.75 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.92 (1H, dd, J = 8.0, 1.6 Hz), 10.63 (1H, brs).

IR (KBr) 3173, 1688, 1493, 1260, 1161, 1090, 567 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

#### Reference Example 70

In 85% acetic acid solution (1000ml) were suspended methyl N-tosylanthranilate (100g, 328mmol) and sodium acetate (29.6g, 361mmol). To the solution was added dropwise at room temperature a solution of bromine (21.0ml, 408mmol) in 85% acetic acid solution (100ml), and the mixture was stirred at 70°C for 2 hours. To the mixture was added sodium thiosulfate pentahydrate at room temperature, and excess bromine was reduced. The mixture

was concentrated under reduced pressure, and to the residue were added water and ethyl acetate. The separated organic layer was washed with potassium carbonate solution and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated to give crystals, which were washed with IPE to give white crystals of methyl 5-bromo-N-tosylanthranilate (116.9g). The mother liquor was treated by the same procedure to give methyl 5-bromo-N-tosylanthranilate (6.9g).

Yield, 123.5g (98%).

mp 123 - 124°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 200 MHz) δ 2.38 (3H, s), 3.89 (3H, s), 7.24 (2H, d, J = 9.2 Hz), 7.53 (1H, dd, J = 8.8, 2.2 Hz), 7.61 (1H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.73 (2H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 8.03 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 10.52 (1H, brs).

#### Reference Example 71

In a mixture of water : ethanol : toluene (1 : 1 : 10, v/v. 42.0ml) were dissolved 4-propoxyphenyl borate (746mg) and methyl 7-bromo-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1320mg). To the solution was added potassium carbonate (1145mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (160mg), and the

mixture was heated to reflux under argon atmosphere for 14.5 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate.

5 The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (75g, hexane : ethyl acetate = 3 : 1) to give methyl 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate as yellow  
10 amorphous. The obtained methyl 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate was dissolved in ethyl acetate (80ml). To the solution was added 6N hydrochloric acid (20ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at 100°C  
15 for 30 minutes and neutralized with 1N sodium hydroxide and saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution. The separated organic layer was washed with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent  
20 was evaporated under reduced pressure to give crystals, which were washed with ethyl acetate/hexane to give methyl 7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (947mg) as yellow crystals. The mother liquor was concentrated, and the residue was purified  
25 with silica gel column chromatography (15g, hexane:ethyl

acetate=4:1) to give desired product (147mg).

Yield, 1094mg (94%).

mp 134 - 137°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.05 (3H, t, J = 8.1 Hz), 1.83 (2H, sextet, J = 7.0 Hz), 2.88 (2H, t, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.40 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.81 (3H, s), 3.96 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 6.67 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.90 - 6.98 (2H, m), 7.32 (1H, dd, J = 8.4, 2.2 Hz), 7.45 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.46 (1H, d, J = 1.8 Hz), 7.73 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 3384, 2963, 1698, 1609, 1499, 1269, 1242, 1209, 1177, 818 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>21</sub>H<sub>23</sub>NO<sub>3</sub> (0.1H<sub>2</sub>O additive): C, 74.36; H, 6.89; N, 4.13. Found C, 74.31; H, 6.81; N, 4.10.

#### Reference Example 72

To anhydrous acetic acid (0.65ml) was added formic acid (0.32ml) at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred at 60°C for 2 hours, air-cooled and diluted with THF (10ml). In THF (10ml) was dissolved methyl 7-(4 propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (520mg), and the solution was added dropwise to the previously prepared solution of formic anhydride in THF, at 0°C. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hours. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, water and

saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give crystals, which were washed with ethyl acetate/hexane to give methyl 1-formyl-7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (563mg) as white crystals.

mp 151.5 - 153°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.07 (3H, t, J = 7.5 Hz), 1.85 (2H, sextet, J = 7.1 Hz), 2.92 (2H, t, J = 5.1 Hz), 3.84 (3H, s), 3.85 (2H, t, J = 5.5 Hz), 3.98 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 6.98 - 7.02 (2H, m), 7.17 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.48 - 7.54 (2H, m), 7.56 (1H, dd, J = 8.2, 2.2 Hz), 7.68 (1H, d, J = 2.0 Hz), 7.76 (1H, s), 8.53 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 1709, 1678, 1497, 1358, 1236, 1192, 824 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>22</sub>H<sub>23</sub>NO<sub>4</sub>: C, 72.31; H, 6.34; N, 3.83. Found C, 72.35; H, 6.45; N, 3.83.

#### Reference Example 73

In THF (15.0ml) was dissolved methyl 7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (431mg). To the solution was added pyridine (1.0ml) and then was added a solution of methanesulfonic anhydride (1.11g) in THF (5.0 ml), at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 15 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water, 1N hydrochloric acid, water and saturated brine, and the

organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give crystals, which were washed with ethyl acetate to give methyl 1-methylsulfonyl-7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (238mg) as white crystals. The mother liquor was concentrated, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (15g, hexane : ethyl acetate = 2 : 1) to give desired product. The obtained methyl 1-methylsulfonyl-7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate was collected and dissolved in a mixture of THF and ethanol (1 : 1, v/v, 40ml). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (14.0ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. The mixture was a little concentrated, and to the residue was added 1N hydrochloric acid to convert weakly acidic solution. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give crystals, which were washed with ethyl acetate/hexane to give 1-methylsulfonyl-7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (273mg, 53%) as white crystals.

mp 261 - 263°C (dec.).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 1.00 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.76 (2H, sextet, J = 7.0 Hz), 2.91 (2H, t-like), 3.08 (3H, s), 3.71 (2H, t-like), 3.98 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 7.02 (2H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.51 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.61 - 7.65 (1H, m),  
5 7.67 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.75 (1H, s), 7.86 (1H, d, J = 1.4 Hz).

IR (KBr) 1669, 1499, 1435, 1341, 1273, 1248, 1144, 970, 824, 787 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>21</sub>H<sub>23</sub>NO<sub>5</sub>S (0.2H<sub>2</sub>O additive): C, 62.27; H, 5.82; N, 3.46. Found C, 62.17; H, 5.87; N, 3.45.  
10

#### Reference Example 74

In a mixture of THF and ethanol (1 : 1, v/v. 24.0ml ) was dissolved methyl 1-formyl-7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate  
15 (501mg). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (15.0ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The mixture was a little concentrated, and to the residue was added 1N hydrochloric acid to convert weakly acidic solution. The  
20 mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give crystals, which were washed with ethyl acetate/hexane to give 1-formyl-7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-  
25



carboxylic acid (482mg) as white crystals.

mp 215 - 217°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 1.03 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.71 - 1.84 (2H, m), 2.79 (2H, t, J = 5.4 Hz), 3.75 (2H, t, J = 5.6 Hz), 3.98 (2H, t, J = 6.5 Hz), 7.00 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.34 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.59 - 7.65 (3H, m), 7.73 (1H, s), 7.82 (1H, d, J = 1.6 Hz), 8.53 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 1701, 1682, 1644, 1501, 1366, 1294, 1256, 1233, 1186, 820 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>21</sub>H<sub>21</sub>NO<sub>4</sub>: C, 71.78; H, 6.02; N, 3.99. Found C, 72.08; H, 6.12; N, 4.06.

#### Reference Example 75

In a mixture of water : ethanol : toluene (1 : 1 : 10, v/v, 42.0ml) were dissolved 4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl borate (754mg) and methyl 7-bromo-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1305mg). To the solution was added potassium carbonate (1132mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (158mg), and the mixture was heated to reflux under argon atmosphere for 10 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and

the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (75g, hexane : ethyl acetate = 4 : 1) to give methyl 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate as yellow amorphous. The obtained methyl 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate was dissolved in ethyl acetate (80ml). To the solution was added 1N hydrochloric acid (15ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at 100°C for 1 hour and neutralized with 1N sodium hydroxide and saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution. To the mixture was added ethyl acetate, and the separated organic layer was washed with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (50g, hexane : ethyl acetate = 9 : 1 → 4 : 1 → 2 : 1) to give methyl 7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1007mg, 86%) as yellow crystals.

mp 134 - 137°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.47 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 2.89 (2H, t, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.41 (2H, q, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.81 (3H, s),

4.14 (2H, q,  $J = 7.1$  Hz), 4.63 (1H, brs), 6.67 (1H, d,  $J = 8.2$  Hz), 6.94 - 7.03 (1H, m), 7.19 - 7.31 (3H, m), 7.44 (1H, d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 7.71 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 3385, 1696, 1624, 1503, 1478, 1435, 1312, 1292, 1235, 1211, 1173  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{20}\text{FNO}_3$ : C, 70.37; H, 5.91; N, 4.10.  
Found C, 70.35; H, 5.73; N, 4.03.

#### Reference Example 76

To anhydrous acetic acid (0.63ml) was added formic acid (0.31ml) at  $0^\circ\text{C}$ , and the mixture was stirred at  $60^\circ\text{C}$  for 2 hours, cooled and diluted with THF (10ml). In THF (10ml) was dissolved methyl 7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (510mg), and the solution was added dropwise to the previously prepared solution of formic anhydride in THF, at  $0^\circ\text{C}$ . The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give crystals, which were washed with ethyl acetate/hexane to give methyl 7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (490mg, 89%) as white crystals.

mp 126 - 127.5°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.49 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 2.95 (2H, td, J = 5.5, 1.1 Hz), 3.83 - 3.88 (2H, m), 3.84 (3H, s), 4.17 (2H, q, J = 7.1 Hz), 7.05 (1H, t, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.19 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.28 - 7.37 (2H, m), 7.54 (1H, dd, J = 8.2, 2.2 Hz), 7.66 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.75 (1H, s), 8.54 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 1707, 1674, 1501, 1269, 1236 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>21</sub>H<sub>20</sub>FNO<sub>4</sub>: C, 68.28; H, 5.46; N, 3.79.

10 Found C, 68.18; H, 5.52; N, 3.70.

#### Reference Example 77

In THF (10.0ml) was dissolved methyl 7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (345mg). To the solution was added pyridine (0.82ml), and to the mixture was added a solution of methanesulfonic anhydride (880mg) in THF (5.0ml), at room temperature. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 37.5 hours, diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water, 1N hydrochloric acid, water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give crystals, which were washed with ethyl acetate/hexane to give methyl 7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-1-methylsulfonyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (193mg ) as white crystals.

15  
20  
25

The mother liquor was concentrated, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (15g, hexane : ethyl acetate = 3 : 1) to give desired product. The obtained methyl 7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-1-methylsulfonyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate was collected and dissolved in a mixture of THF and ethanol (1 : 1, v/v, 10.0ml). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (3.6ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16.5 hours. The mixture was a little concentrated, and to the residue was added 1N hydrochloric acid to convert weakly acidic solution. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give crystals, which were washed with ethyl acetate/hexane to give 7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-1-methylsulfonyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (213mg, 52%) as white crystals.

mp 237 - 239°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 1.38 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 2.90 (2H, t, J = 5.4 Hz), 3.09 (3H, s), 3.70 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.16 (2H, q, J = 7.1 Hz), 7.23 (1H, d, J = 8.9 Hz), 7.50 - 7.56 (2H, m), 7.63 - 7.71 (2H, m), 7.76 (1H, s), 7.94 (1H, d, J = 1.6 Hz).

IR (KBr) 1686, 1669, 1622, 1499, 1350, 1271, 1150, 970, 801, 783  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{20}\text{FNO}_5\text{S}$  ( $0.3\text{H}_2\text{O}$  additive): C, 58.47; H, 5.05; N, 3.41. Found C, 58.50; H, 4.94; N, 3.44.

5           Reference Example 78

In a mixture of THF and ethanol (1 : 1, v/v, 20.0ml ) was dissolved methyl 7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (441mg). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (12.0ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The mixture was a little concentrated, and to the residue was added 1N hydrochloric acid to convert weakly acidic solution. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give crystals, which were washed with ethyl acetate/hexane to give 7-(4-ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (435mg) as white crystals. mp 220 - 222°C.

$^1\text{H}$ -NMR (200 MHz,  $\text{DMSO}-d_6$ )  $\delta$  1.37 (3H, t,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 2.74 (2H, t-like), 3.71 (2H, t-like), 4.16 (2H, q,  $J = 6.9$  Hz), 7.24 (1H, t,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.41 (1H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.53 - 7.58 (1H, m), 7.65 - 7.75 (3H, m), 7.99 (1H, d-like), 8.53

(1H, s).

IR (KBr) 1705, 1655, 1499, 1362, 1304, 1292, 1273, 1231, 1217, 1196, 1134, 816  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{18}\text{FNO}_4$  (0.2 $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  additive): C, 66.92; H, 5.17; N, 3.90. Found C, 66.80; H, 5.28; N, 3.81.

#### Reference Example 79

In a mixture of water : ethanol : toluene (1 : 1 : 10, v/v, 36.0ml) were dissolved 4-[(2-methylthio)ethoxy]phenyl borate (760mg) and methyl 7-bromo-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1141mg). To the solution was added potassium carbonate (990mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (138mg) and the mixture was heated to reflux under argon atmosphere for 10 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (50g, hexane : ethyl acetate = 9 : 1  $\rightarrow$  4 : 1) to give methyl 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-7-[4-(2-methylthio)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1370mg, 98%) as white crystals.

mp 142.5 - 143.5°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.50 (9H, s), 2.24 (3H, s), 2.89 - 2.95 (4H, m), 3.63 - 3.70 (2H, br), 3.84 (3H, s), 4.21 (2H, t, J = 6.8 Hz), 6.99 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.46 - 7.58 (5H, m), 7.74 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 1703, 1497, 1391, 1238, 1163 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>26</sub>H<sub>31</sub>NO<sub>5</sub>S: C, 66.50; H, 6.65; N, 2.98.

Found C, 66.27; H, 6.68; N, 3.04.

#### Reference Example 80

10 In ethyl acetate (80ml) was dissolved methyl 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-7-[4-(2-methylthio)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1320mg). To the solution was added 1N hydrochloric acid (15ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at 90°C for 1.5  
15 hours and neutralized with 1N sodium hydroxide and saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution. To the mixture was added ethyl acetate, and the separated organic layer was washed with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, water and saturated brine, and dried  
20 with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give crystals, which were washed with ethyl acetate/hexane to give methyl 7-[4-(2-methylthio)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (910mg) as yellow crystals.  
25 The mother liquor was concentrated under reduced pressure,



and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (20g, hexane : ethyl acetate = 4 : 1) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-methylthio)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (910mg) as yellow crystals.

5 Yield, 1020mg (98%).

mp 114.5 - 117°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.24 (3H, s), 2.89 (2H, t, J = 4.2 Hz), 2.91 (2H, t, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.41 (2H, t, J = 4.7 Hz), 3.81 (3H, s), 4.20 (2H, t, J = 6.9 Hz), 4.63 - 4.72 (1H, br), 6.68 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.96 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.32 (1H, dd, J = 8.2, 2.2 Hz), 7.46 (1H, d, J = 2.6 Hz), 7.47 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.73 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 3380, 1698, 1609, 1499, 1269, 1244, 1209, 1174 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

15 Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>21</sub>H<sub>23</sub>NO<sub>3</sub>S: C, 68.27; H, 6.27; N, 3.79. Found C, 68.16; H, 6.22; N, 3.75.

#### Reference Example 81

To anhydrous acetic acid (0.65ml) was added formic acid (0.32ml) at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred at 55°C for 2 hours, air-cooled and diluted with THF (10ml). In THF (15ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-methylthio)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (565mg), and the solution was added dropwise to the previously prepared solution of formic anhydride in THF, at 0°C. The mixture was stirred at room

temperature for 2 hours, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give crystals, which were washed with ethyl acetate/hexane to give methyl 1-formyl-7-[4-(2-methylthio)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (578mg, 95%) as white crystals. mp 160 - 162°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.24 (3H, s), 2.93 (2H, t, J = 6.7 Hz), 2.95 (2H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.83 - 3.88 (2H, m), 3.84 (3H, s), 4.22 (2H, t, J = 6.8 Hz), 6.97 - 7.04 (2H, m), 7.18 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.49 - 7.55 (2H, m), 7.56 (1H, dd, J = 8.2, 2.2 Hz), 7.68 (1H, d, J = 1.8 Hz), 7.76 (1H, s), 8.53 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 1705, 1673, 1607, 1497, 1435, 1358, 1236, 1192, 824 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>22</sub>H<sub>23</sub>NO<sub>4</sub>S: C, 66.48; H, 5.83; N, 3.52. Found C, 66.23; H, 5.93; N, 3.41.

#### Reference Example 82

In THF (10.0ml) were dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-methylthio)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (374mg) and pyridine (0.82ml). To the solution was added a solution of methanesulfonic

anhydride (882mg) in THF (5.0ml), at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 13 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate. and washed with water, 1N hydrochloric acid, water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (25g, hexane : ethyl acetate = 4 : 1 → 1 : 1) to give crystals, which were washed with ethyl acetate/hexane to give methyl 1-methylsulfonyl-7-[4-(2-methylthio)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (201mg, 44%) as white crystals. mp 157 - 159°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.24 (3H, s), 2.78 (3H, s), 2.92 (2H, t, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.05 (2H, td-like, J = 5.4 Hz (t)), 3.86 (3H, s), 3.87 (2H, t, J = 5.9 Hz), 4.22 (2H, t, J = 6.7 Hz), 7.00 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.49 - 7.57 (3H, m), 7.64 (1H, d, J = 2.0 Hz), 7.68 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.81 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 1709, 1493, 1343, 1248, 1155 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>22</sub>H<sub>25</sub>NO<sub>5</sub>S<sub>2</sub>: C, 59.04; H, 5.63; N, 3.13. Found C, 58.91; H, 5.65; N, 3.08.

#### Reference Example 83

In a mixture of THF and ethanol (1 : 1, v/v, 40.0ml) was dissolved methyl 1-formyl-7-[4-(2-

methythio)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (531mg). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (13.5ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The mixture was a little concentrated, and to the residue was added 1N hydrochloric acid to convert weakly acidic solution. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give crystals, which were washed with ethyl acetate/hexane to give 1-formyl-7-[4-(2-methylthio)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (470mg, 92%) as white crystals.

mp 199 - 201°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 2.18 (3H, s), 2.76 (2H, t-like), 2.87 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.72 (2H, t-like), 4.21 (2H, t, J = 6.2 Hz), 7.04 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.40 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.67 - 7.74 (4H, m), 7.91 (1H, s), 8.53 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 1688, 1671, 1501, 1422, 1364, 1292, 1256, 1194, 1182, 1019, 822 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>21</sub>H<sub>21</sub>NO<sub>4</sub>S: C, 65.78; H, 5.52; N, 3.65. Found C, 65.49; H, 5.62; N, 3.58.

#### Reference Example 84

In a mixture of THF and ethanol (1 : 1, v/v, 20.0ml)

was dissolved methyl 1-methylsulfonyl-7-[4-(2-methylthio)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (169mg). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (5.5ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The mixture was a little concentrated, and to the residue was added 1N hydrochloric acid to convert weakly acidic solution. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give crystals, which were washed with ethyl acetate/hexane to give 1-methylsulfonyl-7-[4-(2-methylthio)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (157mg, 96%) as white crystals.

mp 234 - 239°C (dec.).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 2.17 (3H, s), 2.87 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 2.90 (2H, t-like), 3.08 (3H, s), 3.70 (2H, t-like), 4.21 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 7.05 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.51 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.61 - 7.75 (4H, m), 7.86 (1H, d-like).

IR (KBr) 1669, 1495, 1437, 1343, 1271, 1250, 1240, 1144, 824, 517 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>21</sub>H<sub>23</sub>NO<sub>3</sub>S<sub>2</sub>: C, 58.18; H, 5.35; N, 3.23.

Found C, 58.39; H, 5.39; N, 3.17.

Reference Example 85

In a mixture of water : ethanol : toluene (1 : 1 : 10, v/v, 42.0ml) were dissolved 4-(2-propoxy)ethoxyphenyl borate (920mg) and methyl 7-bromo-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1308mg). To the solution was added potassium carbonate (1135mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (119mg), and the mixture was heated to reflux under argon atmosphere for 14.5 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (50g, hexane : ethyl acetate = 9 : 1 → 3 : 1) to give methyl 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-7-[4-(2-propoxy)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1536mg, 93%) as colorless oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.95 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.49 (9H, s), 1.66 (2H, sextet, J = 7.1 Hz), 2.91 (2H, t, J = 4.7 Hz), 3.52 (2H, t, J = 6.7 Hz), 3.55 - 3.82 (2H, br), 3.82 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 3.83 (3H, s), 4.18 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 7.01 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.45 - 7.58 (5H, m), 7.74 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 1705, 1497, 1391, 1287, 1236, 1163, 1086 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

In ethyl acetate (80ml) was dissolved methyl 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-7-[4-(2-propoxy)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1536mg). To the solution was added 1N hydrochloric acid (20ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at 90°C for 1 hour and neutralized with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, and to the mixture was added ethyl acetate. The separated organic layer was washed with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give crystals, which were washed with ethyl acetate/hexane to give methyl 7-[4-(2-propoxy)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (523mg) as yellow crystals. The mother liquor was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (65g, hexane : ethyl acetate = 3 : 1) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-propoxy)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (606mg) as yellow crystals. Yield, 1129mg (93%).

mp 86 - 88°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.65 (2H, sextet, J = 7.2 Hz), 2.89 (2H, t, J = 4.5 Hz), 3.40 (2H, brs), 3.51 (2H, t, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.81 (3H, s and 2H, t, J =

4.9 Hz), 4.16 (2H, t,  $J = 5.0$  Hz), 4.60 (1H, brs), 6.67 (1H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 6.95 - 7.01 (2H, m), 7.32 (1H, dd,  $J = 8.2$ , 2.2 Hz), 7.42 - 7.48 (2H, m), 7.46 (1H, d,  $J = 2.0$  Hz), 7.73 (1H, s).

5 IR (KBr) 3380, 1698, 1611, 1501, 1269, 1246, 1209, 1177, 820  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{23}\text{H}_{27}\text{NO}_4$ : C, 72.42; H, 7.13; N, 3.67. Found C, 72.28; H, 7.09; N, 3.73.

Reference Example 87

10 To anhydrous acetic acid (0.51ml) was added formic acid, (0.25ml) at  $0^\circ\text{C}$ , and the mixture was stirred at  $55^\circ\text{C}$  for 2 hours, air-cooled and diluted with THF (10ml). In THF (15ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-propoxy)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (462mg), and the solution was added dropwise  
15 to the previously prepared solution of formic anhydride in THF, at  $0^\circ\text{C}$ . The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was diluted with  
20 ethyl acetate, washed with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous, magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give crystals, which were washed with ethyl acetate/hexane to give methyl 1-formyl-7-[4-(2-propoxy)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-  
25



benzazepine-4-carboxylate (496mg) as white crystals.

mp 107 - 108°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.95 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.62 (2H, sextet, J = 7.2 Hz), 2.95 (2H, t, J = 4.7 Hz), 3.52 (2H, t, J = 6.7 Hz), 3.80 - 3.88 (4H, m), 3.84 (3H, s), 4.18 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 7.03 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.17 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.51 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.56 (1H, dd, J = 8.0, 2.2 Hz), 7.68 (1H, d, J = 1.8 Hz), 7.75 (1H, s), 8.53 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 1709, 1678, 1360, 1291, 1236, 1192, 824 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>24</sub>H<sub>27</sub>NO<sub>5</sub>: C, 70.40; H, 6.65; N, 3.42. Found C, 70.37; H, 6.64; N, 3.41.

#### Reference Example 88

In THF (20.0ml) were dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-propoxy)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (600mg) and pyridine (1.53ml). To the solution was added a solution of methanesulfonic anhydride (1.64g) in THF (10.0ml), at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 14.5 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water, 1N hydrochloric acid, water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (35g, hexane : ethyl acetate = 4 : 1 → 2:1) to give crystals, which were washed with ethyl

acetate/hexane to give methyl 1-methylsulfonyl-7-[4-(2-propoxy)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (231mg) as white crystals. The mother liquor was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (350g, hexane : ethyl acetate = 3 : 1 → 2 : 1) to give methyl 1-methylsulfonyl-7-[4-(2-propoxy)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (170mg) as white crystals.

Yield, 402mg (56%).

mp 119 - 121°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.95 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.65 (2H, sextet, J = 7.3 Hz), 2.78 (3H, s), 3.05 (2H, t, J = 5.5 Hz), 3.52 (2H, t, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.80 - 3.89 (4H, m), 3.85 (3H, s), 4.18 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 7.02 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.51 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.54 (1H, dd, J = 8.4, 2.2 Hz), 7.63 (1H, d, J = 1.8 Hz), 7.67 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.80 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 1709, 1493, 1345, 1289, 1248, 1188, 1155, 1132, 1103 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>24</sub>H<sub>29</sub>NO<sub>6</sub>S (0.4H<sub>2</sub>O additive): C, 61.76; H, 6.44; N, 3.00. Found C, 61.61; H, 6.22; N, 2.96.

#### Reference Example 89

In a mixture of THF and ethanol (1 : 1, v/v, 30.0ml) was dissolved methyl 1-formyl-7-[4-(2-propoxy)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-

carboxylate (445mg). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (11.0ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 13 hours. The mixture was a little concentrated, and to the residue was added 1N hydrochloric acid to convert weakly acidic solution. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give crystals, which were washed with ethyl acetate/hexane to give 1-formyl-7-[4-(2-propoxy)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (430mg) as white crystals.

mp 165 - 166°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 0.88 (3H, t, J = 7.5 Hz), 1.54 (2H, sextet, J = 7.1 Hz), 2.75 (2H, t-like), 3.43 (2H, t, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.72 (4H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 4.15 (2H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 7.04 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.40 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.69 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.67 - 7.74 (2H, m), 7.92 (1H, d, J = 1.8 Hz), 8.53 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 1682, 1499, 1360, 1291, 1258, 1246, 1192, 1130, 820 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>23</sub>H<sub>25</sub>NO<sub>5</sub>: C, 69.86; H, 6.37; N, 3.54. Found C, 69.69; H, 6.38; N, 4.59.

#### Reference Example 90

In a mixture of THF and ethanol (1 : 1, v/v, 30.0ml)

was dissolved methyl 1-methylsulfonyl-7-[4-(2-propoxy)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (354mg). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (7.7ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 15.5 hours. The mixture was a little concentrated, and to the residue was added 1N hydrochloric acid to convert weakly acidic solution. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give crystals, which were washed with ethyl acetate/hexane to give 1-methylsulfonyl-7-[4-(2-propoxy)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (337mg, 98%) as white crystals.

mp 213 - 215°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 0.88 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.54 (2H, sextet, J = 7.0 Hz), 2.50 (3H, s), 3.33 (2H, t-like), 3.43 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.72 (4H, t-like), 4.15 (2H, t-like), 7.04 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.51 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.63 - 7.75 (4H, m), 7.88 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 1669, 1493, 1341, 1294, 1271, 1250, 1154, 1128, 785, 519 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>23</sub>H<sub>27</sub>NO<sub>6</sub>S (0.1H<sub>2</sub>O additive): C, 61.75; H, 6.13; N, 3.13. Found C, 61.50; H, 5.88; N, 3.01.

## Reference Example 91

In THF (1000ml) was dissolved 4-[[N-(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino]butyric acid (50.0g). To the solution were added propyl bromide (77.5g) and sodium iodide (94.4g), and to the mixture was gradually added at  
5 -5°C 60% sodium hydride (25.2g). Under nitrogen atmosphere, the mixture was stirred at 0°C for 15 minutes and then at 75°C for 4 days. The mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and to the residue  
10 was added water. The aqueous layer was adjusted to pH11 with sodium hydroxide (granule) and washed with ether (twice). The aqueous layer was adjusted to pH2 with concentrated hydrochloric acid and washed with ethyl acetate (thrice). The organic layer was washed with 1M  
15 sodium thiosulfate solution and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give 4-[[N-(benzyloxy)carbonyl]-N-propylamino]butyric acid (35.8g, 61%).  
20 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.88 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.50 - 1.57 (2H, m), 1.85 - 1.90 (2H, m), 2.34 - 2.41 (2H, m), 3.17 - 3.30 (4H, m), 5.13 (2H, s), 7.35 (5H, s).

## Reference Example 92

To 4-[[N-(benzyloxy)carbonyl]-N-propylamino]butyric  
25 acid (35.8g) was added t-butanol (350ml), and then was

added di-*t*-butyl dicarbonate (140g). To the mixture was added dimethylaminopyridine (4.69g), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography to give pale yellow oil of *t*-butyl 4-[[*N*-(benzyloxy)carbonyl]-*N*-propylamino]butyrate (23.8g, 55%).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.88 (3H, t, *J* = 7.3 Hz), 1.45 (9H, s), 1.52 - 1.59 (2H, m), 1.81 - 1.84 (2H, m), 2.23 (2H, t, *J* = 7.1 Hz), 3.17 - 3.27 (4H, m), 5.13 (2H, s), 7.35 (5H, s).

IR (KBr) 2969, 1728, 1703, 1476, 1456, 1422, 1368, 1242, 1155, 1136 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

#### Reference Example 93

In methanol (250ml) was dissolved *t*-butyl 4-[[*N*-(benzyloxy) carbonyl]-*N*-propylamino] butyrate (23.7g), and to the solution was added 10% palladium on carbon (2.37g). The mixture was stirred under hydrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 2 hours, and 10% palladium on carbon was removed. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give colorless oil of *t*-butyl 4-propylaminobutyrate [16.8g (containing methanol)].

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.92 (3H, t, *J* = 7.1 Hz), 1.45 (9H, s), 1.47 - 1.67 (4H, m), 1.70 - 1.85 (2H, m), 2.25 (2H, q,

$J = 7.9$  Hz), 2.60 (2H, dt,  $J = 11.6, 7.2$  Hz), 3.21 (1H, m).  
IR (KBr) 2967, 2936, 1728, 1480, 1456, 1424, 1368, 1246, 1155  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

#### Reference Example 94

5 To a solution of t-butyl 4-propylaminobutyrate (14.2g, 70.7mmol) in DMF (20ml) were added 5-bromo-2-fluorobenzaldehyde (14.4g, 70.9mmol) and potassium carbonate (14.7g, 106mmol) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at 80°C for 94 hours. The mixture  
10 was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 10 : 1)  
15 to give yellow oil of t-butyl 4-(4-bromo-2-formylphenyl)propylaminobutyrate (14.2g, 52%).  
 $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.84 (3H, t,  $J = 7.8$  Hz), 1.45 (9H, s), 1.42 - 1.63 (2H, m), 1.81 (2H, quint,  $J = 7.4$  Hz), 2.19 (2H, t,  $J = 7.5$  Hz), 3.09 (2H, t,  $J = 7.6$  Hz), 3.17 (2H, t,  $J = 7.5$  Hz), 7.06 (1H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.56 (1H, dd,  $J = 8.7, 2.5$  Hz), 7.90 (1H, d,  $J = 2.6$  Hz), 10.24 (1H, s).  
20 IR (KBr) 2971, 1730, 1694, 1480, 1368, 1244, 1157  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

#### Reference Example 95

In a mixture of t-butanol and toluene (1:10, v/v,  
25 440ml) was dissolved t-butyl 4-(4-bromo-2-

formylphenyl)propylbutyrate (14.1g). To the solution was added sodium t-butoxide (5.29g) at room temperature, and the mixture was heated to reflux for 1 hour (90°C), air-cooled, diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with water, 0.5N sodium hydroxide solution, water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 4 : 1) to give yellow oil of t-butyl 7-bromo-1-propyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (8.07g, 60%).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.95 (3H, t, J = 7.5 Hz), 1.53 (9H, s), 1.68 (2H, sextet, J = 7.6 Hz), 2.75 (2H, t, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.18 - 3.26 (4H, m), 6.67 (1H, d, J = 9.2 Hz), 7.22 (1H, dd, J = 8.8, 2.6 Hz), 7.39 (1H, d, J = 2.6 Hz), 7.46 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 2969, 1698, 1497, 1368, 1269, 1254, 1159 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

#### Reference Example 96

In ethyl acetate (80ml) was dissolved t-butyl 7-bromo-1-propyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (8.05g). To the solution was added a solution of 4N hydrochloric acid in ethyl acetate (80ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours. To the mixture was added water, and the mixture was adjusted to pH2 with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was



dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue of solid was washed with hexane-ethyl acetate to give yellow crystals of 7-bromo-1-propyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (2.61g, 39%).  
mp 172 - 173°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.95 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.70 (2H, sextet, J = 7.5 Hz), 2.81 (2H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.22 - 3.29 (4H, m), 6.70 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.25 (1H, dd, J = 8.8, 2.6 Hz), 7.43 (1H, d, J = 2.0 Hz), 7.69 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 2963, 1674, 1497, 1410, 1277, 1171 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>14</sub>H<sub>16</sub>BrNO<sub>2</sub>: C, 54.21; H, 5.20; N, 4.52.  
Found: C, 54.17; H, 5.05; N, 4.42.

#### Reference Example 97

In DMF (12ml) was dissolved 7-bromo-1-propyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (2430mg, 7.83mmol). To the solution was added thionyl chloride (1.4ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was suspended in THF (50ml). To 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline dihydrochloride (2757mg) was added THF (40ml), and to the mixture was added dropwise triethylamine (8.2ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes, and to the mixture was added

dropwise the previously prepared acid chloride suspension in THF, at 0°C. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 21 hours, and the mixture was concentrated. To the mixture was added ethyl acetate, and the mixture was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate → ethyl acetate:ethanol=10:1) and recrystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give yellow crystals of 7-bromo-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-propyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (3219mg, 80%).  
mp 134 - 136°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.97 (3H, t, J = 7.5 Hz), 1.60 - 1.80 (6H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.57 - 2.70 (1H, m), 2.89 (2H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.22 - 3.30 (4H, m), 3.37 (2H, td, J = 11.1, 2.8 Hz), 3.57 (2H, s), 4.01 - 4.07 (2H, m), 6.71 (1H, d, J = 9.2 Hz), 7.19 (1H, s), 7.24 (1H, dd, J = 9.0, 2.6 Hz), 7.30 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.41 (1H, d, J = 2.6 Hz), 7.50 (1H, s), 7.52 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz).

IR (KBr) 2957, 1645, 1597, 1514, 1497, 1406, 1314, 1246, 1173 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>27</sub>H<sub>34</sub>BrN<sub>3</sub>O<sub>2</sub>: C, 63.28; H, 6.69; N, 8.20.

Found C, 63.19; H, 6.54; N, 8.05.

## Working Example 1 (Production of Compound 1)

In DMF (10ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.18g). To the solution was added, under ice-cooling, thionyl chloride (0.09ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and the residue was dissolved in THF (20ml). The solution was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.12g) and triethylamine (0.33ml) in THF (10ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from ethyl acetate/hexane to give 7-[4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxaldehyde (Compound 1) (0.23g) as colorless crystals. mp 192 - 194°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.26 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.59 - 1.75 (4H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.59 - 2.70 (1H, m), 3.02 (2H, t, J = 5.1 Hz), 3.37 (2H, dt, J = 1.5, 11.4 Hz), 3.57 (2H, s), 3.63 (2H, q, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.83 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.91 (2H, t, J = 5.1 Hz), 4.01 - 4.07 (2H, m), 4.18 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 7.02 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.18 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.31 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.45 - 7.57 (6H, m), 7.65 (1H, br), 7.66 (1H, d, J = 1.8 Hz), 8.54 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) ν: 3297, 2946, 2847, 1669 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>35</sub>H<sub>41</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub>: C, 72.02; H, 7.08; N, 7.20.  
Found C, 71.90; H, 6.79; N, 7.05.

#### Working Example 2 (Production of Compound 2)

In DMF (5ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(3-ethoxypropoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.25g). To the solution was added, under ice-cooling, thionyl chloride (0.12ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and the residue was suspended in THF (15ml). The suspension was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.16g) and triethylamine (0.44ml) in THF (5ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was

added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from ethyl acetate/hexane to give 7-[4-(3-ethoxypropoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 2) (0.29g) as colorless crystals. mp 166 - 169°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.22 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.64 - 1.82 (4H, m), 2.02 - 2.15 (2H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.60 - 2.68 (1H, m), 3.03 (2H, t, J = 5.5 Hz), 3.37 (2H, dt, J = 2.6, 11.2 Hz), 3.46 - 3.66 (6H, m), 3.92 (2H, t, J = 5.5 Hz), 4.02 - 4.07 (2H, m), 4.13 (2H, t, J = 6.3 Hz), 7.01 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.19 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.32 (2H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.47 - 7.60 (6H, m), 7.68 (1H, d, J = 2.0 Hz), 8.55 (1H, s). IR (KBr) ν: 2946, 2849, 1669 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>36</sub>H<sub>43</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub>: C, 72.34; H, 7.25; N, 7.03.

Found C, 72.54; H, 7.11; N, 7.00.

#### Working Example 3 (Production of Compound 3)

In DMF (5ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.23g). To the solution was added, under ice-cooling, thionyl chloride (0.11ml),

and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and the residue was dissolved in THF (25ml). The solution was added dropwise a solution of 4-[N-

5 methyl-N-(tetrahydro-3H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.15g), and triethylamine (0.4ml) in THF (5ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was

10 added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from ethanol to give

15 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-N-[[4-[(N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino)methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 3) (0.23g) as colorless crystals.

mp 171 - 173°C.

20 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.31 - 1.49 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.65 (2H, m), 1.70 - 1.75 (4H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.60 - 2.71 (1H, m), 3.04 (2H, t, J = 5.5 Hz), 3.37 (2H, dt, J = 3.2, 11.3 Hz), 3.53 - 3.59 (4H, m), 3.82 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 3.92 (2H, t, J = 5.5 Hz), 4.01 - 4.07 (2H, m),

25 4.18 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 7.03 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.19

(1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.32 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.46 - 7.56 (6H, m), 7.68 (1H, d, J = 1.8 Hz), 8.55 (1H, s).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2940, 1669, 1518, 1497  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{37}\text{H}_{45}\text{N}_3\text{O}_5$ : C, 72.64; H, 7.41; N, 6.87.

5 Found C, 72.48; H, 7.11; N, 6.71.

Working Example 4 (Production of Compound 4)

In DMF (3.5ml) was dissolved 7-[4-[N-(2-ethoxyethyl)-N-methylamino]phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.17g). To the  
10 solution was added, under ice-cooling, thionyl chloride (0.08ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and the residue was dissolved in THF (25ml). The solution was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline  
15 (0.11g) and triethylamine (0.31ml) in THF (6.5ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 1 hour, poured into water and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic  
20 layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol) to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from ethanol to  
25 give 7-[4-[N-(2-ethoxyethyl)-N-methylamino]phenyl]-1-

formyl-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 4) (0.14g) as pale yellow crystals. mp 157 - 158°C.

5 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.21 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.59 - 1.82 (4H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.64 (1H, m), 2.96 - 3.06 (2H, m), 3.05 (3H, s), 3.30 - 3.43 (2H, m), 3.52 (2H, q, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.57 (2H, s), 3.56 - 3.63 (2H, m), 3.88 - 3.94 (2H, m), 3.99 - 4.07 (2H, m), 6.80 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.16 (1H, m),  
10 7.29 - 7.56 (7H, m), 7.66 (1H, s), 8.53 (1H, s).  
IR (KBr) v: 2946, 2849, 1669, 1609, 1505, 1360, 1316, 1204, 1113, 814 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

#### Working Example 5 (Production of Compound 5)

In DMF (5ml) was dissolved 7-[4-[N-(2-ethoxyethyl)-  
15 N-ethylamino]phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.2g). To the solution was added, under ice-cooling, thionyl chloride (0.09ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was  
20 evaporated, and the residue was dissolved in THF (25ml). The solution was added dropwise a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.20g) and triethylamine (0.35ml) in THF (5ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen  
25 atmosphere stirred at room temperature overnight. Under



reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from ethyl acetate/hexane to give 7-[4-[N-(2-ethoxyethyl)-N-ethylamino]phenyl]-1-formyl-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 5) (0.23g) as pale yellow crystals.

mp 162 - 164°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.17 - 1.30 (6H, m), 1.70 - 1.80 (4H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.55 - 2.75 (1H, m), 3.03 (2H, t, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.33 - 3.62 (12H, m), 3.92 (2H, t, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.01 - 4.14 (2H, m), 6.78 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.16 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.32 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.45 - 7.56 (6H, m), 7.66 (1H, d, J = 2.0 Hz), 8.54 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) v: 2849, 1661, 1609, 1552, 1501 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>37</sub>H<sub>46</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>4</sub>·0.2H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 72.33; H, 7.61; N, 9.12. Found C, 72.30; H, 7.70; N, 9.23.

#### Working Example 6 (Production of Compound 6)

In DMF (7ml) was dissolved 7-[4-[N-ethyl-N-(2-propoxyethyl)amino]phenyl]-1-formyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.25g). To the solution

was added, under ice-cooling, thionyl chloride (0.11ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and the residue was dissolved in THF (25ml).

5 The solution was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.16g) and triethylamine (0.41ml) in THF (5ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. Under reduced  
10 pressure, the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give crude  
15 crystals, which were recrystallized from ethyl acetate/hexane to give 7-[4-[N-ethyl-N-(2-propoxyethyl)amino]phenyl]-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 6)  
20 (0.27g) as pale yellow crystals.

mp 146 - 149°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.20 (3H, t, J = 6.9 Hz), 1.59 - 1.75 (6H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.55 - 2.75 (1H, m), 3.03 (2H, t, J = 5.4 Hz), 3.31 - 3.61 (12H, m),  
25 3.92 (2H, t, J = 5.4 Hz), 4.01 - 4.14 (2H, m), 6.78 (2H, d,

$J = 9.2$  Hz), 7.16 (1H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.32 (2H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.45 - 7.56 (6H, m), 7.66 (1H, d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 8.54 (1H, s).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2942, 1669  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

5     Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{38}\text{H}_{48}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4 \cdot 0.3\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 72.42; H, 7.77; N, 8.89.  
Found C, 72.57; H, 7.53; N, 8.59.

Working Example 7 (Production of Compound 7)

In THF (15ml) was suspended 7-[4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-methanesulfonyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.14g). To the suspension  
10     were added, under ice-cooling, thionyl chloride (0.04ml) and DMF (catalytic amount), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hours. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and the residue was  
15     dissolved in THF (15ml). The solution was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.08g) and triethylamine (0.14ml) in THF (15ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for  
20     1 hour. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was  
25     evaporated to give 7-[4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-

methanesulfonyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 7) (0.15g) as colorless amorphous.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.26 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.60 - 1.76 (4H, m), 2.22 (3H, s), 2.67 (1H, br), 2.89 (3H, s), 3.14 (2H, t, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.37 (2H, dt, J = 3.0, 11.0 Hz), 3.59 (2H, s), 3.63 (2H, q, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.83 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.92 (2H, t, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.01 - 4.07 (2H, m), 4.18 (2H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 7.02 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.33 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.49 - 7.67 (8H, m).

IR (KBr) ν: 2934, 2849, 1661, 1609, 1520, 1495 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>35</sub>H<sub>43</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>6</sub>S: C, 66.33; H, 6.84; N, 6.63. Found C, 66.39; H, 6.76; N, 6.57.

#### Working Example 8 (Production of Compound 8)

In THF (5ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(3-ethoxypropoxy)phenyl]-1-methanesulfonyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.20g). To the solution were added, under ice-cooling, thionyl chloride (0.06ml) and DMF (catalytic amount), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and the residua was dissolved in THF (15ml). The solution was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.11g) and triethylamine (0.19ml) in THF (5ml), under ice-cooling, and the mixture was

stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from ethyl acetate/hexane to give 7-[4-(3-ethoxypropoxy)phenyl]-1-methanesulfonyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 8) (0.22g) as colorless crystals.

mp 157 - 160°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 1.22 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.65 - 1.76 (4H, m), 2.06 - 2.15 (2H, m), 2.22 (3H, s), 2.55 - 2.78 (1H, m), 2.89 (3H, s), 3.14 (2H, t, J = 5.1 Hz), 3.38 (2H, dt, J = 2.6, 11.2 Hz), 3.46 - 3.65 (6H, m), 3.92 (2H, t, J = 5.1 Hz), 3.95 - 4.15 (4H, m), 7.00 (2H, d, J = 9.2 Hz), 7.34 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.49 - 7.67 (9H, m).

IR (KBr) v: 2926, 2851, 1671, 1595, 1524 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

#### Working Example 9 (Production of Compound 9)

In a mixture of water:ethanol:toluene (1:1: 10, v/v, 18.0ml) were dissolved 4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (315mg) and 7-bromo-1-methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-

dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (485mg). To the solution was added potassium carbonate (332mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added  
5 tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (46mg), and the mixture was heated to reflux under argon atmosphere for 10 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate.  
10 The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (30g, ethyl acetate : ethanol = 9 : 1) and recrystallized from ethanol to give 7-[4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-  
15 dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 9) (230mg, 40%) as yellow crystals.  
mp 122 - 125°C.  
<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.26 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.23 -  
20 1.76 (4H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.53 - 2.71 (1H, m), 2.94 (2H, t, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.07 (3H, s), 3.32 (2H, t, J = 4.5 Hz), 3.37 (2H, td, J = 11.4, 2.9 Hz), 3.56 (2H, s), 3.62 (2H, q, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 4.01 - 4.07 (2H, m), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.86 (1H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.97  
25 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.29 (2H, d, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.38 (1H, s),

7.43 (1H, dd,  $J = 8.6, 2.2$  Hz), 7.47 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 1  
H (d) was concealed under 7.49, 7.54 (2H, d,  $J = 8.6$  Hz),  
7.66 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 2946, 2847, 1653, 1607, 1501, 1312, 1244, 1186,  
5 1119, 814  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{35}\text{H}_{43}\text{N}_3\text{O}_4$ : C, 73.78; H, 7.61; N, 7.38.  
Found C, 73.93; H, 7.39; N, 7.44.

Working Example 10 (Production of Compound 10)

In DMF (5.0ml) was dissolved 1-methylsulfonyl-7-[4-  
10 (2-methylthio)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-  
4-carboxylic acid (207mg). To the solution was added  
thionyl chloride (0.09ml), and the mixture was stirred at  
room temperature for 30 minutes. Under reduced pressure,  
the solvent was evaporated, and to the residue was added  
15 THF (10.0ml). On the other hand, to 4-[[N-methyl-N-  
(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline  
dihydrochloride (168mg) was added THF (5.0ml), and then  
was added triethylamine (0.50ml). To the obtained  
mixture was added dropwise at  $0^\circ\text{C}$  the previously prepared  
20 acid chloride suspension, and the mixture was stirred at  
room temperature for 4 hours. To the mixture was added  
ethyl acetate, and the mixture was washed with water and  
saturated brine. The organic layer was dried with  
anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated  
25 under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with

silica gel column chromatography (15g, ethyl acetate → ethyl acetate : ethanol : triethylamine = 100 : 10 : 1) and recrystallized from ethanol to give 1-methylsulfonyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-[4-(2-methylthio)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 10) (176mg, 58%) as white crystals.

mp 174 - 177°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.64 - 1.77 (4H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.24 (3H, s), 2.60 - 2.72 (1H, m), 2.89 (3H, s), 2.92 (2H, t, J = 6.9 Hz), 3.14 (2H, t, J = 5.3 Hz), 3.38 (2H, td, J = 11.4, 2.9 Hz), 3.58 (2H, s), 3.92 (2H, t, J = 5.3 Hz), 4.02 - 4.07 (2H, m), 4.22 (2H, t, J = 6.8 Hz), 7.00 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.33 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.50 - 7.67 (9H, m).

IR (KBr) 1655, 1607, 1517, 1493, 1341, 1314, 1248, 1154cm<sup>-1</sup>.  
Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>34</sub>H<sub>41</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub>S<sub>2</sub>: C, 64.22; H, 6.50; N, 6.61.  
Found C, 64.03; H, 6.51; N, 6.55.

#### Working Example 11 (Production of Compound 11)

In DMF (10.0ml) was dissolved 1-formyl-7-[4-(2-methylthio)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (484mg). To the solution was added thionyl chloride (0.23ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and to the residue was added THF (10.0ml). On the other hand, to 4-[[N-methyl-N-



(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline dihydrochloride (444mg) was added THF (10.0ml), and then was added triethylamine (1.32ml). To the obtained mixture was added dropwise at 0°C the previously prepared acid chloride suspension, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. To the mixture was added ethyl acetate and the mixture was washed with water and saturated brine. The organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (30g, ethyl acetate → ethyl acetate : ethanol : triethylamine = 100 : 10 : 1) and recrystallized from ethanol to give 1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-[4-(2-methylthio)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 11) (555mg, 75%) as white crystals.

mp 180 - 183°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.64 - 1.77 (4H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.24 (3H, s), 2.59 - 2.67 (1H, m), 2.92 (2H, t, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.04 (2H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.37 (2H, td, J = 11.2, 2.9 Hz), 3.57 (2H, s), 3.92 (2H, t, J = 5.3 Hz), 4.01 - 4.07 (2H, m), 4.22 (2H, t, J = 6.8 Hz), 7.01 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.20 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.32 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.47 - 7.58 (7H, m), 7.68 (1H, d, J = 1.8 Hz), 8.55 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 1667, 1607, 1514, 1497, 1360, 1314, 1246, 824  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{34}\text{H}_{39}\text{N}_3\text{O}_4\text{S}$  ( $0.2\text{H}_2\text{O}$  additive): C, 69.29; H, 6.74; N, 7.13. Found C, 69.09; H, 6.58; N, 7.01.

Working Example 12 (Production of Compound 12)

5        In a mixture of water : ethanol : toluene (1 : 1 :  
10, v/v, 18.0ml) were dissolved 4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl  
borate (242mg) and 7-bromo-1-methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-  
(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-  
dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (436mg). To the  
10 solution was added potassium carbonate (299mg), and the  
mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room  
temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added  
tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (42mg), and the  
mixture was heated to reflux under argon atmosphere for  
15 10 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate,  
and washed with water and saturated brine, and the  
organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate.  
The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and  
the residue was purified with silica gel column  
20 chromatography (30g, ethyl acetate : ethanol :  
triethylamine = 180 : 20 : 1) and recrystallized from  
ethanol/hexane to give 1-methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-  
(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-[4-(2-  
propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro- 1H-1-benzazepine-4-  
25 carboxamide (Compound 12) (186mg, 35%) as yellow crystals.

mp 136 - 138°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.65 (2H, sextet, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.69 - 1.76 (4H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.57 - 2.72 (1H, m), 2.96 (2H, t, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.09 (3H, s), 3.32 - 3.43 (4H, m), 3.51 (2H, t, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.56 (2H, s), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.01 - 4.06 (2H, m), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 6.88 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.30 (2H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.40 - 7.56 (8H, m).

IR (KBr) 1651, 1607, 1514, 1501, 1312, 1244, 1186 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>36</sub>H<sub>45</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub> (0.3H<sub>2</sub>O additive): C, 73.39; H, 7.80; N, 7.13. Found C, 73.12; H, 7.67; N, 7.08.

#### Working Example 13 (Production of Compound 13)

In a mixture of water : ethanol : toluene (1 : 1 : 10, v/v, 18.0ml) were dissolved 4-(3-ethoxypropoxy)phenyl borate (250mg) and 7-bromo-1-methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (450mg). To the solution was added potassium carbonate (308mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (43mg), and the mixture was refluxed under argon atmosphere for 10 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was

evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (25g, ethyl acetate : ethanol : triethylamine = 100 : 10 : 1) and recrystallized from ethanol/hexane to give 7-[4-(3-ethoxypropoxy)phenyl]-1-methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 13) (359mg, 66%) as yellow crystals.

mp 98 - 100°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.21 (3H, t, J = 6.9 Hz), 1.63 - 1.79 (4H, m), 2.07 (2H, quint, J = 6.3 Hz), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.54 - 2.75 (1H, m), 2.96 (2H, t, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.09 (3H, s), 3.31 - 3.43 (4H, m), 3.51 (2H, q, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.56 (2H, s), 3.62 (2H, t, J = 6.3 Hz), 4.00 - 4.07 (2H, m), 4.10 (2H, t, J = 6.2 Hz), 6.88 (1H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.97 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.30 (2H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.40 - 7.56 (3H, m), 7.40 (1H, s), 7.48 (2H, d, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.54 (2H, d, J = 8.6 Hz). IR (KBr) 1647, 1607, 1514, 1501, 1312, 1244, 1182, 1115cm<sup>-1</sup>. Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>36</sub>H<sub>45</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub> (0.2H<sub>2</sub>O additive): C, 73.62; H, 7.79; N, 7.15. Found C, 73.53; H, 7.63; N, 7.11.

#### Working Example 14 (Production of Compound 14)

In DMF (9.5ml) was dissolved 1-formyl-7-[4-(2-propoxy)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (379mg). To the solution was added thionyl chloride (0.18ml), and the mixture was stirred at

room temperature for 30 minutes. Under reduced pressure, the solvent was evaporated, and to the residue was added THF (15.0ml). On the other hand, to 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline dihydrochloride (337mg) was added THF (10.0ml), and then was added triethylamine (1.00ml). To the obtained mixture was added dropwise at 0°C the previously prepared acid chloride suspension, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 15 hours. To the mixture was added ethyl acetate, and the mixture was washed with water and saturated brine. The organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (35g, ethyl acetate → ethyl acetate : ethanol = 10 : 1 → ethyl acetate : ethanol : triethylamine = 100 : 10 : 1) and recrystallized from ethanol to give 1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-[4-(2-propoxy)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxarnide (Compound 14) (459mg, 80%) as white crystals.

mp 187 - 189°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.95 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.57 - 1.74 (6H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.56 - 2.72 (1H, m), 3.03 (2H, t, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.37 (2H, td, J = 11.0, 2.8 Hz), 3.52 (2H,

t, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.57 (2H, s), 3.82 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz),  
3.92 (2H, t, J = 5.3 Hz), 4.01 - 4.07 (2H, m), 4.18 (2H, t,  
J = 4.9 Hz), 7.03 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.19 (1H, d, J = 8.4  
Hz), 7.31 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.46 - 7.58 (7H, m), 7.67  
5 (1H, s), 8.55 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 1667, 1609, 1518, 1497, 1360, 1314, 1248, 824  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{36}\text{H}_{43}\text{N}_3\text{O}_5$ : C, 72.34; H, 7.25; N, 7.03.

Found C, 72.39; H, 7.32; N, 7.08.

Working Example 15 (Production of Compound 15)

10 In DMF (6.5ml) was dissolved 1-methylsulfonyl-7-[4-(2-propoxy)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (296mg). To the solution was added thionyl chloride (0.12ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. Under reduced pressure,  
15 the solvent was evaporated, and to the residue was added THF (15.0ml). On the other hand, to 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline dihydrochloride (234mg) was added THF (10.0ml), and then was added triethylamine (0.69ml). To the obtained  
20 mixture was added dropwise at 0°C the previously prepared acid chloride suspension, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hour. To the mixture was added ethyl acetate, and the mixture was washed with water and saturated brine. The organic layer was dried with  
25 anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated

under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (25g, ethyl acetate → ethyl acetate : ethanol : triethylamine = 100 : 10 : 1) and recrystallized from ethanol to give 1-methylsulfonyl-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-[4-(2-propoxy)ethoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 15) (248mg, 58%) as white crystals.

mp 161 - 162°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.95 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.65 (2H, sextet, J = 7.1 Hz), 1.69 - 1.77 (4H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.54 - 2.70 (1H, m), 2.88 (3H, s), 3.13 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.37 (2H, td, J = 11.4, 5.6 Hz), 3.52 (2H, t, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.57 (2H, s), 3.82 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.91 (2H, t, J = 5.7 Hz), 4.01 - 4.07 (2H, m), 4.18 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 7.00 - 7.04 (2H, m), 7.32 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.50 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.48 - 7.66 (7H, m).

IR (KBr) 1663, 1609, 1516, 1493, 1343, 1310, 1248, 1154, 667 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>36</sub>H<sub>45</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>6</sub>S: C, 66.74; H, 7.00; N, 6.49. Found C, 66.56; H, 7.03; N, 6.36.

#### Working Example 16 (Production of Compound 16)

In a mixture of water : ethanol : toluene (1 : 1 : 10, v/v, 18.0ml) were dissolved 4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (339mg) and 7-bromo-1-ethyl-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-

(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (537mg). To the solution was added potassium carbonate (357mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (50mg), and the mixture was heated to reflux under argon atmosphere for 14 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (35g, ethyl acetate → ethyl acetate : ethanol = 10 : 1 → ethyl acetate : ethanol : triethylamine = 100 : 10 : 0.5) and recrystallized from ethyl acetate/IPE to give 7-[4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-ethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 16) (332mg, 53%) as yellow crystals. mp 114.5 - 116.5°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.26 (3H, t, J = 6.9 Hz), 1.32 (3H, t, J = 7.1 Hz), 1.63 - 1.76 (4H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.59 - 2.69 (1H, m), 2.91 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.31 - 3.42 (4H, m), 3.44 (2H, q, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.57 (2H, s), 3.64 (2H, t, J = 6.9 Hz), 3.82 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.01 - 4.06 (2H, m),



4.16 (2H, t,  $J = 5.0$  Hz), 6.91 (1H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 6.98 (2H, d,  $J = 9.2$  Hz), 7.30 (2H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.40 (1H, s), 7.47 (2H, d,  $J = 9.2$  Hz), 7.53 (2H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.40 - 7.56 (3H, m).

5 IR (KBr) 1651, 1607, 1514, 1501, 1312, 1244, 1175, 1140, 1119  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{36}\text{H}_{45}\text{N}_3\text{O}_4$  (0.2 $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  additive): C, 73.62; H, 7.79; N, 7.15. Found C, 73.45; H, 7.85; N, 7.05.

#### Working Example 17 (Production of Compound 17)

10 In a mixture of water : ethanol : toluene (1 : 1: 10, v/v, 18.0ml) were dissolved 4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (272mg) and 7-bromo-1-ethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (404mg). To the  
15 solution was added potassium carbonate (269mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (37mg), and the mixture was heated to reflux under argon atmosphere for  
20 14 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column  
25 chromatography (30g, ethyl acetate  $\rightarrow$  ethyl acetate :

ethanol = 10:1 → ethyl acetate : ethanol : triethylamine  
 = 100 : 10 : 0.5) and recrystallized from ethyl  
 acetate/IPE to give 1-ethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-  
 (tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-[4-(2-  
 5 propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-  
 carboxamide (Compound 17) (221mg, 46%) as yellow crystals.  
 mp 106 - 108°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.5 Hz), 1.32 (3H,  
 t, J = 6.9 Hz), 1.65 (2H, sextet, J = 7.1 Hz), 1.70 - 1.76  
 10 (4H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.56 - 2.69 (1H, m), 2.92 (2H, t, J  
 = 4.0 Hz), 3.31 - 3.46 (6H, m), 3.51 (2H, t, J = 6.8 Hz),  
 3.56 (2H, s), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 4.01 - 4.06 (2H, m),  
 4.16 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.92 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.98  
 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.30 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.40 (1H, s),  
 15 7.47 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.54 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.40 -  
 7.56 (3H, m).

IR (KBr) 2928, 1651, 1645, 1607, 1514, 1501, 1314, 1244,  
 1175 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>37</sub>H<sub>47</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub> (0.3H<sub>2</sub>O additive): C, 73.67; H,  
 20 7.95; N, 6.97. Found C, 73.52; H, 7.76; N, 6.95.

#### Working Example 18 (Production of Compound 18)

In a mixture of water : ethanol : toluene (1 : 1 :  
 10, v/v, 18.0ml) were dissolved 4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl  
 borate (324mg) and 7-bromo-1-methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-  
 25 (tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-

dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide ( 440mg). To the solution was added potassium carbonate (301mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added

5 tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (42mg), and the mixture was refluxed under argon atmosphere for 10 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was

10 evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (30g, ethyl acetate → ethyl acetate : ethanol = 10 : 1 → ethyl acetate : ethanol : triethylamine = 100 : 10 : 0.5) and recrystallized from ethyl acetate/IPE to give 7-[4-(2-

15 butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-methyl-N-[4-[ [N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 18) (287mg, 53%) as yellow crystals.

mp 107 - 110°C.

20 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.39 (2H, sextet, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.55 - 1.79 (6H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.57 - 2.75 (1H, m), 2.96 (2H, t, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.09 (3H, s), 3.31 - 3.38 (2H, m), 3.37 (2H, td, J = 11.6, 2.7 Hz), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.57 (2H, s), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz),

25 4.00 - 4.08 (2H, m), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 6.88 (1H, d,

J = 8.6 Hz), 6.96 - 7.01 (2H, m), 7.30 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.40 - 7.56 (4H, m), 7.48 (2H, d, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.54 (2H, d, J = 8.6 Hz).

IR (KBr) 2955, 2936, 1651, 1607, 1514, 1312, 1244, 1186cm<sup>-1</sup>.

5 Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>37</sub>H<sub>47</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub> (0.1H<sub>2</sub>O additive): C, 74.12; H, 7.93; N, 7.01. Found C, 73.90; H, 7.82; N, 7.12.

Working Example 19 (Production of Compound 19)

In a mixture of water : ethanol : toluene (1 : 1 : 10, v/v, 18.0ml) were dissolved 4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (301mg) and 7-bromo-1-ethyl-N-[ 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (420mg). To the solution was added potassium carbonate (279mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (39mg), and the mixture was refluxed under argon atmosphere for 14 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (30g, ethyl acetate → ethyl acetate : ethanol = 10 : 1 → ethyl acetate : ethanol : triethylamine = 100 : 10 : 0.5) and recrystallized from ethyl acetate/IPE to give 7-[4-(2-

10018324.124201

butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-ethyl-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 19) (218mg, 42%) as yellow crystals.

5 mp 102 - 106°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.1 Hz), 1.32 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.39 (2H, sextet, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.54 - 1.76 (6H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.54 - 2.72 (1H, m), 2.92 (2H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.31 - 3.50 (6H, m), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.57 (2H, s), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 4.01 - 4.07 (2H, m), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.92 (1H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.30 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.40 (1H, s), 7.44 - 7.56 (3H, m), 7.47 (2H, d, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.54 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz).

15 IR (KBr) 2953, 2932, 1651, 1605, 1514, 1501, 1406, 1314, 1244, 1175 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>38</sub>H<sub>49</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub> (0.2H<sub>2</sub>O additive): C, 74.16; H, 8.09; N, 6.83. Found C, 73.92; H, 8.19; N, 6.59.

#### Working Example 20 (Production of Compound 20)

20 In a mixture of water : ethanol : toluene (1 : 1 : 10, v/v. 18.0ml) were dissolved 4-[(2-ethoxy)ethoxy]-3-fluorophenyl borate (355mg) and 7-bromo-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (517mg). To the solution was added potassium

25

carbonate (344mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (48mg), and the mixture was heated to reflux under argon atmosphere for 10 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (30g, ethyl acetate → ethyl acetate : ethanol = 10 : 1 → ethyl acetate : ethanol : triethylamine = 100 : 10 : 1) and recrystallized from ethanol to give 7-[4-(2-ethoxy)ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl]-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 20) (476mg, 76%) as white crystals. mp 188 - 191°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.26 (3H, t, J = 7.1 Hz), 1.64 - 1.77 (4H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.57 - 2.72 (1H, m), 3.04 (2H, t, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.37 (2H, td, J = 11.3, 2.9 Hz), 3.57 (2H, s), 3.63 (2H, q, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.85 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 3.92 (2H, t, J = 5.6 Hz), 4.01 - 4.07 (2H, m), 4.25 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 7.09 (1H, t, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.20 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.29 - 7.36 (2H, m), 7.32 (2H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.45 (1H, s), 7.53 (2 H + 1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.56 (1H, s), 7.65

(1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 8.55 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 1669, 1501, 1358, 1314, 1269, 1238, 1198, 1138, 1125  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{35}\text{H}_{40}\text{FN}_3\text{O}_4$ : C, 69.86; H, 6.70; N, 6.98.

5 Found C, 69.66; H, 6.40; N, 6.71.

Working Example 21 (Production of Compound 21)

In a mixture of water : ethanol : toluene (1 : 1 : 10, v/v, 18.0ml) were dissolved 3-chloro-4-(2-ethoxy)ethoxyphenyl borate (280mg) and 7-bromo-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (380mg). To the solution was added potassium carbonate (253mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To  
10 the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (35mg), and the mixture was heated to reflux under argon atmosphere for 10 hours. The mixture was diluted with  
15 ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced  
20 pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (25g, ethyl acetate  $\rightarrow$  ethyl acetate : ethanol = 10 : 1  $\rightarrow$  ethyl acetate : ethanol : triethylamine = 100 : 10 : 0.5) and recrystallized from  
25 ethanol to give 7-[3-chloro-4-(2-ethoxy)ethoxyphenyl]-1-

formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 21) (342mg, 73%) as white crystals. mp 198 - 200°C.

5 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.26 (3H, t, J = 6.9 Hz), 1.64 - 1.76 (4H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.57 - 2.69 (1H, m), 3.04 (2H, t, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.37 (2H, td, J = 11.1, 2.9 Hz), 3.57 (2H, s), 3.67 (2H, q, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.88 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.91 (2H, t, J = 6.0 Hz), 4.01 - 4.06 (2H, m), 4.24 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 7.05 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.20 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.32 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.43 (1H, dd, J = 8.6, 2.4 Hz), 7.44 (1H, s), 7.54 (2 H + 1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.56 (1H, s), 7.61 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.65 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 8.55 (1H, s).

15 IR (KBr) 1669, 1599, 1516, 1493, 1360, 1314, 1292, 1260, 1140, 1065 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>35</sub>H<sub>40</sub>ClN<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub>: C, 68.00; H, 6.52; N, 6.80. Found C, 67.71; H, 6.43; N, 6.71.

#### Working Example 22 (Production of Compound 22)

20 In a mixture of water : ethanol : toluene (1 : 1 : 10, v/v, 18.0ml) were dissolved 4-(3-propoxy)propoxyphenyl borate (270mg) and 7-bromo-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-  
25 carboxamide (377mg). To the solution was added potassium



carbonate (251mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (35mg), and the mixture was heated to reflux under argon atmosphere for 10 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (25g, ethyl acetate → ethyl acetate : ethanol = 10 : 1 → ethyl acetate : ethanol : triethylamine = 100 : 10 : 0.5) and recrystallized from ethanol to give 1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-[4-(3-propoxy)propoxyphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 22) (304mg, 66%) as white crystals. mp 174 - 177°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.92 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.60 (2H, sextet, J = 7.1 Hz), 1.69 - 1.76 (4H, m), 2.08 (2H, quint, J = 6.2 Hz), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.59 - 2.69 (1H, m), 3.03 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 3.31 - 3.41 (2H, m), 3.41 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.57 (2H, s), 3.61 (2H, t, J = 6.0 Hz), 3.92 (2H, t, J = 5.3 Hz), 4.01 - 4.09 (2H, m), 4.12 (2H, t, J = 6.4 Hz), 7.00 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.19 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.31 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.46 (1H, s), 7.51 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz),

7.54 (2H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.49 - 7.58 (2H, m), 7.67 (1H, d,  $J = 1.8$  Hz), 8.54 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 2940, 1669, 1607, 1516, 1497, 1360, 1314, 1248, 1119  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

5 Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{37}\text{H}_{45}\text{N}_3\text{O}_5$ : C, 72.64; H, 7.41; N, 6.87. Found C, 72.46; H, 7.62; N, 6.95.

Working Example 23 (Production of Compound 23)

In a mixture of water : ethanol : toluene (1 : 1 : 10, v/v, 18.0ml) were dissolved 3-ethoxy-4-(2-propoxy)ethoxyphenyl borate (324mg) and 7-bromo-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (401mg). To the solution was added potassium carbonate (267mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (37mg), and the mixture was heated to reflux under argon atmosphere for 10 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (25g, ethyl acetate  $\rightarrow$  ethyl acetate : ethanol = 10 : 1  $\rightarrow$  ethyl acetate : ethanol : triethylamine = 100 : 10 : 0.5) and recrystallized from

ethyl acetate/IPE to give 7-[3-ethoxy-4-(2-propoxy)ethoxyphenyl]-1-formyl-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 23)

5 (317mg, 61%) as white crystals.

mp 117 - 119°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.48 (3H, t, J = 6.9 Hz), 1.64 (2H, sextet, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.64 - 1.76 (4H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.57 - 2.70 (1H, m), 3.03 (2H, t, J = 3.6 Hz), 3.37 (2H, td, J = 11.2, 2.7 Hz), 3.53 (2H, t, J = 6.7 Hz), 3.56 (2H, s), 3.84 (2H, t, J = 5.1 Hz), 3.92 (2H, t, J = 5.3 Hz), 4.01 - 4.07 (2H, m), 4.16 (2H, q, J = 7.1 Hz), 4.22 (2H, t, J = 5.2 Hz), 7.03 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.10 (1H, s), 7.11 (1H, dd, J = 8.4, 2.2 Hz), 7.18 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.32 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.50 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.54 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.57 (1H, d, J = 2.6 Hz), 7.60 (1H, s), 7.57 (1H, d, J = 1.8 Hz), 8.54 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 2942, 1671, 1597, 1514, 1499, 1408, 1360, 1316, 1254, 1202, 1140 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

20 Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>38</sub>H<sub>47</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>6</sub> (0.1H<sub>2</sub>O additive): C, 70.92; H, 7.39; N, 6.53. Found C, 70.71; H, 7.36; N, 6.47.

#### Working Example 24 (Production of Compound 24)

In a mixture of water : ethanol : toluene (1 : 1 : 10, v/v, 18.0ml) were dissolved (2,3-dihydro-1,4-benzodioxin-6-yl) borate (221mg) and 7-bromo-1-methyl-N-

[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (397mg). To the solution was added potassium carbonate (272mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (38mg), and the mixture was heated to reflux under argon atmosphere for 10 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (35g, ethyl acetate : ethanol = 20 : 1) and recrystallized from ethanol to give 7-(2,3-dihydro-1,4-benzodioxin-6-yl)-1-methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 24) (215mg, 49%) as yellow crystals.

mp 164 - 165°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.63 - 1.76 (4H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.53 - 2.73 (1H, m), 2.95 (2H, t, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.07 (3H, s), 3.31 - 3.43 (4H, m), 3.56 (2H, s), 4.01 - 4.07 (2H, m), 4.29 (4H, s), 6.86 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.90 (1H, d, J = 9.6 Hz), 7.05 (1H, dd, J = 10.4, 2.2 Hz), 7.07 (1H, s), 7.29 (2H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.37 - 7.55 (3H, m), 7.54 (2H, d,

$J = 8.6 \text{ Hz}$ ), 7.62 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 2948, 1644, 1597, 1514, 1497, 1406, 1312, 1283, 1246, 1188, 1071, 810, 733  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{33}\text{H}_{37}\text{N}_3\text{O}_4$  ( $0.2\text{H}_2\text{O}$  additive): C, 72.96; H,

5 6.94; N, 7.73. Found C, 72.86; H, 6.91; N, 7.70.

#### Working Example 25 (Production of Compound 25)

In a mixture of water : ethanol : toluene (1 : 1 : 10. v/v, 18.0ml) were dissolved 4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (246mg) and 7-bromo-1-propyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (400mg). To the solution was added potassium carbonate (259mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added 15 tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (36mg), and the mixture was heated to reflux under argon atmosphere for 10 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. 20 The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (30g, ethyl acetate  $\rightarrow$  ethyl acetate : ethanol = 10 : 1) and recrystallized from ethyl acetate-IPE to give 7-[4-(2-ethoxyethoxy)phenyl]-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-

25

propyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide

(Compound 25) (216mg, 46%) as yellow crystals.

mp 144 - 147°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.99 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.26 (3H, t, J = 6.9 Hz), 1.63 - 1.84 (6H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.56 - 2.69 (1H, m), 2.91 (2H, t, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.28 - 3.43 (6H, m), 3.56 (2H, s), 3.62 (2H, q, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 4.01 - 4.06 (2H, m), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 6.90 (1H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.29 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.37 - 7.55 (8H, m).

IR (KBr) 2957, 2940, 1644, 1605, 1499, 1406, 1312, 1240, 1177, 1140, 1121 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>37</sub>H<sub>47</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>: C, 74.34; H, 7.92; N, 7.02.

Found C, 74.13; H, 7.76; N, 7.17.

#### Working Example 26 (Production of Compound 26)

In a mixture of water : ethanol : toluene (1 : 1 : 10, v/v, 18.0ml) were dissolved 4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (260mg) and 7-bromo-1-propyl-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (396mg). To the solution was added potassium carbonate (256mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (36mg), and the mixture was heated to reflux under argon atmosphere for

10 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate,  
and washed with water and saturated brine, and the  
organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate.  
The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and  
5 the residue was purified with silica gel column  
chromatography (25g, ethyl acetate → ethyl acetate :  
ethanol = 10 : 1) and recrystallized from ethyl acetate-  
IPE to give N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-  
yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-  
10 propyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide  
(Compound 26) (252mg, 53%) as yellow crystals.

mp 128 - 130°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.5 Hz), 0.99 (3H,  
t, J = 7.6 Hz), 1.59 - 1.81 (8H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.56 -  
15 2.69 (1H, m), 2.92 (2H, t-like), 3.28 - 3.43 (6H, m), 3.51  
(2H, t, J = 6.7 Hz), 3.56 (2H, s), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz),  
4.01 - 4.06 (2H, m), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.90 (1H, d,  
J = 8.4 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.29 (2H, d, J = 8.8  
Hz), 7.38 - 7.55 (8H, m).

20 IR (KBr) 2957, 2940, 1644, 1605, 1499, 1406, 1312, 1240,  
1177, 1140, 1121 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>38</sub>H<sub>49</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>: C, 74.60; H, 8.07; N, 6.87.

Found C, 74.31; H, 8.21; N, 7.12.

#### Working Example 27 (Production of Compound 27)

25 In a mixture of water : ethanol : toluene (1 : 1 :

10, v/v, 24.0ml) were dissolved 4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (519mg) and 7-bromo-1-propyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (745mg). To the solution was added potassium carbonate (482mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenyl)phosphinepalladium (67mg), and the mixture was refluxed under argon atmosphere for 10 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine, and the organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (35g, ethyl acetate → ethyl acetate : ethanol = 10 : 1) and recrystallized from ethyl acetate-IPE to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-propyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 27) (453mg, 50%) as yellow crystals.

mp 122 - 124°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.1 Hz), 0.99 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.39 (2H, sextet, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.54 - 1.80 (8H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.53 - 2.71 (1H, m), 2.91 (2H, t, J = 4.0 Hz), 3.27 - 3.43 (6H, m), 3.52 - 3.58 (4H, m), 3.80



(2H, t,  $J = 5.0$  Hz), 4.01 - 4.06 (2H, m), 4.15 (2H, t,  $J = 4.7$  Hz), 6.89 (1H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 6.97 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.29 (2H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.37 - 7.59 (8H, m).

IR (KBr) 2957, 2940, 1644, 1605, 1499, 1406, 1312, 1240, 1177, 1140, 1121  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{39}\text{H}_{51}\text{N}_3\text{O}_4$ : C, 74.85; H, 8.21; N, 6.71. Found C, 74.64; H, 8.36; N, 6.93.

#### Working Examples 28 (Production of Compound 28)

In 1N hydrochloric acid (50ml) and THF (50ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (1.4g). The solution was refluxed for 4.5 hours, concentrated, neutralized with 1N sodium hydroxide solution and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 28) (1.0g) as yellow crystals.

mp 119 - 123°C.

$^1\text{H}$ -NMR ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 0.93 (3H, t,  $J = 7.3$  Hz), 1.34 - 1.75 (8H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.60 - 2.65 (1H, m), 2.96 (2H, t-like), 3.32 - 3.58 (8H, m), 3.80 (2H, t,  $J = 5.0$  Hz), 4.01

- 4.07 (2H, m), 4.16 (2H, t,  $J = 5.0$  Hz), 4.57 (1H, br), 6.70 (1H, d,  $J = 8.2$  Hz), 6.98 (2H, d,  $J = 9.0$  Hz), 7.26 - 7.32 (4H, m), 7.43 - 7.56 (5H, m).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 3328, 2946, 2851, 1651, 1609, 1514, 1499  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

5 Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{36}\text{H}_{45}\text{N}_3\text{O}_4 \cdot 0.25\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 73.50; H, 7.80; N, 7.14. Found C, 73.54; H, 7.79; N, 7.15.

Working Example 29 (Production of Compound 29)

In DMF (5ml) was dissolved 1-propionyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.2g). Under ice-cooling, to the  
10 solution was added thionyl chloride (0.09ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. In THF (15ml) was dissolved the residue, which was added  
15 dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.15g) and triethylamine (0.34ml) in THF (5ml), under ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight under nitrogen atmosphere. The solvent was evaporated under reduced  
20 solvent. Water was added to the mixture, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from  
25 ethyl acetate-hexane to give 1-propionyl-7-[4-(2-

propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 29) (0.1g) as pale yellow crystals.

5 mp 167 - 169°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.95 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.08 (3H, t, J = 7.5 Hz), 1.58 - 1.75 (6H, m), 2.12 - 2.21 (1H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.40 - 2.75 (2H, m), 2.75 - 3.00 (2H, m), 3.10 - 3.30 (1H, m), 3.37 (2H, dt, J = 2.8, 11.2 Hz), 3.52 (2H, t, J = 6.7 Hz), 3.58 (2H, s), 3.82 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.01 - 4.06 (2H, m), 4.19 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.81 - 4.88 (1H, m), 7.03 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.24 - 7.34 (3H, m), 7.50 - 7.56 (6H, m), 7.67 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) v: 2944, 1653 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

15 Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>38</sub>H<sub>47</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub>·0.5H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 71.90; H, 7.62; N, 6.62. Found C, 71.84; H, 7.48; N, 6.71.

#### Working Example 30 (Production of Compound 30)

In DMF (6ml) was dissolved 1-butyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.30g). Under ice-cooling, to the mixture was added thionyl chloride (0.15ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. In THF (20ml) was suspended the residue, and the suspension was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-

(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.17g) and triethylamine (0.42ml) in THF (5ml), under ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight under nitrogen atmosphere. The solvent was evaporated under reduced solvent. Water was added to the mixture, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol/triethylamine). The material was dissolved in ethyl acetate-ethanol, and 6N hydrochloric acid was added to the solution. The solvent was evaporated. Diethyl ether was added to the residue, and the precipitates were filtered to give 1-butyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide dihydrochloride (Compound 30) (0.36g) as pale yellow amorphous.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) 0.84 - 1.02 (6H, m), 1.30 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.49 - 1.70 (4H, m), 1.70 - 1.95 (2H, m), 1.95 - 2.20 (2H, m), 2.58 (3H, d, J = 5.0 Hz), 2.80 - 2.85 (2H, m), 3.20 - 3.46 (8H, m), 3.66 - 3.84 (3H, m), 3.96 - 4.14 (3H, m), 4.12 (2H, t, J = 4.7 Hz), 4.39 - 4.45 (1H, m), 6.93 - 7.02 (3H, m), 7.41 - 7.63 (7H, m), 7.81 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz),

10.00 (1H, s), 10.22 (1H, br).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2691, 2930, 2872, 1653, 1609, 1518, 1501  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{39}\text{H}_{51}\text{N}_3\text{O}_4 \cdot 2\text{HCl} \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 65.35; H, 7.73; N, 5.86. Found C, 65.04; H, 7.88; N, 5.66.

5           Working Example 31 (Production of Compound 31)

10           A mixture of 7-bromo-1-cyclopropyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (0.45g), 4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (0.23g), 1M potassium carbonate solution (1.5ml), ethanol (1.5ml) and toluene (25ml) was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0.05g), and the mixture was refluxed for 3 hours under argon atmosphere and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol/triethylamine) to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-cyclopropyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 31) (0.25g) as pale yellow crystals.

mp 117 - 120°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.55 - 0.62 (2H, m), 0.85 - 0.93 (2H, m), 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.21 - 1.76 (8H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.56 - 2.76 (2H, m), 2.90 (2H, t-like), 3.34 (2H, dt, J = 8.0, 11.4 Hz), 3.43 - 3.59 (6H, m), 3.80 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.00 - 4.06 (2H, m), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.25 - 7.36 (3H, m), 7.42 - 7.54 (7H, m).

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>39</sub>H<sub>49</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>: C, 75.09; H, 7.92; N, 6.74.

Found C, 75.09; H, 8.14; N, 6.78.

Working Example 32 (Production of Compound 32)

In DMF (4ml) was dissolved 1-benzyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.15g). Under ice-cooling, to the mixture was added thionyl chloride (0.06ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. In THF (25ml) was dissolved the residue, the solution was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.09g) and triethylamine (0.23ml) in THF (10ml), under ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight under nitrogen atmosphere. The solvent was evaporated under reduced solvent. Water was added to the mixture, the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was

washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol/triethylamine).

5 The material was dissolved in ethyl acetate, and 4N hydrochloric acid-ethyl acetate was added to the solution. The solvent was evaporated to give 1-benzyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide hydrochloride (Compound 32)  
10 (0.14g) as yellow amorphous.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) 0.87 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.48 - 1.59 (2H, m), 1.65 - 2.15 (4H, m), 2.57 (3H, d, J = 4.8 Hz), 2.81 (2H, s), 3.25 - 3.45 (7H, m), 3.98 - 4.13 (5H, m),  
15 4.39 - 4.46 (1H, m), 4.66 (2H, s), 6.86 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.99 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.27 - 7.57 (11H, m), 7.67 (1H, s), 7.81 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 10.04 (1H, s), 10.44 (1H, br).

IR (KBr) v: 2963, 2868, 1655, 1607, 1518, 1499 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>42</sub>H<sub>49</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>·HCl·1.5H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 69.74; H, 7.39; N,  
20 5.81. Found C, 69.35; H, 7.40; N, 5.84.

#### Working Example 33 (Production of Compound 33)

In THF (5ml) was dissolved 1-benzyl-7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.3g). Under ice-cooling, to the  
25 solution were added oxalyl (0.11ml) and DMF (catalytic

amount). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. In THF (25ml) was dissolved the residue, the solution was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.15g) and triethylamine (0.44ml) in THF (10 ml), under ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred at room temperature under nitrogen atmosphere and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol/triethylamine) to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 1-benzyl-7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 33) (0.26g) as pale yellow crystals.

mp 127 - 131°C.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 0.93 (3H, t,  $J = 7.1$  Hz), 1.30 - 1.75 (8H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.55 - 2.70 (1H, m), 2.85 (2H, t-like), 3.31 - 3.38 (4H, m), 3.52 - 3.58 (4H, m), 3.80 (2H, t,  $J = 4.9$  Hz), 4.01 - 4.05 (2H, m), 4.16 (2H, t,  $J = 4.9$



Hz), 4.61 (2H, s), 6.90 (1H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 6.98 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.26 - 7.56 (14H, m).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2934, 2851, 1651, 1601, 1514, 1501  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{43}\text{H}_{51}\text{N}_3\text{O}_4 \cdot 0.25\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 76.13; H, 7.65; N,

5 6.19. Found C, 76.19; H, 7.55; N, 6.19.

Working Example 34 (Production of Compound 34)

In THF (3ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-cyclohexylmethyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.25g). Under ice-cooling,  
10 to the solution were added oxalyl chloride (0.09ml) and DMF (catalytic amount). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. In THF (25ml) was dissolved the residue, and the solution was added dropwise to a  
15 solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.14g) and triethylamine (0.36ml) in THF (5 ml), under ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred at room temperature under nitrogen atmosphere and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. To  
20 the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from  
25 diethyl ether-ethyl acetate-hexane to give 7-[4-(2-

butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-cyclohexylmethyl-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 34) (0.28g) as pale yellow crystals.

5 mp 115 - 117°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 0.93 - 1.84 (19H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.58 - 2.66 (1H, m), 2.91 (2H, t-like), 3.22 (2H, d, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.30 - 3.46 (4H, m), 3.50 - 3.58 (4H, m), 3.80 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 4.01 - 4.06 (2H, m), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 6.91 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.30 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.37 - 7.56 (7H, m).

IR (KBr) ν: 2924, 2849, 1651, 1605, 1516, 1499 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>43</sub>H<sub>57</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>: C, 75.96; H, 8.45; N, 6.18.

15 Found C, 75.93; H, 8.58; N, 6.21.

#### Working Example 35 (Production of Compound 35)

In THF (5ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-cyclopropylmethyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.35g). Under ice-cooling, to the solution were added oxalyl chloride (0.14ml) and DMF (catalytic amount). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. In THF (25ml) was dissolved the residue, and the solution was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-

20

25

pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.20g) and triethylamine (0.56ml) in THF (10 ml), under ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight under nitrogen atmosphere and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol/triethylamine) to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-cyclopropylmethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 35) (0.36g) as yellow crystals.

mp 92 - 94°C.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 0.26 - 0.33 (2H, m), 0.60 - 0.69 (2H, m), 0.93 (3H, t,  $J = 7.4$  Hz), 1.05 - 1.18 (1H, m), 1.22 - 2.05 (8H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.59 - 2.67 (1H, m), 2.95 (2H, t-like), 3.25 (2H, d,  $J = 6.2$  Hz), 3.32 - 3.58 (8H, m), 3.80 (2H, t,  $J = 5.0$  Hz), 3.93 - 4.18 (4H, m), 6.95 - 7.00 (3H, m), 7.29 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.41 - 7.58 (7H, m).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 3289, 2940, 2870, 1651, 1607, 1516, 1499  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{40}\text{H}_{51}\text{N}_3\text{O}_4$ : C, 75.32; H, 8.06; N, 6.59.

Found C, 75.21; H, 8.12; N, 6.49.

Working Example 36 (Production of Compound 36)

In THF (5ml) was dissolved 1-cyclopropylmethyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.25g). Under ice-cooling, to the solution were added oxalyl chloride (0.11ml) and DMF (catalytic amount). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. In THF (25ml) was dissolved the residue, and the solution was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.14g) and triethylamine (0.41ml) in THF (5ml), under ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight under nitrogen atmosphere and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol/triethylamine), which was dissolved in ethyl acetate. To the solution was added 4N hydrochloric acid-ethyl acetate, and the solvent was evaporated to give 1-cyclopropylmethyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-tetrahydro-2H-

pyran-4-yl]amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide dihydrochloride (Compound 36) (0.32g) as pale yellow amorphous.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) 0.29 - 0.31 (2H, m), 0.54 - 0.57 (2H, m), 0.88 (2H, t, J = 7.5 Hz), 1.06 - 1.13 (1H, m), 1.45 - 1.63 (2H, m), 1.70 - 2.20 (4H, m), 2.57 (3H, d, J = 4.8 Hz), 2.89 (2H, br), 3.25 - 3.46 (9H, m), 3.69 - 3.74 (2H, m), 4.10 - 4.14 (5H, m), 4.37 - 4.45 (1H, m), 7.00 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.03 - 7.11 (1H, m), 7.44 - 7.59 (6H, m), 7.68 (1H, s), 7.81 (2H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 10.07 (1H, s), 10.63 (1H, br).

#### Working Example 37 (Production of Compound 37)

In THF (5ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-cyclobutylmethyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.25g). Under ice-cooling, to the solution were added oxalyl chloride (0.1ml) and DMF (catalytic amount). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. In THF (25ml) was dissolved the residue, the solution was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.13g) and triethylamine (0.4ml) in THF (5ml), under ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight under nitrogen atmosphere and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was

extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol/triethylamine), which was dissolved in ethyl acetate. To the solution was added 4N hydrochloric acid-ethyl acetate, and the solvent was evaporated to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-cyclobutylmethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide dihydrochloride (Compound 37) (0.27g) as pale yellow amorphous.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{DMSO-d}_6$ ) 0.89 (3H, t,  $J = 7.1$  Hz), 1.24 - 1.58 (4H, m), 1.73 - 2.15 (1H, m), 2.57 (3H, d,  $J = 4.8$  Hz), 2.60 - 2.85 (3H, m), 3.20 - 3.49 (10H, m), 3.96 - 4.13 (5H, m), 4.38 - 4.44 (1H, m), 6.97 - 7.02 (3H, m), 7.40 - 7.63 (7H, m), 7.80 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 10.02 (1H, s), 10.41 (1H, s).

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{41}\text{H}_{53}\text{N}_3\text{O}_4 \cdot 2\text{HCl} \cdot 1.5\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 65.50; H, 7.78; N, 5.59. Found C, 65.51; H, 7.77; N, 5.24.

#### Working Example 38 (Production of Compound 38)

In DMF (6ml) was dissolved 1-phenyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.2g). Under ice-cooling, to the mixture was added thionyl chloride (0.08ml). The mixture

was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. In THF (20ml) was suspended the residue, the suspension was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-

5 (tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.12g) and triethylamine (0.31ml) in THF (5ml), under ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight under nitrogen atmosphere. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. Water was added to the mixture,

10 the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated, the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol/

15 triethylamine), which was dissolved in ethyl acetate-ethanol, 4N hydrochloric acid-ethyl acetate was added to the solution, and the solvent was evaporated to give 1-phenyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-

20 dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide hydrochloride (Compound 38) (0.17g) as yellow crystals.

mp 223 - 224°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) 0.88 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.45 - 1.60 (2H, m), 1.70 - 1.95 (2H, m), 1.95 - 2.15 (2H, m),

25 2.58 (3H, d, J = 4.8 Hz), 2.84 (2H, br), 3.22 - 3.46 (4H,

m), 3.72 (2H, t,  $J = 4.7$  Hz), 3.75 - 4.12 (5H, m), 4.15 (2H, t,  $J = 4.7$  Hz), 4.39 - 4.46 (1H, m), 6.80 - 6.90 (1H, m), 6.98 - 7.07 (4H, m), 7.20 - 7.30 (3H, m), 7.47 - 7.57 (4H, m), 7.65 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.79 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.85 (1H, s), 9.96 (1H, br), 10.07 (1H, s).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2961, 2928, 2863, 1651, 1520, 1495  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{41}\text{H}_{47}\text{N}_3\text{O}_4 \cdot \text{HCl} \cdot 0.5\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 71.23; H, 7.14; N, 6.08. Found C, 71.56; H, 7.17; N, 6.18.

#### Working Example 39 (Production of Compound 39)

10 In THF (5ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-phenyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.25g). Under ice-cooling, to the solution were added oxalyl chloride (0.1ml) and DMF (catalytic amount). The mixture was stirred at room  
15 temperature for 1 hour, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. In THF (25ml) was suspended the residue, the suspension was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.13g) and triethylamine (0.38ml)  
20 in THF (5ml), under ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight under nitrogen atmosphere and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was  
25 washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with



anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol/triethylamine) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-phenyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 39) (0.21g) as yellow amorphous.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.27 - 1.49 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.74 (6H, m), 2.19 (3H, s), 2.58 - 2.66 (1H, m), 2.93 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.36 (2H, dt, J = 3.2, 10.8 Hz), 3.52 - 3.59 (4H, m), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.89 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.00 - 4.06 (2H, m), 4.17 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.88 - 7.02 (5H, m), 7.21 - 7.30 (4H, m), 7.41 (1H, dd, J = 2.2, 8.6 Hz), 7.48 - 7.53 (6H, m), 7.64 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz).

IR (KBr) v: 2953, 2934, 2847, 1653, 1595, 1520, 1495 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>42</sub>H<sub>49</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub> · 0.25H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 75.93; H, 7.51; N, 6.32. Found C, 75.80; H, 7.40; N, 6.30.

#### Working Example 40 (Production of Compound 40)

In THF (5ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(3-methoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.15g). Under ice-cooling, to the solution were added oxalyl chloride (0.06ml) and DMF (catalytic amount). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes, and the

solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. In THF  
 (30ml) was dissolved the residue, and the solution was  
 added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-  
 (tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.07g) and  
 5 triethylamine (0.2ml) in THF (5ml), under ice-cooling.  
 The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight  
 under nitrogen atmosphere and the solvent was evaporated  
 under reduced pressure. To the residue was added water,  
 and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The  
 10 organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine,  
 and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent  
 was evaporated, and the residue was purified with silica  
 gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol/  
 triethylamine) to give crude crystals, which were  
 15 recrystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 7-[4-(2-  
 butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(3-methoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-  
 N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-  
 dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 40)  
 (0.11g) as pale yellow crystals.  
 20 mp 94 - 97°C.  
<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.27 - 1.76  
 (8H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.58 - 2.69 (1H, m), 2.95 (2H, t-  
 like), 3.36 (2H, dt, J = 3.4, 11.5 Hz), 3.52 - 3.59 (4H, m),  
 3.76 (3H, s), 3.76 - 3.87 (4H, m), 4.00 - 4.06 (2H, m),  
 25 4.17 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 6.43 - 6.62 (3H, m), 7.00 (2H, d,

J = 8.8 Hz), 7.14 - 7.30 (3H, m), 7.40 - 7.54 (7H, m), 7.64 (1H, d, J = 1.8 Hz).

IR (KBr) v: 2955, 2845, 1661, 1595, 1516, 1493  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{43}\text{H}_{51}\text{N}_3\text{O}_5$ : C, 74.86; H, 7.45; N, 6.09.

5 Found C, 74.52; H, 7.66; N, 6.19.

Working Example 41 (Production of Compound 41)

In THF (5ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(4-methoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.2g). Under ice-cooling, to the solution were added oxalyl chloride (0.08ml) and DMF (catalytic amount). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. In THF (20ml) was dissolved the residue, and the solution was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.1g) and triethylamine (0.3ml) in THF (5ml), under ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight under nitrogen atmosphere and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol/

10  
15  
20  
25

triethylamine) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(4-methoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 41) (0.22g) as yellow amorphous.

5 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.1 Hz), 1.26 - 1.48 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.74 (6H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.58 - 2.66 (1H, m), 2.90 (2H, t-like), 3.37 (2H, dt, J = 2.2, 12.7 Hz), 3.52 - 3.58 (4H, m), 3.78 - 3.83 (7H, m), 4.01 - 4.06 (2H, m), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 6.85 - 7.05 (7H, m), 7.26 -  
10 7.34 (2H, m), 7.46 - 7.59 (7H, m).

Working Example 42 (Production of Compound 42)

In THF (5ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.2g). Under ice-  
15 cooling, to the solution were added oxalyl chloride (0.05ml) and DMF (catalytic amount). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. In THF (20ml) was dissolved the residue, and the solution was added  
20 dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.11g) and triethylamine (0.3ml) in THF (5ml), under ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight under nitrogen atmosphere and the solvent was evaporated under reduced  
25 pressure. To the residue was added water, and the

mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol/triethylamine) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(4-propoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 42) (0.2g) as yellow amorphous.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.04 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.34 - 1.48 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.86 (8H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.58 - 2.69 (1H, m), 2.88 (2H, t-like), 3.36 (2H, dt, J = 3.4, 11.0 Hz), 3.52 - 3.58 (5H, m), 3.78 - 3.83 (4H, m), 3.90 (2H, t, J = 10.1 Hz), 4.00 - 4.17 (4H, m), 6.84 - 7.03 (7H, m), 7.26 - 7.33 (2H, m), 7.45 - 7.61 (7H, m).

IR (KBr) ν: 2936, 2872, 1651, 1607, 1495 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

#### Working Example 43 (Production of Compound 43)

In THF (5ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.25g). Under ice-cooling, to the solution were added oxalyl chloride (0.1ml) and DMF (catalytic amount). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. In THF (30ml) was dissolved the residue, and the solution was

added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.13g) and triethylamine (0.35ml) in THF (5ml), under ice-cooling.

The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight

5 under nitrogen atmosphere and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. To the residue was added water,

and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent

10 was evaporated, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol/

triethylamine) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl)-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-

15 benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 43) (0.28g) as yellow amorphous.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.22 - 1.48 (4H, m), 1.54 - 1.74 (4H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.58 - 2.67 (1H, m), 2.91 (2H, t-like), 3.37 (2H, dt, J = 3.0, 11.2 Hz), 3.52 - 3.59 (4H, m), 3.78 - 3.83 (4H, m), 4.01 - 4.19 (4H, m), 5.95 (2H, s), 6.50 (1H, dd, J = 2.2, 8.4 Hz), 6.61 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.76 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.97 - 7.03 (3H, m), 7.26 - 7.37 (3H, m), 7.46 - 7.59 (7H, m).

20 IR (KBr) v: 2951, 2872, 1651, 1607, 1514, 1487 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

25 Working Example 44 (Production of Compound 17)

In phosphorus oxychloride (25ml) was dissolved 1-(N-acetylglycyl)-7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (0.5g). The solution was heated to stir at room temperature for 7 hours and at 50°C for 2 hours, and the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue was purified with basic silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane). The resulting crude crystals were recrystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-methyloxazol-5-yl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 44) (0.26g) as pale yellow crystals. mp 125 - 128°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.22 - 1.48 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.76 (6H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.41 (3H, s), 2.55 - 2.70 (1H, m), 2.96 (2H, t-like), 3.36 (2H, dt, J = 2.6, 11.0 Hz), 3.52 - 3.58 (4H, m), 3.72 (2H, t-like), 3.80 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.00 - 4.06 (2H, m), 4.15 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 6.33 (1H, s), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.08 (1H,

d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.26 - 7.56 (8H, m), 7.76 (1H, s).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2936, 2870, 1651, 1516, 1495  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{40}\text{H}_{48}\text{N}_4\text{O}_5$ : C, 72.26; H, 7.28; N, 8.43.

Found C, 72.16; H, 7.10; N, 8.51.

5           Working Example 45 (Production of Compound 45)

In DMF (20ml) were suspended 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-methylthiazol-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.13g), 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline  
10 dihydrochloride (0.1g) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.06g). Under ice-cooling, to the suspension were added 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide hydrochloride (0.15g), triethylamine (0.18ml) and 4-dimethylaminopyridine (catalytic amount), and the mixture  
15 was stirred at room temperature overnight, which was poured into water and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified with  
20 silica gel column (ethyl acetate/methanol/triethylamine) to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from ethyl acetate-diethyl ether-hexane to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-methylthiazol-4-yl)-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-  
25 2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 45)



(0.087g) as pale yellow crystals.

mp 115 - 123°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.30 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.76 (6H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.55 - 2.75 (1H, m), 2.67 (3H, s), 2.94 (2H, t-like), 3.36 (2H, dt, J = 2.6, 11.2 Hz), 3.52 - 3.59 (4H, m), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 4.01 - 4.19 (6H, m), 5.93 (1H, s), 7.00 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.31 (1H, s), 7.43 - 7.60 (9H, m).

IR (KBr) ν: 2932, 2870, 2843, 1659, 1597, 1526, 1518, 1495 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Working Example 46 (Production of Compound 46)

In DMF (20ml) were suspended 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(4-sulfamoylphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.15g), 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline dihydrochloride (0.11g) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.06g). Under ice-cooling, to the suspension were added 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide hydrochloride (0.16g), triethylamine (0.2ml) and 4-dimethylaminopyridine (catalytic amount), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The solvent was evaporated, water was added to the residue, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent

was evaporated. The residue was purified with silica gel column (ethyl acetate/methanol/triethylamine) to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-N-[4-  
 5 [[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(4-sulfamoylphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 46) (0.085g) as yellow crystals.

mp 108 - 111°C.

10 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.33 - 1.48 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.75 (6H, m), 2.15 (3H, s), 2.57 - 2.67 (1H, m), 2.78 - 2.94 (2H, m), 3.33 (2H, t, J = 10.3 Hz), 3.46 - 3.58 (4H, m), 3.78 - 3.82 (4H, m), 3.97 - 4.02 (2H, m), 4.06 - 4.14 (2H, m), 6.78 (2H, d, J = 9.2 Hz), 6.97 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.19 - 7.29 (3H, m), 7.36 - 7.63 (9H, m), 8.16  
 15 (1H, s).

#### Working Example 47 (Production of Compound 47)

In DMF (25ml) were suspended 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(N,N-dimethyl-4-sulfamoylphenyl)-  
 20 2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.3g), 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline dihydrochloride (0.19g) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.07g). Under ice-cooling, to the suspension were added 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide  
 25 hydrochloride (0.15g), triethylamine (0.37ml) and 4-

dimethylaminopyridine (catalytic amount), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The solvent was evaporated, water was added to the residue, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified with silica gel column (ethyl acetate/methanol/triethylamine) to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(N,N-dimethyl-4-sulfamoylphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 47) (0.12g) as colorless crystals.

mp 94 - 98°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.1 Hz), 1.22 - 1.74 (8H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.55 - 2.70 (1H, m), 2.70 (6H, s), 3.02 (2H, t-like), 3.36 (2H, dt, J = 2.6, 11.0 Hz), 3.53 - 3.60 (4H, m), 3.82 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.85 - 4.14 (4H, m), 4.18 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.96 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.03 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.30 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.37 - 7.63 (9H, m), 7.70 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz).

Working Example 48 (Production of Compound 48)

In THF (7ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(N-methyl-4-sulfamoylphenyl)-2,3-

dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.4g). Under ice-cooling, to the solution were added oxalyl chloride (0.19ml) and DMF (catalytic amount). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. In THF (25ml) was dissolved the residue, and the solution was added dropwise to a suspension of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline dihydrochloride (0.28g) and triethylamine (0.5ml) in THF (5ml), under ice-cooling.

The mixture was stirred at room temperature under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue was purified with basic silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate) to give crude crystals, which were recrystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(N-methyl-4-sulfamoylphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl]amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 48) (0.28g) as pale yellow crystals. mp 96 - 99°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.29 - 1.71

(8H, m), 2.17 (3H, s), 2.59 (3H, d,  $J = 4.0$  Hz), 2.60 - 2.70 (1H, m), 2.95 (2H, t-like), 3.35 (2H, dt,  $J = 2.6$ , 11.4 Hz), 3.52 - 3.59 (4H, m), 3.79 - 3.88 (4H, m), 3.99 - 4.17 (4H, m), 4.66 (1H, br), 6.86 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 6.99 (2H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.23 - 7.66 (12H, m), 8.05 (1H, d,  $J = 9.6$  Hz).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2942, 2853, 1661, 1590, 1495  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

#### Reference Example 98

Propionyl chloride (1.0ml) was added dropwise to a suspension of methyl 7-(2-propoxyethoxy)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.2g) and potassium carbonate (2.2g) in DMF (10ml) under ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight under nitrogen atmosphere, and poured into water, which was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 1-propionyl-7-(2-propoxyethoxy)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.2g) as pale yellow oil.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 0.95 (3H, t,  $J = 7.3$  Hz), 1.05 (3H, t,  $J = 7.3$  Hz), 1.57 - 1.75 (2H, m), 2.09 - 2.20 (1H, m), 2.41 - 2.53 (1H, m), 2.75 - 2.84 (2H, m), 2.88 - 3.10 (1H, m), 3.52 (2H, t,  $J = 6.7$  Hz), 3.80 - 3.83 (5H, m), 4.18 (2H, t,

$J = 4.6$  Hz), 4.75 - 4.80 (1H, m), 7.03 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.24 (1H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.48 - 7.55 (3H, m), 7.65 (1H, d,  $J = 1.8$  Hz), 7.73 (1H, s).

IR (neat)  $\nu$ : 2948, 2874, 1713, 1661  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

5           Reference Example 99

In methanol (25ml) and THF (25ml) was dissolved methyl 1-propionyl-7-(2-propoxyethoxy)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.2g), and to the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (5ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight, concentrated. neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give 1-propionyl-7-(2-propoxyethoxy)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.2g) as colorless crystals.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 0.95 (3H, t,  $J = 7.3$  Hz), 1.07 (3H, t,  $J = 7.5$  Hz), 1.57 - 1.75 (2H, m), 2.12 - 2.22 (1H, m), 2.43 - 2.55 (1H, m), 2.78 - 2.88 (2H, m), 3.00 - 3.10 (1H, m), 3.53 (2H, t,  $J = 6.8$  Hz), 3.83 (2H, t,  $J = 5.0$  Hz), 4.19 (2H, t,  $J = 5.0$  Hz), 4.78 - 4.80 (1H, m), 7.03 (2H, d,  $J = 8.6$  Hz), 7.26 (1H, d,  $J = 8.2$  Hz), 7.51 - 7.56 (3H, m), 7.67 (1H, d,  $J = 1.4$  Hz), 7.83 (1H, s).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2940, 2876, 1705  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

25           Reference Example 100

In 1,2-dichloroethane (20) were dissolved methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.0g), n-butylaldehyde (1.3ml) and acetic acid (0.41ml), and to the solution was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (3.8g). The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight, poured into water, neutralized with sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 7-bromo-1-butyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.9g) as pale yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.96 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.27 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.56 - 1.72 (2H, m), 2.79 (2H, t, J = 4.2 Hz), 3.19 - 3.31 (4H, m), 3.80 (3H, s), 6.69 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.23 (1H, dd, J = 2.5, 8.8 Hz), 7.42 (1H, d, J = 2.5 Hz), 7.57 (1H, s).

#### Reference Example 101

A mixture of methyl 7-bromo-1-butyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.45g), 4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (0.66g), 1M potassium carbonate solution (4ml), ethanol (4ml) and toluene (25ml) was stirred under argon atmosphere at room

temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0.12g), and the mixture was refluxed overnight under argon atmosphere and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 1-butyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.5g) as pale yellow oil.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 0.91 - 1.01 (6H, m), 1.30 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.57 - 1.73 (4H, m), 2.80 (2H, t,  $J = 4.6$  Hz), 3.25 - 3.37 (4H, m), 3.51 (2H, t,  $J = 6.1$  Hz), 3.78 - 3.83 (5H, m), 4.16 (2H, t,  $J = 4.9$  Hz), 6.87 (1H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 6.97 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.37 - 7.51 (4H, m), 7.76 (1H, s).

IR (neat)  $\nu$ : 2959, 2928, 2870, 1698, 1607, 1501  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

#### Reference Example 102

In methanol (25ml) and THF (25ml) was dissolved methyl 1-butyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.5g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (17ml), and the mixture was heated to stir at  $50^\circ\text{C}$  for 5 hours, concentrated, neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was



washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give 1-butyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.38g) as

5 yellow crystals.

mp 176 - 177°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.91 - 1.02 (6H, m), 1.35 - 1.46 (2H, m), 1.60 - 1.74 (4H, m), 2.84 (2H, t-like), 3.32 - 3.39 (4H, m), 3.52 (2H, t, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 5.1 Hz),  
10 4.17 (2H, t, J = 5.1 Hz), 6.88 (1H, d, J = 9.2 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.40 - 7.53 (4H, m), 7.88 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) ν: 2959, 2932, 2872, 1669, 1607, 1501 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>26</sub>H<sub>33</sub>NO<sub>4</sub>: C, 73.73; H, 7.85; N, 3.31. Found C, 73.42; H, 7.86; N, 3.25.

15 Reference Example 103

To cyclopropylamine (50ml) was added dropwise t-butyl 4-bromobutyrate (33.5g) at 40°C. To the mixture was added sodium iodide (22.6g), and the mixture was refluxed overnight. The solvent was evaporated, and to  
20 the residue was added water. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue was purified by distillation under reduced  
25 pressure to give t-butyl N-cyclopropyl-4-aminobutyrate

(12.6g) as colorless oil.

bp 85 - 90°C/5 mm.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.27 - 0.47 (4H, m), 1.45 (9H, s),  
1.69 - 1.84 (2H, m), 2.08 - 2.15 (1H, m), 2.26 (2H, t, J =  
5 7.3 Hz), 2.71 (2H, t, J = 7.3 Hz).

Reference Example 104

5-bromo-2-fluorobenzaldehyde (20g), t-butyl N-  
cyclopropyl-4-aminobutyrate (14.5g), sodium carbonate  
(13.8g), water (70ml) and DMSO (70ml) were heated at 80°C  
10 for 5 days and at 110°C for 3 days, which was poured into  
water and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic  
layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried  
with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was  
evaporated and the residue was purified with silica gel  
15 column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give t-  
butyl N-(4-bromo-2-formylphenyl)-N-cyclopropyl-4-  
aminobutyrate (6.4g) as red oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.45 - 0.52 (2H, m), 0.72 - 0.78 (2H,  
m), 1.41 (9H, s), 1.88 - 1.98 (2H, m), 2.17 (2H, t, J = 7.1  
20 Hz), 2.66 - 2.73 (1H, m), 3.29 (2H, t, J = 7.5 Hz), 7.13  
(1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.53 (1H, dd, J = 2.6, 8.8 Hz), 7.84  
(1H, d, J = 2.6 Hz), 10.09 (1H, s).

Reference Example 105

In THF(10ml) was dissolved t-butyl N-(4-bromo-2-  
25 formylphenyl)-N-cyclopropyl-4-aminobutyrate (1g). To the

solution was added potassium t-butoxide (0.59g), and the mixture was heated at 55°C for 1.5 hours. The solvent was evaporated, which was extracted with water. The aqueous layer was washed with ethyl acetate, and  
5 neutralized by addition of 1N hydrochloric acid, and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give 7-bromo-1-cyclopropyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-  
10 benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.44g) as yellow crystals. mp 225 - 230°C (dec.).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.42 - 0.50 (2H, m), 0.80 - 0.84 (2H, m), 2.60 - 2.80 (3H, m), 3.24 - 3.34 (2H, m), 7.13 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.38 (1H, dd, J = 2.4, 8.8 Hz), 7.45 (1H, s),  
15 7.53 (1H, d, J = 2.4 Hz), 12.39 (1H, br).

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>14</sub>H<sub>14</sub>BrNO<sub>2</sub>: C, 54.56; H, 4.58; N, 4.55. Found C, 54.20; H, 4.60; N, 4.30.

#### Reference Example 106

In THF (15ml) was dissolved 7-bromo-1-cyclopropyl-  
20 2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.4g). Under ice-cooling, to the solution were added oxalyl chloride (0.26ml) and DMF (catalytic amount), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. In  
25 THF (30ml) was dissolved the residue, and the solution

was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.34g) and triethylamine (0.9ml) in THF (5ml) under ice-cooling.

The mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room

5 temperature overnight. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. Water was added to the residue, and

the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The

organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine,

and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent

10 was evaporated and the residue was purified with silica

gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol/

triethylamine) to give 7-bromo-1-cyclopropyl-N-[4-[[N-

methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-

2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (0.55g) as

15 yellow crystals.

mp 133 - 136°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.50 - 0.58 (2H, m), 0.79 - 0.88 (2H, m), 1.63 - 1.76 (4H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.58 - 2.71 (2H, m), 2.86 (2H, t, J = 8.8 Hz), 3.37 (2H, dt, J = 3.0, 11.4 Hz), 3.46 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 3.56 (2H, s), 4.01 - 4.07 (2H, m), 7.08 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.14 (1H, s), 7.26 - 7.32 (2H, m), 7.37 (1H, d, J = 2.6 Hz), 7.52 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.57 (1H, s).

20

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>27</sub>H<sub>32</sub>BrN<sub>3</sub>O<sub>2</sub>: C, 63.53; H, 6.32; N, 8.23.

25 Found C, 63.30; H, 6.26; N, 8.15.

## Reference Example 107

In DMF (3ml) was dissolved methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.3g), and the solution was added dropwise to a suspension of 60% sodium hydride (0.05g) in DMF (1ml) under ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 10 minutes. Benzyl bromide (0.15ml) was added thereto, and the mixture was heated at 45°C for 4 hours. The mixture was poured into water, and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 1-benzyl-7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.3g) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 2.75 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 3.26 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 3.80 (3H, s), 4.52 (2H, s), 6.67 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.19 (1H, dd, J = 2.4, 8.8 Hz), 7.22 - 7.45 (6H, m), 7.47 (1H, d, J = 2.4 Hz), 7.63 (1H, s).

IR (neat) v: 1703 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

## Reference Example 108

A mixture of methyl 1-benzyl-7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.3g), 4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (0.24g), 1M potassium carbonate solution (2.5ml), ethanol (2.5ml) and toluene

(25ml) was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0.04g), and the mixture was refluxed under argon atmosphere overnight.

5 The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 1-benzyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.27g) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.5 Hz), 1.58 - 1.70 (2H, m), 2.77 (2H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.32 (2H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 15 3.51 (2H, t, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.78 - 3.83 (2H, m), 3.81 (3H, s), 4.07 - 4.18 (2H, m), 4.59 (2H, s), 6.87 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.26 - 7.41 (6H, m), 7.47 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.56 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.83 (1H, s).

IR (neat) v: 3027, 2874, 1701, 1499 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

20 Reference Example 109

In methanol (10ml) and THF (10ml) was dissolved methyl 1-benzyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.27g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (10ml), 25 and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight

and concentrated, which was neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give 1-benzyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.16g) as yellow crystals.

mp 139 - 142°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.59 - 1.70 (2H, m), 2.80 (2H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.34 (2H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.52 (2H, t, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.78 - 3.84 (2H, m), 4.14 - 4.19 (2H, m), 4.61 (2H, s), 6.87 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.26 - 7.49 (8H, m), 7.57 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.95 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) ν: 2934, 2870, 1674, 1607, 1501 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>31</sub>NO<sub>4</sub>: C, 76.12; H, 6.83; N, 3.06. Found C, 75.77; H, 6.95; N, 3.15.

#### Reference Example 110

In 1,2-dichloroethane (7ml) were dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.4g) and benzaldehyde (0.43g). To the solution was added sodium triacetoxyborohydride (0.43g), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight, poured into water, neutralized with sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and

extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give methyl 1-benzyl-7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.49g) as oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR ( $\delta$  ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.30 - 1.48 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.68 (2H, m), 2.77 (2H, t, J = 4.7 Hz), 3.31 (2H, t, J = 4.7 Hz), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.78 - 3.82 (5H, m), 4.15 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.59 (2H, s), 6.86 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.97 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.26 - 7.68 (7H, m), 7.82 - 7.91 (3H, m).

IR (neat)  $\nu$ : 2934, 2870, 1703, 1607, 1501 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

#### Reference Example 111

In methanol (25ml) and THF (25ml) was dissolved methyl 1-benzyl-7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.49g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (10ml), and the mixture was heated at 50°C overnight and concentrated, which was neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give 1-benzyl-7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.47g) as yellow crystals.



mp 133 - 138°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.65 (2H, m), 2.80 (2H, br), 3.34 (2H, br), 3.56 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.80 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.61 (2H, s), 6.88 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.26 - 7.49 (8H, m), 7.57 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.94 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) ν: 2957, 2934, 2867, 1674, 1609, 1501 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>33</sub>NO<sub>4</sub>: C, 76.41; H, 7.05; N, 2.97. Found C, 76.06; H, 7.15; N, 2.68.

#### Reference Example 112

In 1,2-dichloroethane (5ml) were dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.3g) and cyclohexanecarboaldehyde (0.43g). To the solution was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (0.43g), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 3.5 hours, poured into water, neutralized with sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-cyclohexylmethyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.37g) as pale yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.89 - 1.81 (15H, m), 0.93 (3H, t, J =

7.3 Hz), 2.81 (2H, t, J = 4.2 Hz), 3.19 (2H, d, J = 6.6 Hz),  
 3.29 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.78 -  
 3.82 (5H, m), 4.15 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 6.87 (1H, d, J =  
 8.8 Hz), 6.97 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.36 - 7.51 (4H, m),  
 5 7.76 (1H, s).

IR (neat)  $\nu$ : 2930, 2849, 1699, 1607, 1499  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

#### Reference Example 113

In methanol (25ml) and THF (25ml) was dissolved  
 methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-cyclohexylmethyl-  
 10 2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.37g). To  
 the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution  
 (7.5ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature  
 overnight and concentrated, which was neutralized with 1N  
 hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The  
 15 organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine  
 and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent  
 was evaporated to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-  
 cyclohexylmethyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-  
 carboxylic acid (0.32g) as yellow crystals.  
 20 mp 124 - 125°C.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 0.90 - 1.85 (15H, m), 0.93 (3H, t, J =  
 7.2 Hz), 2.83 (2H, t-like), 3.22 (2H, d, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.32  
 (2H, t-like), 3.56 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.81 (2H, t, J =  
 5.0 Hz), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.89 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz),  
 25 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.39 - 7.53 (4H, m), 7.88 (1H, s).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2926, 1674, 1607, 1499  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{39}\text{NO}_4$ : C, 75.44; H, 8.23; N, 2.93. Found C, 75.46; H, 8.23; N, 2.96.

Reference Example 114

5        In 1,2-dichloroethane (7ml) were dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.4g) and cyclopropanecarboaldehyde (0.3g). To the solution was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (0.43g), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen  
10        atmosphere at room temperature overnight, poured into water, neutralized with sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was  
15        evaporated to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-cyclopropylmethyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.45g) as yellow oil.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 0.24 - 0.32 (2H, m), 0.58 - 0.67 (2H, m), 0.93 (3H, t,  $J = 7.3$  Hz), 1.08 - 1.15 (1H, m), 1.34 -  
20        1.49 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.68 (2H, m), 2.86 (2H, t,  $J = 4.4$  Hz), 3.23 (2H, d,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.39 (2H, t,  $J = 4.7$  Hz), 3.55 (2H, t,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.73 - 3.83 (5H, m), 4.11 - 4.18 (2H, m), 6.92 - 7.01 (3H, m), 7.38 - 7.53 (4H, m), 7.77 (1H, s).

IR (neat)  $\nu$ : 2953, 2930, 2870, 1699, 1607, 1499  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

25        Reference Example 115

In methanol (25ml) and THF (25ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-cyclopropylmethyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.45g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (10ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight and concentrated, which was neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-cyclopropylmethyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.42g) as yellow crystals.

mp 152 - 155°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.25 - 0.33 (2H, m), 0.59 - 0.68 (2H, m), 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.05 - 1.20 (1H, m), 1.30 - 1.49 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.69 (2H, m), 2.87 (2H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.25 (2H, d, J = 6.4 Hz), 3.42 (2H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.56 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.93 - 7.00 (3H, m), 7.40 - 7.54 (4H, m), 7.89 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) ν: 2959, 2936, 2868, 1669, 1607, 1501 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>27</sub>H<sub>33</sub>NO<sub>4</sub>: C, 74.45; H, 7.64; N, 3.22. Found C, 74.27; H, 7.45; N, 3.21.

#### Reference Example 116

In 1,2-dichloroethane (5ml) were dissolved methyl 7-

[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.3g) and cyclopropanecarboaldehyde (0.22g). To the solution was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (0.33g), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 4 hours, poured into water, neutralized with sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give methyl 1-cyclopropylmethyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.34g) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.24 - 0.32 (2H, m), 0.58 - 0.67 (2H, m), 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.5 Hz), 1.05 - 1.15 (1H, m), 1.60 - 1.74 (2H, m), 2.85 (2H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.23 (2H, d, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.39 (2H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.51 (2H, t, J = 6.7 Hz), 3.79 - 3.84 (5H, m), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.91 - 7.01 (3H, m), 7.38 - 7.52 (4H, m), 7.77 (1H, s).

IR (neat) ν: 2936, 2872, 1699, 1607, 1499 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

#### Reference Example 117

In methanol (25ml) and THF (25ml) was dissolved methyl 1-cyclopropylmethyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.34g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution

(7.5ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight, heated at 50°C for 1 hour, concentrated, which was neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with

5 water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give 1-cyclopropylmethyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.30g) as yellow crystals.

10 mp 154 - 156°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.25 - 0.33 (2H, m), 0.59 - 0.68 (2H, m), 0.95 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.05 - 1.18 (1H, m), 1.56 - 1.74 (2H, m), 2.87 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.25 (2H, d, J = 6.2 Hz), 3.42 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.51 (2H, t, J = 6.8 Hz),

15 3.81 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 4.17 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 6.93 - 7.00 (3H, m), 7.40 - 7.53 (4H, m), 7.88 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) v: 2963, 1669, 1518 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>26</sub>H<sub>31</sub>NO<sub>4</sub>: C, 74.08; H, 7.41; N, 3.32. Found C, 74.03; H, 7.53; N, 3.27.

20 Reference Example 118

In 1,2-dichloroethane (7ml) were dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.4g) and cyclobutanecarboaldehyde (0.5g). To the solution was added sodium triacetoxyborohydride

25 (0.43g), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen

atmosphere at room temperature for 4 hours, poured into water, neutralized with sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-cyclobutylmethyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.47g) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.54 - 2.13 (8H, m), 2.70 - 2.81 (3H, m), 3.26 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.38 (2H, d, J = 7.4 Hz), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.78 - 3.83 (5H, m), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 6.87 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.97 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.37 - 7.51 (4H, m), 7.75 (1H, s)

#### Reference Example 119

In methanol (25ml) and THF (25ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-cyclobutylmethyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.47g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (10ml), and the mixture was heated at 50°C overnight, concentrated, neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-cyclobutylmethyl-

2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.40g) as yellow crystals.

mp 110 - 112°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.30 - 2.00 (8H, m), 2.00 - 2.15 (2H, m), 2.71 - 2.80 (3H, m), 3.29 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.39 (2H, d, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.80 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.88 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.39 - 7.51 (4H, m), 7.85 (1H, s).

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>28</sub>H<sub>35</sub>NO<sub>4</sub>: C, 74.80; H, 7.85; N, 3.12. Found C, 74.51; H, 7.92; N, 2.98.

#### Reference Example 120

In dichloromethane (15ml) were dissolved methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.5g) and copper pivalate (0.05g). To the solution was added triphenylbismuth diacetate (1.1g), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight, poured into water, stirred, neutralized with 1N sodium hydroxide solution and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 7-bromo-1-phenyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.27g) as yellow crystals.



mp 104 - 106°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 2.82 (2H, t, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.76 (2H, t, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.78 (3H, s), 6.90 - 7.00 (4H, m), 7.22 - 7.30 (3H, m), 7.58 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.62 (1H, s).

5 IR (KBr) v: 2949, 1705 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. calcd for C<sub>18</sub>H<sub>16</sub>BrNO<sub>2</sub>: C, 60.35; H, 4.50; N, 3.91.

Found C, 60.16; H, 4.28; N, 3.85.

Reference Example 121

10 A mixture of methyl 7-bromo-1-phenyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.27g), 4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (0.23g), 1M potassium carbonate solution (3ml), ethanol (3ml) and toluene (25ml) was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added  
15 tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0.04g), and the mixture was refluxed under argon atmosphere overnight, and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated  
20 under reduced pressure and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 1-phenyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.26g) as yellow crystals.  
25 mp 117 - 119°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.95 (3H, t, J = 7.5 Hz), 1.57 - 1.71 (2H, m), 2.85 (2H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.52 (2H, t, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.79 (3H, s), 3.79 - 3.84 (4H, m), 4.18 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.87 - 7.03 (5H, m), 7.16 - 7.30 (3H, m), 7.40 (1H, dd, J = 2.2, 8.4 Hz), 7.51 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.64 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.80 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) ν: 1705, 1493 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>31</sub>NO<sub>4</sub>: C, 76.12; H, 6.83; N, 3.06. Found C, 75.81; H, 6.75; N, 2.77.

10           Reference Example 122

In methanol (25ml) and THF (25ml) was dissolved methyl 1-phenyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.23g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (10ml), and the mixture was heated at 50°C overnight, concentrated, neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give 1-phenyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.23g) as yellow crystals.

mp 135 - 139°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.95 (3H, t, J = 7.5 Hz), 1.60 - 1.71 (2H, m), 2.86 (2H, t-like), 3.52 (2H, t, J = 6.7 Hz), 3.80

- 3.85 (4H, m), 4.18 (2H, t,  $J = 4.8$  Hz), 6.90 - 7.04 (5H, m), 7.17 (1H, d,  $J = 8.5$  Hz), 7.23 - 7.31 (2H, m), 7.40 (1H, dd,  $J = 2.2, 8.5$  Hz), 7.51 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.65 (1H, d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 7.90 (1H, s).

5 IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2963, 2936, 2872, 1674, 1609, 1593, 1493  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{29}\text{NO}_4$ : C, 75.82; H, 6.59; N, 3.16. Found C, 75.43; H, 6.37; N, 3.10.

#### Reference Example 123

In dichloromethane (10ml) were dissolved methyl 7-  
10 [4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.5g) and copper pivalate (0.07g). To the solution was added triphenylbismuth diacetate (0.78g), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight, poured into 3N hydrochloric acid, stirred, neutralized  
15 with 1N sodium hydroxide solution and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl  
20 acetate/hexane) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-phenyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.42g) as yellow crystals.  
mp 80 - 82°C.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 0.94 (3H, t,  $J = 7.1$  Hz), 1.31 - 1.49  
25 (2H, m), 1.56 - 1.69 (2H, m), 2.85 (2H, t,  $J = 4.4$  Hz),

3.56 (2H, t,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.79 - 3.84 (7H, m), 4.17 (2H, t,  $J = 4.9$  Hz), 6.87 - 7.02 (5H, m), 7.16 - 7.30 (3H, m), 7.40 (1H, dd,  $J = 2.2, 8.8$  Hz), 7.51 (2H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.64 (1H, d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 7.80 (1H, s).

5 IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2955, 2868, 1705, 1593, 1495  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{33}\text{NO}_4$ : C, 76.41; H, 7.05; N, 2.97. Found C, 76.30; H, 7.17; N, 2.90.

#### Reference Example 124

In methanol (25ml) and THF (25ml) was dissolved  
 10 methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-phenyl-2,3-dihydro-  
 1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.37g). To the solution  
 was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (7.5ml), and the  
 mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight,  
 concentrated, neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and  
 15 extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was  
 washed with water and saturated brine and dried with  
 anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated  
 to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-phenyl-2,3-  
 dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.27g) as  
 20 yellow crystals.

mp 129 - 131°C.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 0.94 (3H, t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 1.34 - 1.49  
 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.69 (2H, m), 2.86 (2H, t,  $J = 4.4$  Hz),  
 3.56 (2H, t,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.79 - 3.84 (4H, m), 4.17 (2H, t,  
 25  $J = 4.8$  Hz), 6.90 - 7.04 (5H, m), 7.17 (1H, d,  $J = 8.6$  Hz),

7.23 - 7.31 (2H, m), 7.40 (1H, dd,  $J = 2.2, 8.6$  Hz), 7.50 (2H, d,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 7.64 (1H, d,  $J = 1.8$  Hz), 7.90 (1H, s).

IR (KBr)  $\nu$ : 2957, 2870, 1674, 1609, 1593, 1493  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{31}\text{NO}_4$ : C, 76.12; H, 6.83; N, 3.06. Found

5 C, 76.18; H, 6.85; N, 3.21.

#### Reference Example 125

In dichloromethane (7ml) were dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.25g) and copper pivalate (0.04g). To the  
10 solution was added tri(3-methoxyphenyl)bismuth diacetate (1.5g), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight, poured into 3N hydrochloric acid, stirred, neutralized with 1N sodium hydroxide solution and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was  
15 washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(3-methoxyphenyl)-2,3-  
20 dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.16g) as yellow oil.

$^1\text{H}$ -NMR ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 0.94 (3H, t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.65 (2H, m), 2.86 (2H, t,  $J = 4.8$  Hz), 3.56 (2H, t,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.75 (3H, s), 3.79 (3H, s), 3.79  
25 - 3.84 (4H, m), 4.17 (2H, t,  $J = 4.9$  Hz), 6.42 - 6.60 (3H,

m), 7.00 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.11 - 7.26 (2H, m), 7.41 (1H, dd,  $J = 2.2, 8.4$  Hz), 7.51 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.64 (1H, d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 7.78 (1H, s).

IR (neat)  $\nu$ : 2955, 2932, 2870, 1705  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

5           Reference Example 126

In methanol (25ml) and THF (25ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(3-methoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.16g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution  
10 (2.8ml), and the mixture was heated at 50°C overnight, concentrated, neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated  
15 to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(3-methoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.16g) as yellow crystals.

mp 154 - 156°C.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 0.94 (3H, t,  $J = 7.4$  Hz), 1.34 - 1.45  
20 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.65 (2H, m), 2.87 (2H, t-like), 3.56 (2H, t,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.76 (3H, s), 3.79 - 3.84 (4H, m), 4.17 (2H, t,  $J = 4.8$  Hz), 6.45 - 6.61 (3H, m), 7.00 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.13 - 7.24 (2H, m), 7.42 (1H, dd,  $J = 2.2, 8.4$  Hz), 7.51 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.64 (1H, d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 7.88  
25 (1H, s).

Anal. Calcd. for  $C_{30}H_{33}NO_5$ : C, 73.90; H, 6.82; N, 2.87. Found C, 73.73; H, 6.72; N, 2.83.

Reference Example 127

In dichloromethane (10ml) were dissolved methyl 7-  
5 [4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.3g) and copper pivalate (0.06g). To the solution was added tri(4-methoxyphenyl)bismuth diacetate (1.5g), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight, poured into 3N hydrochloric acid, stirred,  
10 neutralized with 1N sodium hydroxide solution and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated and the residue was purified with silica gel column  
15 chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(4-methoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.38g) as yellow oil.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 0.93 (3H, t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 1.30 - 1.45  
20 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.65 (2H, m), 2.82 (2H, t,  $J = 4.4$  Hz), 3.56 (2H, t,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.72 - 3.83 (10H, m), 4.16 (2H, t,  $J = 4.4$  Hz), 6.85 - 6.91 (3H, m), 6.96 - 7.04 (4H, m), 7.30 (1H, dd,  $J = 2.2, 8.4$  Hz), 7.48 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.59 (1H, d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 7.82 (1H, s).

25 IR (neat)  $\nu$ : 2955, 1705, 1609, 1508, 1491  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

## Reference Example 128

In methanol (25ml) and THF (25ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(4-methoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.38g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (8ml), and the mixture was heated at 50°C overnight, concentrated, neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(4-methoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.27g) as yellow crystals.

mp 164 - 166°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.1 Hz), 1.34 - 1.49 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.68 (2H, m), 2.83 (2H, t-like), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.0 Hz), 3.74 - 3.83 (7H, m), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 6.85 - 7.06 (7H, m), 7.31 (1H, dd, J = 2.2, 8.4 Hz), 7.47 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.59 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.92 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) ν: 2957, 2928, 2868, 1674, 1609, 1508, 1493 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>33</sub>NO<sub>5</sub>: C, 73.90; H, 6.82; N, 2.87. Found C, 73.87; H, 6.89; N, 2.70.

## Reference Example 129

In dichloromethane (7ml) were dissolved methyl 7-[4-



(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.2g) and copper pivalate (0.04g). To the solution was added tri(4-propoxyphenyl)bismuth diacetate (1.1g), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight, poured into 3N hydrochloric acid, stirred, neutralized with 1N sodium hydroxide solution and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.25g) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.04 (3H, t, J = 7.5 Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.68 (2H, m), 1.75 - 1.86 (2H, m), 2.81 (2H, t, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.71 - 3.83 (7H, m), 3.90 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 4.14 - 4.18 (2H, m), 6.84 - 6.90 (3H, m), 6.96 - 7.02 (4H, m), 7.29 (1H, dd, J = 2.2, 8.4 Hz), 7.48 (2H, d, J = 6.6 Hz), 7.58 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.82 (1H, s).

IR (neat) ν: 2957, 2934, 2870, 1705, 1622, 1609, 1507, 1489 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

#### Reference Example 130

In methanol (50ml) and THF (50ml) was dissolved

methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(4-propoxyphenyl)-  
2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.25g). To  
the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (5ml),  
and the mixture was heated at 50°C overnight,

5 concentrated, neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and  
extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was  
washed with water and saturated brine and dried with  
anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated  
to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(4-propoxyphenyl)-  
10 2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.21g) as  
yellow crystals.

mp 182 - 185°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.1 Hz), 1.04 (3H, t,  
J = 7.6 Hz), 1.30 - 1.49 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.68 (2H, m), 1.76  
15 - 1.86 (2H, m), 2.83 (2H, t-like), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz),  
3.76 (2H, t-like), 3.80 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.91 (2H, t, J  
= 6.6 Hz), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.84 - 7.05 (7H, m),  
7.30 (1H, dd, J = 2.2, 8.6 Hz), 7.47 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz),  
7.58 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.92 (1H, s).

20 IR (KBr) ν: 2959, 2934, 2872, 1669, 1609, 1508, 1493 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>32</sub>H<sub>37</sub>NO<sub>5</sub>: C, 74.54; H, 7.23; N, 2.72. Found  
C, 74.19; H, 7.32; N, 2.87.

#### Reference Example 131

In dichloromethane (7ml) were dissolved methyl 7-[4-  
25 (2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-

carboxylate (0.25g) and copper pivalate (0.05g). To the solution was added tri(3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl)bismuth diacetate (1.3g), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight, poured into 3N hydrochloric acid, stirred, neutralized with 1N sodium hydroxide solution and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.3g) as yellow oil.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 0.93 (3H, t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 1.30 - 1.49 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.68 (2H, m), 2.82 (2H, t,  $J = 4.6$  Hz), 3.56 (2H, t,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.73 (2H, t,  $J = 4.9$  Hz), 3.79 - 3.84 (5H, m), 4.17 (2H, t,  $J = 4.9$  Hz), 5.94 (2H, s), 6.49 (1H, dd,  $J = 2.2, 8.4$  Hz), 6.60 (1H, d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 6.75 (1H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 6.94 - 7.02 (3H, m), 7.33 (1H, dd,  $J = 2.2, 8.4$  Hz), 7.48 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.59 (1H, d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 7.80 (1H, s).

IR (neat)  $\nu$ : 2955, 2932, 2870, 1703, 1609, 1485  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

#### Reference Example 132

In methanol (25ml) and THF (25ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(3,4-

methylenedioxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.3g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (6ml), and the mixture was refluxed for 2 hours, concentrated, neutralized with 1N

5 hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-10 4-carboxylic acid (0.26g) as yellow crystals.

mp 145 - 148°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.30 - 1.49 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.68 (2H, m), 2.84 (2H, t, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.56 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.74 (2H, t, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.17 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 5.95 (2H, s), 15 6.52 (1H, dd, J = 2.2, 8.4 Hz), 6.62 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.76 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.92 - 7.01 (3H, m), 7.34 (1H, dd, J = 2.2, 8.4 Hz), 7.48 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.59 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.91 (1H, s).

20 IR (KBr) ν: 2932, 2867, 1678, 1609, 1486 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>31</sub>NO<sub>6</sub>: C, 71.84; H, 6.23; N, 2.79. Found C, 71.61; H, 6.19; N, 2.62.

#### Reference Example 133

In THF (25ml) were dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-25

carboxylate (1g) and pyridine (2ml). Under ice-cooling, to the solution was added dropwise chloroacetyl chloride (1ml). The mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 1 hour, and the solvent was evaporated. To the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-chloroacetyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.1g) as pale yellow oil.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\delta$  ppm,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) 0.94 (3H, t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 1.30 - 1.69 (4H, m), 2.78 - 3.13 (3H, m), 3.56 (2H, t,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.80 - 3.84 (5H, m), 3.93 (1H, d,  $J = 12.8$  Hz), 4.11 - 4.20 (3H, m), 4.76 - 7.84 (1H, m), 7.03 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.34 (1H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.50 - 7.58 (3H, m), 7.68 (1H, d,  $J = 1.8$  Hz), 7.74 (1H, s).

#### Reference Example 134

In DMF (30ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-chloroacetyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.1g). To the solution was added sodium azide (0.23g), and the mixture was heated at 65°C for 1 hour, poured into water and extracted with

ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give pale yellow oil (0.8g), which was dissolved in THF (50ml). To the solution were added triphenylphosphine (1.1g) and water (catalytic amount), and the mixture was heated at 50°C for 1.5 hours. The solvent was evaporated and, to the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol/triethylamine) to give pale yellow oil (0.7g), which was dissolved in THF (15ml). To the solution were added pyridine (0.7ml) and acetic anhydride (0.25ml), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. The solvent was evaporated and, to the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give methyl 1-(N-acetylglycyl)-7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-

carboxylate (0.67g) as colorless crystals.

mp 130 - 134°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.26 - 1.69 (4H, m), 2.01 (3H, s), 2.76 - 3.12 (3H, m), 3.51 - 3.62 (3H, m), 3.78 - 3.83 (5H, m), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 4.33 (1H, dd, J = 4.0, 18.0 Hz), 4.73 - 4.80 (1H, m), 6.42 (1H, br), 7.03 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.28 (1H, d, J = 7.8 Hz), 7.49 - 7.56 (3H, m), 7.65 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.72 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) v: 3316, 2951, 2934, 2870, 1713, 1661 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>28</sub>H<sub>34</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>6</sub>: C, 68.00; H, 6.93; N, 5.66.

Found C, 67.84; H, 6.74; N, 5.61.

#### Reference Example 135

In methanol (50ml) was dissolved methyl 1-(N-acetylglycyl)-7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.2g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (13ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight, concentrated, neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give 1-(N-acetylglycyl)-7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (1.2g) as colorless crystals.

mp 196 - 201°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.26 - 1.69 (4H, m), 2.02 (3H, s), 2.78 - 3.15 (3H, m), 3.53 - 3.62 (3H, m), 3.82 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 4.19 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 4.36 (1H, dd, J = 4.0, 18.0 Hz), 4.75 - 4.82 (1H, m), 6.53 (1H, br), 7.03 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.31 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.50 - 7.58 (3H, m), 7.67 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.81 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) v: 2951, 2872, 1669 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>27</sub>H<sub>32</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>6</sub>: C, 66.86; H, 6.75; N, 5.78.

Found C, 66.65; H, 6.73; N, 5.97.

#### Reference Example 136

In DMF (20ml) were suspended 1-(N-acetylglycyl)-7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.85g), 4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline dihydrochloride (0.52g) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (0.3g). Under ice-cooling, to the suspension were added 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide hydrochloride (1g), triethylamine (1.7ml) and 4-dimethylaminopyridine (catalytic amount), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The solvent was evaporated and, to the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated



and the residue was purified with basic silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol/triethylamine) to give 1-(N-acetylglycyl)-7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (1.1g) as pale yellow amorphous.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.25 - 1.75 (8H, m), 2.05 (3H, s), 2.19 (3H, s), 2.55 - 2.70 (1H, m), 2.86 - 3.14 (3H, m), 3.37 (2H, dt, J = 2.6, 11.0 Hz), 3.53 - 3.71 (5H, m), 3.82 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.01 - 4.07 (2H, m), 4.11 - 4.28 (3H, m), 4.75 - 4.81 (1H, m), 6.49 (1H, br), 7.02 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.24 - 7.33 (4H, m), 7.43 - 7.61 (6H, m), 8.09 (1H, s).

#### Reference Example 137

In toluene (25ml) were suspended methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-chloroacetyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.75g) and thioacetamide (0.36g). The suspension was heated at 90°C for 1 hour and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-methylthiazol-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.17g) as yellow

oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.26 - 1.65 (4H, m), 2.67 (3H, s), 2.86 (2H, t, J = 5.3 Hz), 3.56 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.80 (3H, s), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 3.95 (2H, t, J = 5.3 Hz), 4.17 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 5.92 (1H, s), 7.00 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.43 (2H, s), 7.51 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.62 (1H, s), 7.77 (1H, s).

Reference Example 138

In dichloromethane (15ml) was dissolved methyl 7-bromo-1-phenyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.68g). Under ice-cooling, to the solution was added dropwise chlorosulfonic acid (0.32ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes and, to the mixture was additionally added chlorosulfonic acid (0.2ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 10 minutes. The reaction solution was added dropwise to aqueous ammonia (10ml) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes. The solvent was evaporated and, to the residue was added hot ethyl acetate. The insolubles were filtered and the solvent in the filtrate was evaporated. The precipitated methyl 7-bromo-1-(4-sulfamoylphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.33g) was collected by filtration and washed with ethyl acetate-hexane to give the carboxylate as yellow crystals.

mp 200 - 203°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 2.89 (2H, t, J = 5.5 Hz), 3.78 (3H, s),  
3.84 (2H, t, J = 5.5 Hz), 4.65 (2H, s), 6.87 (2H, d, J =  
9.2 Hz), 7.18 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.43 (1H, dd, J = 2.2,  
5 8.4 Hz), 7.60 (1H, s), 7.68 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.73 (2H,  
d, J = 9.2 Hz).

IR (KBr) v: 1713 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>18</sub>H<sub>17</sub>BrN<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub>S: C, 49.44; H, 3.92; N, 6.41.

Found C, 49.30; H, 4.20; N, 6.04.

10 Reference Example 139

A mixture of methyl 7-bromo-1-(4-sulfamoylphenyl)-  
2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.31g), 4-(2-  
butoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (0.22g), 1M potassium  
carbonate solution (3ml), ethanol (5ml) and toluene  
15 (50ml) was stirred under argon atmosphere at room  
temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added  
tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0.04g), and the  
mixture was refluxed under argon atmosphere for 3 hours  
and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was  
20 washed with water and saturated brine and dried with  
anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated  
under reduced pressure and the residue was purified with  
silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane)  
to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(4-  
25 sulfamoylphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-

carboxylate (0.34g) as yellow crystals.

mp 163 - 165°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.35 - 1.46  
(2H, m), 1.56 - 1.66 (2H, m), 2.92 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz),  
5 3.57 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.79 (3H, s), 3.79 - 3.92 (4H, m),  
4.18 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.73 (2H, s), 6.91 (2H, d, J =  
9.2 Hz), 7.03 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.34 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz),  
7.50 - 7.56 (3H, m), 7.71 - 7.77 (4H, m).

IR (KBr) v: 2957, 2934, 2870, 1705, 1590, 1493 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

10 Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>34</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>6</sub>S·0.25H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 65.43; H, 6.22; N,  
5.09. Found C, 65.04; H, 6.35; N, 4.91.

#### Reference Example 140

In methanol (50ml) and THF (15ml) was dissolved  
methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(4-  
15 sulfamoylphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-  
carboxylate (0.34g). To the solution was added 1N sodium  
hydroxide solution (10ml), and the mixture was refluxed  
for 2 hours, concentrated, neutralized with 1N  
hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The  
20 organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine  
and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent  
was evaporated to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(4-  
sulfamoylphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-  
carboxylic acid (0.3g) as yellow crystals.  
25 mp 185 - 195°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.1 Hz), 1.27 - 1.46 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.66 (2H, m), 2.92 (2H, t-like), 3.57 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.82 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 3.90 (2H, t-like), 4.19 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 4.73 (2H, s), 6.93 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.03 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.35 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.52 - 7.56 (3H, m), 7.72 - 7.76 (3H, m), 7.85 (1 H s).  
Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>32</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>6</sub>S: C, 64.91; H, 6.01; N, 5.22.  
Found C, 65.08; H, 6.17; N, 5.03.

## Reference Example 141

10 In dichloromethane (10ml) was dissolved methyl 7-bromo-1-phenyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.4g). Under ice-cooling, to the solution was added dropwise chlorosulfonic acid (0.74ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes and, to the  
15 mixture was additionally added chlorosulfonic acid (0.37ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The reaction solution was added dropwise to 2M dimethylamine solution in methanol (35ml) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred overnight. The  
20 solvent was evaporated and, to the residue was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give methyl 7-bromo-1-(N,N-  
25 dimethyl-4-sulfamoylphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-

4-carboxylate (0.37g) as yellow crystals.

mp 210 - 213°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 2.69 (6H, s), 2.90 (2H, t, J = 5.1 Hz), 3.79 (3H, s), 3.84 (2H, t, J = 5.1 Hz), 6.89 (2H, d, J = 9.2 Hz), 7.21 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.44 (1H, dd, J = 2.2, 8.4 Hz), 7.57 - 7.62 (3H, m), 7.68 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz).

IR (KBr) v: 2955, 1709, 1595, 1582, 1501, 1483 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>20</sub>H<sub>21</sub>BrN<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub>S: C, 51.62; H, 4.55; N, 6.02.

Found C, 51.60; H, 4.55; N, 5.78.

#### 10 Reference Example 142

A mixture of methyl 7-bromo-1-(N,N-dimethyl-4-sulfamoylphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.35g), 4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (0.19g), 1M potassium carbonate solution (2ml), ethanol (2ml) and toluene (50ml) was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0.04g), and the mixture was refluxed under argon atmosphere for 6 hours and extracted with ethyl acetate.

20 The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give methyl 7-

25 [4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(N,N-dimethyl-4-

sulfamoylphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.35g) as colorless crystals.

mp 150 - 153°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.35 - 1.66 (4H, m), 2.69 (6H, s), 2.93 (2H, t-like), 3.57 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.80 (3H, s), 3.80 - 3.89 (4H, m), 4.19 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.94 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.03 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.38 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.51 - 7.62 (5H, m), 7.71 (1H, s), 7.78 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) ν: 2959, 2868, 1709, 1590, 1495 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>32</sub>H<sub>38</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>6</sub>S: C, 66.41; H, 6.62; N, 4.84. Found C, 66.25; H, 6.89; N, 4.76.

#### Reference Example 143

In methanol (50ml) and THF(50ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(N,N-dimethyl-4-sulfamoylphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.34g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (10ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature at 60°C for 1 hour, concentrated, neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(N,N-dimethyl-4--sulfamoylphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.33g) as

yellow crystals.

mp 236 - 238°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.1 Hz), 1.30 - 1.50 (2H, m), 1.56 - 1.66 (2H, m), 2.69 (6H, s), 2.93 (2H, t-like), 3.57 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.83 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.91 (2H, t-like), 4.19 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 6.96 (2H, d, J = 9.2 Hz), 7.03 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.39 (1H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.52 - 7.63 (5H, m), 7.72 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.88 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) v: 2959, 2934, 2872, 1671, 1590, 1501, 1491 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>36</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>6</sub>S: C, 65.94; H, 6.43; N, 4.96.

Found C, 65.82; H, 6.46; N, 4.85.

#### Reference Example 144

In dichloromethane (20ml) was dissolved methyl 7-bromo-1-phenyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1g). Under ice-cooling, to the solution was added dropwise chlorosulfonic acid (0.93ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour, and the reaction solution was added dropwise to 40% methylamine solution in water (25ml) under ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight, concentrated and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give methyl 7-bromo-1-(N-methyl-4-sulfamoylphenyl)-



2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1g) as yellow crystals.

mp 201 - 204°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 2.65 (3H, d, J = 5.4 Hz), 2.90 (2H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.79 (3H, s), 3.84 (2H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 4.23 (1H, q, J = 5.4 Hz), 6.88 (2H, d, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.30 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.44 (1H, dd, J = 2.2, 8.8 Hz), 7.57 - 7.69 (4H, m).

IR (KBr) ν: 3277, 2953, 1705, 1595, 1501 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>19</sub>H<sub>19</sub>BrN<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub>S: C, 50.56; H, 4.24; N, 6.21. Found C, 50.62; H, 4.20; N, 6.48.

#### Reference Example 145

A mixture of methyl 7-bromo-1-(N-methyl-4-sulfamoylphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1g), 4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (0.69g), 1M potassium carbonate solution (8ml), ethanol (8ml) and toluene (100ml) was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0.13g), and the mixture was refluxed under argon atmosphere for 2.5 hours and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl

acetate/hexane) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(N-methyl-4-sulfamoylphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.1g) as colorless crystals.

5 mp 142 - 146°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.35 - 1.46 (2H, m), 1.57 - 1.66 (2H, m), 2.65 (3H, d, J = 5.6 Hz), 2.92 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.56 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.80 (3H, s), 3.80 - 3.92 (4H, m), 4.10 - 4.21 (3H, m), 6.92 (2H, 10 d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.03 (2H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.36 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.50 - 7.56 (3H, m), 7.67 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.71 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.77 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) v: 2957, 1709, 1590, 1495 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>36</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>6</sub>S: C, 65.94; H, 6.43; N, 4.69.

15 Found C, 65.76; H, 6.36; N, 4.81.

#### Reference Example 146

In methanol (100ml) and THF (100ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(N-methyl-4-sulfamoylphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4- 20 carboxylate (1.1g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (19ml), and the mixture was heated at 50°C for 6 hours, concentrated, neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine 25 and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent

was evaporated to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(N-methyl-4-sulfamoylphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1g) as pale yellow crystals.

mp 208 - 210°C.

5 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.1 Hz), 1.31 - 1.50 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.69 (2H, m), 2.65 (3H, d, J = 5.6 Hz), 2.92 (2H, t-like), 3.57 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.82 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.91 (2H, t-like), 4.19 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.27 (1H, q, J = 5.6 Hz), 6.94 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.03 (2H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.37 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.52 - 7.56 (3H, m), 7.67 (2H, d, J = 9.2 Hz), 7.71 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.86 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) v: 2595, 2932, 2872, 1682, 1493 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>34</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>6</sub>S: C, 65.43; H, 6.22; N, 5.09.

15 Found C, 65.18; H, 6.01; N, 5.02.

Working Example 49 (Production of Compound 49)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 1-allyl-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (180mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (152mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour. The solvent and excess thionyl chloride were evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was  
25 suspended in tetrahydrofuran (30ml), and the suspension

was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl N-(  
 (tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (113mg) and  
 triethylamine (516mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml) at 0°C.  
 The suspension was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at  
 5 room temperature overnight, to the mixture was added  
 water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate  
 twice. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine  
 and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was  
 evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue  
 10 was separated and purified with silica gel column  
 chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 8), which  
 was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 1-  
 allyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-  
 yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-  
 15 dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 49) (125mg)  
 as yellow crystals.  
 mp 110.0 - 111.0°C  
<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (t, 3H, J = 7.6 Hz), 1.59 -  
 1.80 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.65 (br, 1H), 2.91 (br, 2H),  
 20 3.30 - 3.43 (m, 4H) 3.51 (t, 2H, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.57 (s, 2H),  
 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.97 - 4.06 (m, 4H), 4.16 (t, 2H,  
 J = 5.2 Hz), 5.28 (d, 2H, J = 12.8 Hz), 5.95 (br, 1H), 6.89  
 (d, 1H, J = 8.2 Hz), 6.99 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.30 (d, 2H,  
 J = 8.4 Hz), 7.37 - 7.56 (m, 8H).  
 25 Anal. Calcd. C<sub>38</sub>H<sub>47</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub> Calcd. C, 74.18; H, 7.75; N, 6.83.

Found C, 73.87; H, 7.95; N, 6.78.

Working Example 50 (Production of Compound 50)

In toluene (15ml), ethanol (1.5ml) and water (1.5ml) were suspended 1-allyl-7-bromo-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (262mg), 4-butoxyethoxyphenyl borate (169mg) and potassium carbonate (196mg), and the suspension was stirred under argon atmosphere for 30 minutes. Then, to the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (45mg), and the mixture was heated under argon atmosphere at 100°C for 6 hours. After allowing to cool, water was added thereto, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 16), which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 1-allyl-7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 50) (46mg) as yellow crystals.

mp 103.0 - 104.0°C

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.34 -

1.49 (m, 2H), 1.58 - 1.82 (m, 6 Hz), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.67 (br, 1H), 2.90 (br, 2H), 3.32 - 3.43 (m, 4H), 3.52 - 3.58 (m, 4H), 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.93 - 4.10 (m, 4H), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 4.6 Hz), 5.29 (d, 2H, J = 14.0 Hz), 5.95 (br, 1H),  
5 6.90 (d, 1H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.98 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.30 (d, 2H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.38 - 7.56 (m, 8H).

Working Example 51 (Production of Compound 51)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-  
10 benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (190mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (139mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour. The solvent and excess thionyl chloride were evaporated  
15 under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was suspended in tetrahydrofuran (25ml), and the suspension was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (104mg) and triethylamine (476mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml) at 0°C.  
20 The suspension was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 3.5 hours, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated  
25 under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was

separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 8), which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 51) (169mg) as yellow crystals.

mp 118.0 - 119.0°C

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.59 - 1.82 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.65 (br, 1H), 2.89 (br, 2H), 3.30 - 3.42 (m, 4H), 3.51 (t, 2H, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.57 (s, 2H), 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.89 (s, 3H), 4.04 (d, 2H, J = 11.0 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.59 (s, 2H), 6.82 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.92 - 6.99 (m, 4H), 7.16 (d, 1H, J = 6.6 Hz), 7.28 - 7.35 (m, 4H), 7.43 - 7.56 (m, 7H).

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>43</sub>H<sub>51</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub> · 0.2H<sub>2</sub>O Calcd. C, 74.47; H, 7.42; N, 6.06. Found C, 74.20; H, 7.53; N, 6.02.

#### Working Example 52 (Production of Compound 52)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (230mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (164mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour. The solvent and excess thionyl chloride were evaporated

under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was suspended in tetrahydrofuran (25ml), and the suspension was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (121mg) and triethylamine (558mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml) at 0°C. The suspension was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 3.5 hours, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 8), which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 52) (236mg) as yellow crystals.

mp 111.5 - 112.5°C

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.25 - 1.44 (m, 2H), 1.50 - 1.80 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.65 (br, 1H), 2.90 (br, 2H), 3.32 - 3.42 (m, 4H), 3.52 - 3.57 (m, 4H), 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.89 (s, 3H), 4.04 (d, 2H, J = 11.8 Hz), 4.15 (t, 2H, J = 5.6 Hz), 4.59 (s, 2H), 6.82 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.92 - 6.99 (m, 4H), 7.16 (d, 1H, J = 6.6



Hz), 7.26 - 7.32 (m, 4H), 7.44 - 7.57 (m, 7H).

Anal. Calcd.  $C_{44}H_{53}N_3O_5 \cdot 0.1H_2O$  Calcd. C, 74.88; H, 7.60; N, 5.96: Found C, 74.62; H, 7.39; N, 5.89.

Working Example 53 (Production of Compound 53)

5 One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 1-(3-methoxybenzyl)-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (110mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (80mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the  
10 mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour. The solvent and excess thionyl chloride were evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was suspended in tetrahydrofuran (25ml), and the suspension was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-  
15 (tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (60mg) and triethylamine (273mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml) at 0°C. The suspension was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 5 hours, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate.  
20 The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 8), which  
25 was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 1-

(3-methoxybenzyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 53) (62mg) as yellow crystals.

5 mp 113.0 - 114.0°C

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.56 - 1.80 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.62 (br, 1H), 2.86 (br, 2H), 3.32 - 3.45 (m, 4H), 3.51 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.57 (s, 2H), 3.78 - 3.83 (m, 5H), 4.03 (d, 2H, J = 9.8 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.58 (s, 2H), 6.82 - 6.92 (m, 4H), 6.98 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.26 - 7.38 (m, 4H), 7.45 - 7.56 (m, 7H).

10

Working Example 54 (Production of Compound 54)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (150mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (107mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour. The solvent and excess thionyl chloride were evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was suspended in tetrahydrofuran (25ml), and the suspension was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (79mg) and triethylamine (363mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml) at 0°C.

15

20

25 The suspension was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at

room temperature overnight, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated  
 5 under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 8), which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-  
 (4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-methoxybenzyl)-N-[4-[[N-  
 10 methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 54) (29mg) as yellow crystals.

mp 107.5 - 108.5°C

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.33 -  
 15 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.57 - 1.80 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.64 (br, 1H), 2.86 (br, 2H), 3.32 - 3.45 (m, 4H), 3.55 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.57 (s, 2H), 3.78 - 3.83 (m, 5H), 4.03 (d, 2H, J = 9.4 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.58 (s, 2H), 6.82 - 6.92 (m, 4H), 6.97 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.26 - 7.39 (m, 4H),  
 20 7.44 - 7.55 (m, 7H).

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>44</sub>H<sub>53</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub> Calcd. C, 75.08; H, 7.59; N, 5.97.  
 Found C, 74.74; H, 7.52; N, 5.91.

#### Working Example 55 (Production of Compound 55)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 1-(4-  
 25 methoxybenzyl)-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-

benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (110mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (96mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour.

5 The solvent and excess thionyl chloride were evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was suspended in tetrahydrofuran (30ml), and the suspension was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (71mg) and  
10 triethylamine (328mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml) at 0°C. The suspension was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and  
15 dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 8), which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 1-  
20 (4-methoxybenzyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 55) (86mg) as yellow crystals.

mp 160.0 - 161.0°C

25 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (t, 3H, J = 7.8 Hz), 1.58 -

1.80 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.64 (br, 1H), 2.81 (br, 2H),  
3.32 - 3.42 (m, 4H), 3.51 (t, 2H,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.57 (s, 2H),  
3.78 - 3.82 (m, 5H), 4.03 (d, 2H,  $J = 9.4$  Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H,  
 $J = 5.2$  Hz), 4.54 (s, 2H), 6.89 - 7.00 (m, 5H), 7.22 - 7.41  
5 (m, 5H), 7.45 - 7.56 (m, 7H).

Anal. Calcd.  $C_{43}H_{51}N_3O_5 \cdot 0.4H_2O$  Calcd. C, 74.08; H, 7.43; N,  
6.03. Found C, 73.82; H, 7.60; N, 5.99.

#### Working Example 56 (Production of Compound 56)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 7-(4-  
10 butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-  
benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (140mg) in tetrahydrofuran  
(10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (100mg) was added at 0°C,  
the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the  
mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour.  
15 The solvent and excess thionyl chloride were evaporated  
under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was  
suspended in tetrahydrofuran (25ml), and the suspension  
was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-  
(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (74mg) and  
20 triethylamine (344mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml) at 0°C.  
The suspension was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at  
room temperature for 3.5 hours, to the mixture was added  
water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate.  
The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and  
25 dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated

under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 8), which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-

5 (4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 56) (89mg) as yellow crystals.

mp 151.0 - 152.0°C

10 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz),, 1.26 - 1.46 (m, 2H), 1.50 - 1.80 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.64 (br, 1H), 2.81 (br, 2H), 3.28 - 3.42 (m, 4H), 3.52 - 3.60 (m, 4H), 3.77 - 3.82 (m, 5H), 4.03 (d, 2H, J = 10.2 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.54 (s, 2H), 6.89 - 7.22 (m, 5H),

15 7.20 - 7.40 (m, 5H), 7.45 - 7.56 (m, 7H).

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>44</sub>H<sub>53</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub> · 0.3H<sub>2</sub>O Calcd. C, 74.50; H, 7.62; N, 5.93. Found C, 74.34; H, 7.62; N, 5.96.

#### Working Example 57 (Production of Compound 57)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-thienylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (250mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (193mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour.

25 The solvent and excess thionyl chloride were evaporated

under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was suspended in tetrahydrofuran (25ml), and the suspension was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (143mg) and triethylamine (655mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml) at 0°C. The suspension was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 8), which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-thienylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 57) (260mg) as yellow crystals.

mp 131.5 - 132.5°C

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.58 - 1.80 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.64 (br, 1H), 2.84 (br, 2H), 3.32 - 3.42 (m, 4H), 3.51 (t, 2H, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.57 (s, 2H), 3.81 (t, 2H, J = 4.2 Hz), 4.03 (d, 2H, J = 10.6 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.58 (s, 2H), 6.93 - 7.06 (m, 4H), 7.16 (br, 1H), 7.28 - 7.42 (m, 4H), 7.45 - 7.55 (m, 7H).

Anal. Calcd.  $C_{40}H_{47}N_3O_4S \cdot 0.1H_2O$  Calcd. C, 71.95; H, 7.13; N, 6.29. Found C, 71.66; H, 7.12; N, 6.22.

Working Example 58 (Production of Compound 58)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-thienylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (250mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (187mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour. The solvent and excess thionyl chloride were evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was suspended in tetrahydrofuran (25ml), and the suspension was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (131mg) and triethylamine (638mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml) at 0°C. The suspension was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 8), which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-



(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(3-thienylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 58) (233mg) as yellow crystals.

mp 122.0 - 123.0°C

- 5 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.34 - 1.50 (m, 2H), 1.60 - 1.75 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.60 (br, 1H), 2.84 (br, 2H), 3.32 - 3.45 (m, 4H), 3.52 - 3.58 (m, 4H), 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.0 Hz), 4.05 (d, 2H, J = 12.2 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.58 (s, 2H), 6.93 - 7.06 (m, 4H),  
10 7.16 (br, 1H), 7.32 - 7.42 (m, 4H), 7.45 - 7.55 (m, 7H).  
Anal. Calcd. C<sub>41</sub>H<sub>49</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>S Calcd. C, 72.43; H, 7.26; N, 6.18.  
Found C, 72.03; H, 7.44; N, 6.12.

#### Working Example 59 (Production of Compound 59)

- One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-thienylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (240mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (184mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour.  
15  
20 The solvent and excess thionyl chloride were evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was suspended in tetrahydrofuran (30ml), and the suspension was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (137mg) and  
25 triethylamine (629mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml) at 0°C.

The suspension was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 8), which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-thienylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 59) (152mg) as yellow crystals.

mp 104.5 - 105.5°C

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.57 - 1.80 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.62 (br, 1H), 2.88 (br, 2H), 3.32 - 3.41 (m, 4H), 3.51 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.57 (s, 2H), 3.81 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.04 (d, 2H, J = 11.4 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.73 (s, 2H), 6.96 - 7.05 (m, 5H), 7.26 - 7.32 (m, 3H), 7.40 - 7.60 (m, 8H).

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>40</sub>H<sub>47</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>S Calcd. C, 72.15; H, 7.11; N, 6.31. Found C, 71.87; H, 6.92; N, 6.26.

Working Example 60 (Production of Compound 60)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-thienylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-

benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (110mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (82mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour.

5 The solvent and excess thionyl chloride were evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was suspended in tetrahydrofuran (20ml), and the suspension was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (61mg) and  
10 triethylamine (279mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml) at 0°C. The suspension was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 3 hours, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and  
15 dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 8), which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-  
20 (4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(2-thienylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 60) (86mg) as yellow crystals.

mp 84.0 - 85.0°C

25 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 2H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.34 -

1.50 (m, 2H), 1.59- 1.80 (m, 6H), 2.22 (s, 3H), 2.66 (br, 1H), 2.89 (br, 2H), 3.30 - 3.45 (m, 4H), 3.55 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.58 (s, 2H), 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.0 Hz), 4.04 (d, 2H, J = 12.6 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.4 Hz), 4.73 (s, 2H),  
5 6.96 - 7.06 (m, 5H), 7.29 - 7.33 (m, 3H), 7.45 - 7.56 (m, 8H).

Anal. Calcd.  $C_{41}H_{49}N_3O_4S$  Calcd. C, 71.29; H, 7.33; N, 6.08.  
Found C, 71.14; H, 7.12; N, 6.01.

Working Example 61 (Production of Compound 61)

10 One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 1-(3-furylmethyl)-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (200mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (159mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the  
15 mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour. The solvent and excess thionyl chloride were evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was suspended in tetrahydrofuran (25ml), and the suspension was added to a solution of 4-[N-methyl-N-  
20 (tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (118mg) and triethylamine (546mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml) at 0°C. The suspension was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 4.5 hours, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate.  
25 The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and

dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 8), which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 1-(3-furylmethyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 61) (153mg) as yellow crystals.

mp 115.0 - 116.0°C

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.59 - 1.85 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.65 (br, 1H), 2.85 (br, 2H), 3.32 - 3.43 (m, 4H), 3.51 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.57 (s, 2H), 3.81 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 4.04 (d, 2H, J = 14.6 Hz), 4.17 (t, 2H, J = 5.6 Hz), 4.41 (s, 2H), 6.40 (s, 1H), 6.96 - 7.01 (m, 3H), 7.30 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.43 - 7.56 (m, 10H).

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>40</sub>H<sub>47</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub> Calcd. C, 73.93; H, 7.29; N, 6.47. Found C, 73.53; H, 7.32; N, 6.38.

Working Example 62 (Production of Compound 62)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-furylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (200mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (155mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the

mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour. The solvent and excess thionyl chloride were evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was suspended in tetrahydrofuran (25ml), and the suspension was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (115mg) and triethylamine (526mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml) at 0°C. The suspension was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 4.5 hours, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 8), which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-furylmethyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 62) (125mg) as yellow crystals.

mp 116.0 - 117.0°C

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.25 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.58 - 1.81 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.65 (br, 1H), 2.84 (br, 2H), 3.32 - 3.43 (m, 4H), 3.56 (t, 2H, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.57 (s, 2H), 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.04 (d,

2H,  $J = 10.6$  Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.4$  Hz), 4.41 (s, 2H), 6.40 (d, 1H,  $J = 0.8$  Hz), 6.96 - 7.01 (m, 3H), 7.30 (d, 2H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.38 - 7.56 (m, 10H).

Anal. Calcd.  $C_{41}H_{49}N_3O_5 \cdot 0.2H_2O$  Calcd. C, 73.81; H, 7.41; N, 6.30. Found C, 73.71; H, 7.43; N, 6.18.

Working Example 63 (Production of Compound 63)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-ethoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (200mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (138mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour. The solvent and excess thionyl chloride were evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was suspended in tetrahydrofuran (30ml), and the suspension was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (103mg) and triethylamine (476mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml) at 0°C. The suspension was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column

chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 8), which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-ethoxybenzyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 63) (161mg) as yellow crystals.

mp 104.5 - 105.5°C

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.32 - 1.47 (m, 5H), 1.56 - 1.80 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.63 (br, 1H), 2.90 (br, 2H), 3.32 - 3.42 (m, 4H), 3.52 - 3.57 (m, 4H), 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.01 - 4.18 (m, 6H), 4.60 (s, 2H), 6.84 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.89 - 6.99 (m, 5H), 7.16 (d, 1H, J = 6.2 Hz), 7.27 - 7.37 (m, 4H), 7.44 - 7.56 (m, 6H).

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>45</sub>H<sub>55</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub> Calcd. C, 75.28; H, 7.72; N, 5.85.

Found C, 74.94; H, 7.77; N, 5.67.

#### Working Example 64 (Production of Compound 64)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-propoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (200mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (134mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour. The solvent and excess thionyl chloride were evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was suspended in tetrahydrofuran (30ml), and the suspension



was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (100mg) and triethylamine (455mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml) at 0°C. The suspension was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 4.5 hours, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 8), which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(3-propoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 64) (207mg) as yellow crystals.

mp 114.5 - 115.5°C

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.02 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.57 - 1.85 (m, 8H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.63 (br, 1H), 2.86 (br, 2H), 3.30 - 3.46 (m, 4H), 3.52 - 3.59 (m, 4H), 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.0 Hz), 3.91 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 4.04 (d, 2H, J = 10.4 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.57 (s, 2H), 6.85 - 7.00 (m, 6H), 7.26 - 7.40 (m, 4H), 7.45 - 7.56 (m, 7H).

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>46</sub>H<sub>57</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub> Calcd. C, 75.48; H, 7.85; N, 5.74.

Found C, 75.21; H, 7.85; N, 5.64.

Working Example 65 (Production of Compound 65)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2,5-dimethoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-  
5 1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (200mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (134mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour. The solvent and excess thionyl  
10 chloride were evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was suspended in tetrahydrofuran (30ml), and the suspension was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (100mg) and triethylamine (455mg) in tetrahydrofuran  
15 (10ml) at 0°C. The suspension was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was  
20 evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 8), which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2,5-dimethoxybenzyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-  
25

dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 65) (210mg)  
as yellow crystals.

mp 143.0 - 144.0°C

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.32 -  
5 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.56 - 1.80 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.65 (br,  
1H), 2.90 (br, 2H), 3.32 - 3.47 (m, 4H), 3.55 (t, 2H, J =  
2.0 Hz), 3.57 (s, 2H), 3.71 (s, 3H), 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.0  
Hz), 3.84 (s, 3H), 4.04 (d, 2H, J = 14.2 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H,  
J = 5.6 Hz), 4.56 (s, 2H), 6.76 - 6.89 (m, 4H), 6.97 (d, 2H,  
10 J = 8.8 Hz), 7.26 - 7.36 (m, 3H), 7.44 - 7.56 (m, 7H).

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>45</sub>H<sub>35</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>6</sub> Calcd. C, 73.64; H, 7.55; N, 5.73.  
Found C, 73.37; H, 7.63; N, 5.66.

Working Example 66 (Production of Compound 66)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 7-(4-  
15 butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-  
benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (200mg) in tetrahydrofuran  
(10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (146mg) was added at 0°C,  
the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the  
mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour.  
20 The solvent and excess thionyl chloride were evaporated  
under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was  
suspended in tetrahydrofuran (30ml), and the suspension  
was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-  
(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (108mg) and  
25 triethylamine (496mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml) at 0°C.

The suspension was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and

5 dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 8) to give

10 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 66) (139mg) as yellow amorphous.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.30 - 1.50 (m, 2H), 1.51 - 1.82 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.64 (br, 1H), 2.88 (br, 2H), 3.30 - 3.45 (m, 4H), 3.50 - 3.62 (m, 4H), 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 4.04 (d, 2H, J = 11.0 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.65 (s, 2H), 6.86 (d, 1H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.98 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.07 - 7.16 (m, 2H), 7.20 - 7.60 (m, 12H).

20 Anal. Calcd. C<sub>43</sub>H<sub>50</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>·0.8H<sub>2</sub>O Calcd. C, 73.13; H, 7.14; N, 5.95: Found, C, 72.93; H, 7.22; N, 5.79.

#### Working Example 67 (Production of Compound 67)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(1-methylimidazol-2-yl)methyl]-

25 2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (140mg) in

tetrahydrofuran (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (41mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour. Then, this mixture was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (75mg) and triethylamine (346mg) in tetrahydrofuran (30ml) at 0°C. The suspension was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was separated and purified with basic silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate), which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(1-methylimidazol-2-yl)methyl]-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 67) (65mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.30 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.55 - 1.80 (m, 6H), 2.20 (s, 3H), 2.51 (br, 2H), 2.64 (br, 1H), 3.30 - 3.45 (m, 4H), 3.52 - 3.59 (m, 5H), 3.81 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.04 (d, 2H, J = 10.2 Hz), 4.17 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.62 (s, 2H), 4.79 (s, 2H), 6.90

(d, 1H, J = 1.2 Hz), 6.97 - 7.01 (m, 3H), 7.07 (d, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.27 - 7.32 (m, 2H), 7.46 - 7.57 (m, 8H).

Working Example 68 (Production of Compound 68)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(thiazol-2-yl)methyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (70mg) in dichloromethane (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (23mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour. Then, this solution was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (42mg) and triethylamine (385mg) in dichloromethane (20ml) at 0°C. The suspension was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 3) to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(thiazol-2-yl)methyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 68) (66mg) as yellow amorphous.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.33 -

1.45 (m, 2H), 1.58 - 1.80 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.65 (br, 1H), 2.95 (br, 2H), 3.30 - 3.57 (m, 8H), 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.0 Hz), 4.04 (d, 2H, J = 10.4 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.88 (s, 2H), 6.96 - 7.03 (m, 3H), 7.26 - 7.60 (m, 8H),  
5 7.80 (d, 1H, J = 3.2 Hz).

Anal. Calcd.  $C_{40}H_{48}N_4O_4S$  Calcd. C, 70.56; H, 7.11; N, 8.23.  
Found C, 70.38; H, 7.12; N, 8.18.

Working Example 69 (Production of Compound 69)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(1-methylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (380mg) in dichloromethane (20ml). Then, thionyl chloride (124mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour. Then, this solution was added to  
10 a solution of 4-[[N-methyl N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (229mg) and triethylamine (2.1g) in dichloromethane (30ml) at 0°C. The suspension was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature  
15 overnight, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was separated and  
20 purified with silica gel column chromatography  
25

(methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 3), which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(1-methylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 69) (338mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.50 - 1.80 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.63 (br, 1H), 2.85 (br, 2H), 3.28 - 3.45 (m, 4H), 3.52 - 3.59 (m, 4H), 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.0 Hz), 3.90 (s, 3H), 4.04 (d, 2H, J = 11.6 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.4 Hz), 4.44 (s, 2H), 6.96 - 7.01 (m, 3H), 7.15 - 7.22 (m, 3H), 7.26 - 7.39 (m, 3H), 7.45 - 7.55 (m, 9H).

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>41</sub>H<sub>51</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>4</sub> Calcd. C, 72.64; H, 7.58; N, 10.33. Found C, 72.34; H, 7.59; N, 10.34.

#### Working Example 70 (Production of Compound 70)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(1-methylpyrazol-5-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (200mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (150mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour. Then, this mixture was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (111mg) and triethylamine (1.0g)



in tetrahydrofuran (25ml) at 0°C. The suspension was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was separated and purified with basic silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 3) to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(1-methylpyrazol-5-yl)methyl]-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 70) (60mg) as yellow amorphous.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.50 - 1.80 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.40 - 2.70 (m, 3H), 3.30 - 3.45 (m, 4H), 3.52 - 3.59 (m, 4H), 3.79 - 3.84 (m, 5H), 4.04 (d, 2H, J = 10.6 Hz), 4.17 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.55 (s, 2H), 6.25 (d, 1H, J = 1.8 Hz), 6.93 - 7.02 (m, 3H), 7.30 (d, 2H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.42 - 7.57 (m, 9H).

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>41</sub>H<sub>51</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>4</sub> · 0.2H<sub>2</sub>O Calcd. C, 72.26; H, 7.60; N, 10.28. Found C, 72.02; H, 7.46; N, 10.03.

#### Working Example 71 (Production of Compound 71)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(3,5-dimethylisoxazol-4-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid

(140mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (102mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour. Then, this mixture was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (75mg) and triethylamine (690mg) in tetrahydrofuran (25ml) at 0°C. The suspension was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 3) to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(3,5-dimethylisoxazol-4-yl)methyl]-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 71) (45mg) as yellow amorphous.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.33 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.50 - 1.80 (m, 6H), 2.22 (s, 6H), 2.41 (s, 3H), 2.67 (br, 2H), 3.20 (br, 2H), 3.30 - 3.44 (m, 2H), 3.52 - 3.59 (m, 4H), 3.81 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.04 (d, 2H, J = 9.2 Hz), 4.17 (t, 2H, J = 5.4 Hz), 4.29 (s, 2H), 6.95 - 7.02 (m, 3H), 7.31 (d, 2H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.42 - 7.57 (m, 8H).

Anal. Calcd.  $C_{42}H_{52}N_4O_5 \cdot 0.2H_2O$  Calcd. C, 72.42; H, 7.52; N, 8.04. Found C, 72.15; H, 7.72; N, 7.81.

Working Example 72 (Production of Compound 72)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-furylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (200mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (155mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour. Then, the solvent and excess thionyl chloride were evaporated, and the resulting residue was suspended in tetrahydrofuran (15ml) and added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (115mg) and triethylamine (1.1g) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml) at 0°C. The mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 2.5 hours, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 8), which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-furylmethyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-

dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 72) (199mg)  
as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.37 -  
1.48 (m, 2H), 1.58 - 1.80 (m, 6H), 2.22 (s, 3H), 2.65 (br,  
5 1H), 2.85 (br, 2H), 3.27 - 3.46 (m, 4H), 3.52 - 3.57 (m,  
4H), 3.81 (t, 2H, J = 4.6 Hz), 4.03 (d, 2H, J = 11.8 Hz),  
4.16 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.51 (s, 2H), 6.29 (d, 1H, J =  
3.2 Hz), 6.38 (dd, 1H, J = 2.8, 1.8 Hz), 6.98 (d, 2H, J =  
8.8 Hz), 7.09 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.31 (d, 2H, J = 8.6 Hz),  
10 7.40 - 7.56 (m, 9H).

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>41</sub>H<sub>49</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub> · 0.1H<sub>2</sub>O Calcd. C, 73.97; H, 7.42; N,  
6.31. Found C, 73.77; H, 7.24; N, 6.28.

Working Example 73 (Production of Compound 73)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 7-(4-  
15 butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-pyridylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-  
benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (50mg) in dichloromethane  
(5ml). Then, thionyl chloride (17mg) was added at 0°C,  
the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the  
mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour.  
20 Then, this solution was added to a solution of 4-[[N-  
methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline  
(31mg) and triethylamine (287mg) in dichloromethane  
(15ml) at 0°C. The mixture was stirred under nitrogen  
atmosphere at room temperature overnight, to the mixture  
25 was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl

acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 3) to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(2-pyridylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 73) (31mg) as yellow amorphous.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.30 - 1.44 (m, 2H), 1.52 - 1.82 (m, 6H), 2.22 (s, 3H), 2.65 (br, 1H), 2.93 (br, 2H), 3.30 - 3.58 (m, 8H), 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 4.04 (d, 2H, J = 10.6 Hz), 4.15 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.73 (s, 2H), 6.85 (d, 1H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.97 (d, 2H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.20 - 7.37 (m, 5H), 7.44 - 7.71 (m, 8H), 8.65 (d, 1H, J = 5.2 Hz).

#### Working Example 74 (Production of Compound 74)

To a solution of 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (150mg) and 1-methylpyrrol-2-carboxyaldehyde (140mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane (10ml) was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (326mg). The mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 4 days and, then, water was added thereto, and the mixture was

extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 6) to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(1-methylpyrrol-2-yl)methyl]-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 74) (8mg) as yellow amorphous.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.30 - 1.49 (m, 2H), 1.54 - 1.85 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.50 (br, 2H), 2.65 (br, 1H), 3.25 - 3.59 (m, 11H), 3.81 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 4.04 (d, 2H, J = 11.8 Hz), 4.17 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.47 (s, 2H), 6.11 (t, 1H, J = 2.8 Hz), 6.16 (s, 1H), 6.66 (s, 1H), 6.97 - 7.06 (m, 3H), 7.29 (d, 2H, J = 9.8 Hz), 7.46 - 7.56 (m, 8H).

#### Working Example 75 (Production of Compound 75)

To a solution of 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (130mg) and 2-methyloxazol-4-carboxyaldehyde (100mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane (10ml) was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (378mg). The mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 5 days

and, then, water was added thereto, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with basic silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 1 : 2) to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(2-methyloxazol-4-yl)methyl]-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 75) (29mg) as yellow amorphous.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.54 - 1.80 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.48 (s, 3H), 2.63 (br, 1H), 2.90 (br, 2H), 3.30 - 3.45 (m, 4H), 3.52 - 3.58 (m, 4H), 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.6 Hz), 4.04 (d, 2H, J = 11.4 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 4.43 (s, 2H), 6.96 - 7.05 (m, 3H), 7.30 (d, 2H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.38 - 7.55 (m, 9H).

Working Example 76 (Production of Compound 76)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(2-methylthiazol-4-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (150mg) in chloroform (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (47mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen

atmosphere for 1 hour. Then, this solution was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (87mg) and triethylamine (800mg) in chloroform (20ml) at 0°C. The mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 3) to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(2-methylthiazol-4-yl)methyl]-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 76) (37mg) as yellow amorphous.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.50 - 1.82 (m, 6H), 2.22 (s, 3H), 2.66 (br, 1H), 2.74 (s, 3H), 2.91 (br, 2H), 3.30 - 3.48 (m, 4H), 3.52 - 3.58 (m, 4H), 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 4.04 (d, 2H, J = 11.4 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.4 Hz), 4.67 (s, 2H), 6.92 - 7.00 (m, 4H), 7.26 - 7.60 (m, 10H).

Working Example 77 (Production of Compound 77)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(3-methylthiazol-5-yl)methyl]-2,3-



dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (150mg) in dichloromethane (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (47mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour. Then, this solution was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (87mg) and triethylamine (800mg) in dichloromethane (20ml) at 0°C. The mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 3), which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(3-methylisothiazol-5-yl)methyl]-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 77) (96mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 6.8 Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.50 - 1.80 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.49 (s, 3H), 2.64 (br, 1H), 2.94 (br, 2H), 3.31 - 3.41 (m, 4H), 3.52 - 3.58 (m, 4H), 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 4.04 (d, 2H,

$J = 10.2$  Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.4$  Hz), 4.79 (s, 2H), 6.90 - 7.01 (m, 4H), 7.31 (d, 2H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.38 - 7.56 (m, 8H).

Anal. Calcd.  $C_{41}H_{50}N_4O_4S$  Calcd. C, 70.86; H, 7.25; N, 8.06.

5 Found C, 70.57; H, 7.01; N, 8.02.

Working Example 78 (Production of Compound 78)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-thienylcarbonyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (100mg) in dichloromethane  
10 (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (31mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour. Then, this solution was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline  
15 (57mg) and triethylamine (520mg) in dichloromethane (20ml) at 0°C. The mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated  
20 brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 3), which was recrystallized hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-  
25 (4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-

(tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(2-thienylcarbonyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 78) (43mg) as colorless crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.50 - 1.81 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.62 (br, 1H), 3.10 (br, 2H), 3.37 (td, 2H, J = 10.6, 2.8 Hz), 3.53 - 3.59 (m, 4H), 3.82 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 4.04 (d, 2H, J = 12.6 Hz), 4.18 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.80 - 6.83 (m, 2H), 7.02 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.12 (d, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.29 - 7.41 (m, 4H), 7.51 - 7.60 (m, 6H), 7.74 (d, 1H, J = 2.2, Hz).

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>41</sub>H<sub>47</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub>S·0.2H<sub>2</sub>O Calcd. C, 70.60; H, 6.85; N, 6.02. Found C, 70.46; H, 6.89; N, 5.97.

#### Working Example 79 (Production of Compound 79)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(1-ethylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (150mg) in dichloromethane(10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (47mg) was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour. Then, this solution was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (88mg) and triethylamine (805mg) in dichloromethane (20ml) at 0°C. The mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature

overnight, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 3), which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(1-ethylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 79) (99mg) as yellow crystals.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (t, 3H,  $J = 7.4$  Hz), 1.34 - 1.85 (m, 11H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.64 (br, 1H), 2.84 (br, 2H), 3.29 - 3.46 (m, 4H), 3.52 - 3.59 (m, 4H), 3.80 (t, 2H,  $J = 4.4$  Hz), 4.04 (d, 2H,  $J = 9.4$  Hz), 4.11 - 4.18 (m, 4H), 4.44 (s, 2H), 6.96 - 7.01 (m, 3H), 7.28 - 7.36 (m, 3H), 7.40 - 7.56 (m, 9H).

Anal. Calcd.  $\text{C}_{42}\text{H}_{53}\text{N}_5\text{O}_4$  Calcd. C, 72.91; H, 7.72; N, 10.12. Found C, 72.69; H, 8.00; N, 9.92.

#### Working Example 80 (Production of Compound 80)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 2-methyldioxolane-2-ylacetic acid in tetrahydrofuran (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (80mg) was added at  $0^\circ\text{C}$ , the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the

10013361 11204

mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 1 hour. This solution was added to a solution of 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (100mg) and pyridine (528mg) in tetrahydrofuran (20ml) at 0°C. The mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight, the insolubles were filtered off using Celite, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 3), which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[2-(2-methyl-1,3-dioxolan-2-yl)acetyl]-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 80) (60mg) as colorless crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (t, 3H, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.34 - 1.85 (m, 11H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.50 - 3.05 (m, 5H), 3.20 (d, 1H, J = 13.6 Hz), 3.38 (td, 2H, J = 10.8, 3.6 Hz), 3.53 - 3.70 (m, 5H), 3.75 - 3.95 (m, 5H), 4.04 (d, 2H, J = 10.2 Hz), 4.18 (t, 2H, J = 5.4 Hz), 4.90 (d, 1H, J = 13.2 Hz), 7.03 (d, 2H, J = 9.2 Hz), 7.29 - 7.35 (m, 3H), 7.51 - 7.67

(m, 8H).

Anal. Calcd.  $C_{42}H_{53}N_3O_7 \cdot 0.1H_2O$  Calcd. C, 70.68; H, 7.51; N, 5.89. Found C, 70.41; H, 7.33; N, 5.89.

# Working Example 81 (Production of Compound 81)

5 A catalytic amount of N,N-dimethyl-4-aminopyridine was added to a solution of 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-  
 [(4-methylthiazol-5-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-  
 4-carboxylic acid (150mg), 4-[[N-methyl-N-  
 (tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (88mg) and 1-  
 10 hydroxybenzotriazole (96mg) in DMF (15ml), followed by  
 addition of 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropylcarbodiimide  
 (137mg). The mixture was stirred under nitrogen  
 atmosphere at room temperature overnight. To the mixture  
 was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl  
 15 acetated. The organic layer was washed with saturated  
 brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was  
 evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting  
 residue was separated and purified with silica gel column  
 chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 3) to give  
 20 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-  
 (tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-[(4-  
 methylthiazol-5-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-  
 carboxamide (Compound 81) (7mg) as yellow amorphous.

$^1H$ -NMR (200 MHz,  $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.34 -  
 25 1.47 (m, 2H), 1.51 - 1.80 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.52 (s,

3H), 2.63 (br, 1H), 2.84 (br, 2H), 3.33 - 3.42 (m, 4H),  
3.52 - 3.59 (m, 4H), 3.81 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 4.04 (d, 2H,  
J = 12.2 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.67 (s, 2H), 6.95  
(d, 1H, J = 6.2 Hz), 6.99 (d, 2H, J = 7.0 Hz), 7.30 (d, 2H,  
5 J = 8.8 Hz), 7.40 - 7.56 (m, 8H), 8.68 (s, 1H).

Working Example 82 (Production of Compound 82)

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(1-isopropylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-  
2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (150mg) in  
10 dichloromethane (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (49mg)  
was added at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room  
temperature, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen  
atmosphere for 1 hour. Then, this solution was added to  
a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-  
15 yl)amino]methyl]aniline (90mg) and triethylamine (830mg)  
in dichloromethane (20ml) at 0°C. The mixture was  
stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature  
overnight, to the mixture was added water, and the  
mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic  
20 layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with  
magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under  
reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was separated  
and purified with silica gel column chromatography  
(methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 3), which was  
25 recrystallized to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(1-

isopropylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 82) (119mg) as yellow crystals.

5 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.34 - 1.85 (m, 14H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.65 (br, 1H), 2.84 (br, 2H), 3.36 - 3.52 (m, 4H), 3.56 - 3.59 (m, 4H), 3.81 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 4.04 (d, 2H, J = 11.8 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.44 - 4.52 (m, 3H), 6.96 - 7.02 (m, 3H), 7.30 (d, 2H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.39 - 7.56 (m, 10H).

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>43</sub>H<sub>55</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>4</sub> Calcd. C, 73.16; H, 7.85; N, 9.92. Found C, 72.99; H, 7.76; N, 9.75.

#### Reference Example 147

To a suspension of 60% sodium hydride (0.17g) in DMF (5ml) which had been washed with hexane three times was added dropwise a solution of methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.0g) in DMF (10ml) at 0°C under nitrogen atmosphere. The temperature was returned to room temperature and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour. Then, a solution of allyl bromide (0.56g) in DMF (5ml) was added dropwise thereto at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. To the mixture were added ethyl acetate and water, and the mixture was separated. The organic layer was washed with saturated



brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 7 : 1) to give methyl 1-allyl-7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.38g) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.79 (t, 2H, J = 5.4 Hz), 3.22 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.80 (s, 3H), 3.89 (d, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 5.16 - 5.28 (m, 2H), 5.81 - 5.97 (m, 1H), 6.58 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.23 (dd, 1H, J = 8.8, 2.6 Hz), 7.4 (d, 1H, J = 2.6 Hz), 7.59 (s, 1H).

#### Reference Example 148

In toluene (20ml), ethanol (2ml) and water (2ml) were suspended methyl 1-allyl-7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (274mg), 4-propoxyethoxyphenyl borate (248mg) and potassium carbonate (307mg), and the suspension was stirred under argon atmosphere for 30 minutes. Then, tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (69mg) was added thereto, and the mixture was heated under argon atmosphere at 100°C for 8 hours. After allowing to cool, water was added thereto, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was purified

with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 4 : 1) to give methyl 1-allyl-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (269mg) as yellow oil.

5 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (t, 3H, J = 7.8 Hz), 1.58 - 1.75 (m, 2H), 2.81 (t, 2H, J = 5.6 Hz), 3.27 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.51 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.75 - 3.83 (m, 5H), 3.96 (d, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 5.23 - 5.30 (m, 2H), 5.88 - 6.02 (m, 1H), 6.87 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz),  
10 6.97 (d, 2H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.39 (dd, 1H, J = 8.8, 2.2 Hz), 7.46 (d, 2H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.52 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.78 (s, 1H).

Reference Example 149

To a solution of methyl 1-allyl-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (262mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (19ml) and methanol (19ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (6.3ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. Then, water and 1N hydrochloric  
15 acid were added to make acidic (pH = 4) at 0°C, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give the solid, which was washed with  
20 hexane to give 1-allyl-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-

10046331 131004

dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (199mg) as yellow crystals.

mp 152.0 - 153.0°C

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>). δ 0.94 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.56 -  
5 1.74 (m, 2H), 3.00 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.30 (t, 2H, J =  
5.2 Hz), 3.51 (t, 2H, J = 6.4 Hz), 3.81 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz),  
3.97 (d, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 5.24 -  
5.30 (m, 2H), 5.89 - 6.10 (m, 1H), 6.88 (d, 1H, J = 8.4 Hz),  
6.98 (d, 2H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.40 - 7.49 (m, 3H), 7.53 (d, 1H,  
10 J = 2.6 Hz), 7.88 (s, 1H).

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>25</sub>H<sub>29</sub>NO<sub>4</sub> · 0.1H<sub>2</sub>O Calcd. C, 73.36; H, 7.19; N,  
3.42. Found C, 73.11; H, 7.09; N, 3.25.

#### Reference Example 150

To a suspension of 60% sodium hydride (0.23g) in  
15 tetrahydrofuran (5ml) which had been washed with hexane  
three times was added dropwise a solution of methyl 7-  
bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.80g) in  
tetrahydrofuran (10ml) at 0°C under nitrogen atmosphere.  
The temperature was returned to room temperature and the  
20 mixture was stirred for 30 minutes. Then, a solution of  
allyl bromide (5.12g) in tetrahydrofuran (5ml) was added  
dropwise thereto at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred at  
60°C for 5 days. To the mixture were added ethyl acetate  
and water, and the mixture was separated. The organic  
25 layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with

magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 5 : 1) to give allyl 1-allyl-7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.22g) as yellow oil.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.81 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.8$  Hz), 3.23 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.2$  Hz), 3.90 (d, 2H,  $J = 4.8$  Hz), 4.69 - 4.73 (m, 2H), 5.11 - 5.42 (m, 4H), 5.81 - 6.07 (m, 2H), 6.68 (d, 1H,  $J = 9.2$  Hz), 7.23 (dd, 1H,  $J = 8.8, 2.2$  Hz), 7.43 (d, 1H,  $J = 2.4$  Hz), 7.62 (s, 1H).

#### Reference Example 151

To a solution of allyl 1-allyl-7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (224mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml) were added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (74mg) and morpholine (560mg), and the mixture was stirred under argon atmosphere at room temperature for 2 hours. To the mixture was added water at  $0^\circ\text{C}$ , and the mixture was made acidic ( $\text{pH} = 4$ ) with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with 1N hydrochloric acid, further with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give 1-allyl-7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (198mg) as yellow amorphous.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.80 (t, 2H,  $J = 4.2$  Hz), 3.23 (t,

2H,  $J = 4.8$  Hz), 3.91 (d, 2H,  $J = 4.8$  Hz), 5.17 - 5.28 (m, 2H), 5.84 - 5.98 (m, 1H), 6.69 (d, 1H,  $J = 9.2$  Hz), 7.24 (dd, 1H,  $J = 8.8, 2.2$  Hz), 7.43 - 7.73 (m, 2H).

Reference Example 152

5        1-allyl-7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (320mg) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (15 ml), and DMF (0.3ml) was added to the solution. Then, thionyl chloride (0.23ml) was added thereto at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room  
10        temperature for 2 hours. The solvent and excess thionyl chloride were evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was suspended in tetrahydrofuran (25ml), and the suspension was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline  
15        (275mg) and triethylamine (1.27g) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml) at 0°C. The temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred overnight. To the mixture was added water, and the mixture was  
20        extracted with ethyl acetate twice. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 8) to give 1-allyl-7-bromo-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-

25

yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (266mg) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.75 (br, 4H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.65 (br, 1H), 2.88 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.29 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.37 (dt, 2H, J = 8.2, 2.4 Hz), 3.57 (s, 2H), 3.92 (d, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.04 (d, 2H, J = 11.8 Hz), 5.20 - 5.30 (m, 2H), 5.85 - 5.96 (m, 1H), 6.72 (d, 1H, J = 9.2 Hz), 7.22 - 7.32 (m, 3H), 7.42 - 7.54 (m, 4H).

#### Reference Example 153

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (300mg) and 2-methoxybenzaldehyde (535mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane (10ml) was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (749mg), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. Then, water was added thereto and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 3 : 1) to give methyl (1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (394mg) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (t, 3H, J = 7.6 Hz), 1.58 - 1.70 (m, 2H), 2.82 (br, 2H), 3.35 (br, 2H), 3.51 (t, 2H, J

= 6.6 Hz), 3.78 - 3.94 (m, 8H), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 4.6 Hz), 4.57 (s, 2H), 6.78 (d, 1H, J = 9.2 Hz), 6.88 - 6.99 (m, 4H), 7.15 (d, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.26 - 7.44 (m, 2H), 7.46 (d, 2H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.55 (d, 1H, J = 2.4 Hz), 7.84 (s, 1H).

5           Reference Example 154

To a solution of methyl 1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (394mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (24ml) and methanol (24ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (8ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 day. Then, to the mixture was added water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to make acidic (pH = 4), and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting solid was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (217mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.59 - 1.70 (m, 2H), 2.84 (br, 2H), 3.37 (br, 2H), 3.51 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.81 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.89 (s, 3H), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.58 (s, 2H, ), 6.80 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.91 - 7.00 (m, 4H), 7.14 (d, 1H, J = 6.6 Hz), 7.29 - 7.36

(m, 2H), 7.46 (d, 2H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.55 (d, 1H,  $J = 2.4$  Hz), 7.94 (s, 1H).

Anal. Calcd.  $C_{30}H_{33}NO_5$  Calcd. C, 73.90; H, 6.82; N, 2.87.

Found C, 73.58; H, 6.66; N, 2.76.

5        Reference of Example 155

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-  
2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (300mg) and 2-  
methoxybenzaldehyde (517mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane (10ml)  
was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (724mg), and the  
mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room  
temperature overnight. Then, water was added to the  
mixture, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate.  
The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and  
dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated  
under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was  
purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane :  
ethyl acetate = 3 : 1) to give methyl 7-(4-  
butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-  
benzazepine-4-carboxylate (391mg) as yellow oil.

$^1H$ -NMR (200 MHz,  $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (t, 3H,  $J = 7.4$  Hz), 1.37 -  
1.45 (m, 2H), 1.55 - 1.64 (m, 2H), 2.82 (br, 2H), 3.35 (br,  
2H), 3.55 (t, 2H,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.78 - 3.82 (m, 5H), 3.88 (s,  
3H), 4.16 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.6$  Hz), 4.57 (s, 2H), 6.78 (d, 1H,  $J$   
= 8.4 Hz), 6.91 - 6.99 (m, 4H), 7.14 (d, 1H,  $J = 6.4$  Hz),  
7.26 - 7.40 (m, 2H), 7.46 (d, 2H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.54 (d, 1H,



J = 2.4 Hz), 7.84 (s, 1H).

Reference Example 156

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate  
5 (391mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (24ml) and methanol (24ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (8ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 day. Then, to the mixture was added water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to make acidic  
10 (pH = 4), and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting solid was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl  
15 acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (257mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.57 - 1.64 (m, 2H), 2.84 (br, 2H), 3.36 (br, 2H), 3.55 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz),  
20 3.88 (s, 3H), 4.15 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.58 (s, 2H), 6.79 (d, 1H, J = 9.2 Hz), 6.91 - 6.99 (m, 4H), 7.14 (d, 1H, J = 7.4 Hz), 7.29 - 7.36 (m, 2H), 7.46 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.55 (d, 1H, J = 2.4 Hz), 7.94 (s, 1H).

25 Anal. Calcd. C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>35</sub>NO<sub>5</sub> Calcd. C, 74.23; H, 7.03; N, 2.79.

Found C, 73.96; H, 6.91; N, 2.75.

Reference Example 157

To a suspension of 60% sodium hydride (0.23g) in tetrahydrofuran (5ml) which had been washed with hexane  
5 three times was added dropwise a solution of methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.80g) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml) under nitrogen atmosphere at 0°C. The temperature was returned to room temperature and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour. Then, to the mixture was  
10 added dropwise a solution of 3-methoxybenzyl bromide (2.29g) in tetrahydrofuran (5ml) at 0°C. The temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 3 days. To the mixture were added ethyl acetate and water, and the mixture was separated. The  
15 organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 5 : 1) to give methyl 7-bromo-1-(3-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate  
20 (0.69g) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.76 (t, 2H, J = 5.8 Hz), 3.26 (t, 2H, J = 3.8 Hz), 3.79 - 3.81 (m, 6H), 4.49 (s, 2H), 6.67 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.78 - 6.93 (m, 3H), 7.17 - 7.31 (m, 2H),  
25 7.46 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.63 (z, 1H).

## Reference Example 158

To a solution of methyl 7-bromo-1-(3-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (691mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (50ml) and methanol (50ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (17ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 days. Then, to the mixture was added water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to make acidic (pH = 4), and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting solid was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-bromo-1-(3-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (369mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.78 (t, 2H, J = 5.6 Hz), 3.29 (t, 2H, J = 5.6 Hz), 3.79 (s, 3H), 4.51 (s, 2H), 6.68 (d, 1H, J = 9.2 Hz), 6.78 - 6.84 (m, 3H), 7.20 - 7.32 (m, 2H), 7.48 (d, 1H, J = 2.6 Hz), 7.73 (s, 1H).

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>19</sub>H<sub>18</sub>NO<sub>3</sub>Br Calcd. C, 58.78; H, 4.67; N, 3.61. Found C, 58.81; H, 4.68; N, 3.61.

## Reference Example 159

In toluene (20ml), ethanol (2ml) and water (2ml) were suspended 7-bromo-1-(3-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (300mg), 4-

propoxyethoxyphenyl borate (346mg) and potassium carbonate (534mg), and the suspension was stirred under argon atmosphere for 30 minutes. Then, to the suspension was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (62mg), and the mixture was heated at 100°C for 6 hours under argon atmosphere. After allowing to cool, water was added to the mixture, which was made acidic (pH=4) with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate twice. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 2 : 1) and the resulting solid was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 1-(3-methoxybenzyl)-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (118mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.60 - 1.70 (m, 2H), 2.81 (br, 2H), 3.34 (br, 2H), 3.51 (t, 2H, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.80 - 3.84 (m, 5H), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.58 (s, 2H), 6.85 - 6.90 (m, 4H), 6.98 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.26 - 7.45 (m, 2H), 7.47 (d, 2H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.56 (d, 1H, J = 2.4 Hz), 7.93 (s, 1H).

#### Reference Example 160

In toluene (15ml), ethanol (1.5ml) and water (1.5ml)

were suspended 7-bromo-1-(3-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (320mg); 4-butoxyethoxyphenyl borate (246mg) and potassium carbonate (285mg), and the suspension was stirred under argon atmosphere for 30 minutes. Then, to the suspension was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (64mg), and the mixture was heated at 100°C for 8 hours under argon atmosphere. After allowing to cool, water was added to the mixture, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 5 : 1) to give methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (207mg) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.30 - 1.50 (m, 2H), 1.55 - 1.65 (m, 2H), 2.78 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.31 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.55 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.78 - 3.82 (m, 8H), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.56 (s, 2H), 6.77 - 6.90 (m, 4H), 6.97 (d, 2H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.24 - 7.29 (m, 1H), 7.36 (dd, 1H, J = 8.4, 2.2 Hz), 7.46 (d, 2H, J = 9.2 Hz), 7.55 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.82 (s, 1H).

Reference Example 161

To a solution of 7-bromo-1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (202mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (13ml) and methanol (13ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (4ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 days. Then, to the mixture was added water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to make acidic (pH = 4), and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting solid was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (161mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.54 - 1.65 (m, 2H), 2.81 (br, 2H), 3.34 (br, 2H), 3.55 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.78 - 3.83 (m, 5H), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.58 (s, 2H), 6.82 - 6.90 (m, 4H), 6.98 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.29 - 7.41 (m, 2H), 7.46 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.56 (d, 1H, J = 2.4 Hz), 7.93 (s, 1H).

#### Reference Example 162

To a suspension of 60% sodium hydride (0.16g) in DMF (5ml) which had been washed with hexane three times was added dropwise a solution of methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.00g) in DMF (10ml) under

nitrogen atmosphere at 0°C. The temperature was returned to room temperature and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour. Then, to the mixture was added dropwise a solution of 4-methoxybenzyl bromide (0.67g) in DMF (5ml) at 0°C.

5 To the mixture was added sodium iodide (0.83g), and the mixture was heated at 60°C overnight. To the mixture were added ethyl acetate and water, and the mixture was separated. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was  
10 evaporated under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 5 : 1) to give methyl 7-bromo-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.92g) as yellow oil.

15 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.72 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.23 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.80 - 3.82 (m, 6H), 4.46 (s, 2H), 6.70 (d, 1H, J = 4.6 Hz), 6.90 (d, 2H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.22 - 7.29 (m, 1H), 7.46 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.62 (s, 1H).

#### Reference Example 163

20 To a solution of methyl 7-bromo-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (920mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (70ml) and methanol (70ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (23ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 day. Then,  
25 to the mixture was added water at 0°C, and 1N

hydrochloric acid was further added to make acidic (pH = 4), and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate.

The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was

5 evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting solid was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-bromo-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (644mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.74 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.26 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.82 (s, 3H), 4.48 (s, 2H), 6.71 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.89 (s, 2H), 7.16 (d, 2H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.23 (dd, 1H, J = 8.8, 2.6 Hz), 7.48 (d, 1H, J = 2.6 Hz), 7.73 (s, 1H).

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>19</sub>H<sub>18</sub>NO<sub>3</sub>Br Calcd. C, 58.78; H, 4.67; N, 3.61.

15 Found C, 58.60; H, 4.61; N, 3.57.

#### Reference Example 164

In toluene (20ml), ethanol (2ml) and water (2ml) were suspended 7-bromo-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (300mg), 4-propoxyethoxyphenyl borate (346mg) and potassium carbonate (534mg), and the suspension was stirred under argon atmosphere for 30 minutes. Then, to the suspension was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (63mg), and the mixture was heated at 100°C for 4 hours under argon atmosphere. After allowing to cool, water was added to



the mixture, which was made acidic (pH = 4) with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 1 : 1) and the resulting solid was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (117mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.60 - 1.70 (m, 2H), 2.76 (br, 2H), 3.31 (br, 2H), 3.51 (t, 2H, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.79 - 3.84 (m, 5H), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 4.6 Hz), 4.54 (s, 2H), 6.88 - 7.00 (m, 5H), 7.22 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.39 (d, 1H, J = 10.6 Hz), 7.47 (d, 2H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.56 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.92 (s, 1H).

#### Reference Example 165

In toluene (20ml), ethanol (2ml) and water (2ml) were suspended 7-bromo-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (300mg), 4-butoxyethoxyphenyl borate (368mg) and potassium carbonate (534mg), and the suspension was stirred under argon atmosphere for 30 minutes. Then, to the suspension was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (63mg), and the

mixture was heated at 100°C for 6 hours under argon atmosphere. After allowing to cool, water was added to the mixture, which was made acidic (pH = 4) with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate twice.

- 5 The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 2 : 1) and the resulting solid
- 10 was washed with hexane to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (149mg) as yellow crystals.
- <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.25 - 1.41 (m, 2H), 1.58 - 1.65 (m, 2H), 2.76 (br, 2H), 3.31 (br, 2H), 3.56 (t, 2H, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.78 - 3.82 (m, 5H), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.4 Hz), 4.54 (s, 2H), 6.88 - 7.000 (m, 5H), 7.22 (d, 2H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.39 (dd, 1H, J = 10.2, 2.4 Hz), 7.47 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.57 (d, 1H, J = 2.4 Hz), 7.92 (s, 1H).
- 15 Anal. Calcd. C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>35</sub>NO<sub>5</sub> Calcd. C, 74.23; H, 7.03; N, 2.79.
- 20 Found C, 73.88; H, 6.78; N, 2.85.

#### Reference Example 166

- To a solution of methyl 7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (300mg) and 3-thiophenecarboxyaldehyde (441mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane
- 25 (10ml) was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (416mg),

and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. Then, water was added to the mixture, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 3 : 1) to give methyl 7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-thienylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (375mg) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.60 - 1.70 (m, 2H), 2.76 (t, 2H, J = 3.6 Hz), 3.31 (t, 2H, J = 3.6 Hz), 3.51 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.79 - 3.83 (m, 5H), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.56 (s, 2H), 6.90 - 7.04 (m, 4H), 7.12 - 7.14 (m, 1H), 7.32 - 7.45 (m, 2H), 7.47 (d, 2H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.55 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.81 (s, 1H).

#### Reference Example 167

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-thienylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (375mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (24ml) and methanol (24ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (8ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. Then, to the mixture was added water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to make acidic (pH = 4), and the mixture was extracted with ethyl

acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting solid was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-thienylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (317mg) as yellow crystals.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.94 (t, 3H,  $J = 7.4$  Hz), 1.56 - 1.74 (m, 2H), 2.78 (t, 2H,  $J = 4.4$  Hz), 3.51 (t, 2H,  $J = 6.8$  Hz), 3.81 (t, 2H,  $J = 4.4$  Hz), 4.17 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.2$  Hz), 4.58 (s, 2H), 6.91 - 7.05 (m, 4H), 7.13 (br, 1H), 7.33 - 7.49 (m, 4H), 7.56 (d, 1H,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 7.91 (s, 1H).

Anal. Calcd.  $\text{C}_{27}\text{H}_{29}\text{NO}_4\text{S}$  Calcd. C, 69.95; H, 6.31; N, 3.02. Found C, 69.78; H, 6.30; N, 3.01.

#### Reference Example 168

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (300mg) and 3-thiophenecarboxyaldehyde (426mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane (10ml) was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (402mg), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. Then, water was added to the mixture, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was

purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 3 : 1) to give methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-thienylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (373mg) as yellow oil.

5  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (t, 3H,  $J = 7.4$  Hz), 1.25 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.57 - 1.65 (m, 2H), 2.76 (t, 2H,  $J = 3.6$  Hz), 3.31 (t, 2H,  $J = 4.6$  Hz), 3.55 (t, 2H,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.78 - 3.83 (m, 5H), 4.16 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.2$  Hz), 4.56 (s, 2H), 6.90 - 7.13 (m, 5H), 7.32 - 7.41 (m, 2H), 7.47 (d, 2H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.55 (s, 1H), 7.81 (s, 1H).

#### Reference Example 169

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-thienylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (373mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (24ml) and  
15 methanol (24ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (8ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 days. Then, to the mixture was added water at  $0^\circ\text{C}$ , and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to make acidic ( $\text{pH} = 4$ ), and the mixture was extracted with ethyl  
20 acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting solid was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-  
25 thienylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic

acid (297mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.57 - 1.65 (m, 2H), 2.78 (t, 2H, J = 4.0 Hz), 3.29 (t, 2H, J = 4.0 Hz), 3.55 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.57 (s, 2H), 6.73 - 7.00 (m, 3H), 7.03 (dd, 1H, J = 5.0, 1.4 Hz), 7.33 - 7.49 (m, 4H), 7.56 (d, 1H, J = 1.8 Hz), 7.90 (s, 1H).

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>28</sub>H<sub>31</sub>NO<sub>4</sub>S·0.1H<sub>2</sub>O Calcd. C, 70.14; H, 6.56; N, 2.92. Found C, 69.85; H, 6.46; N, 2.86.

10           Reference Example 170

One droplet of pyridine was added to a solution of 2-hydroxymethylthiophene (1.0g) in toluene (10ml), followed by addition of thionyl chloride (1.56g). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour, ethyl acetate was added thereto, and the mixture was washed with water. The organic layer was washed with 1N sodium hydroxide solution, water and saturated brine, and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give 2-chloromethylthiophene (1.16g) as deep brown oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 4.82 (s, 2H), 6.93 - 7.00 (m, 1H), 7.09 (d, 1H, J = 3.0 Hz), 7.31 (dd, 1H, J = 5.2, 1.0 Hz).

Reference Example 171

To a suspension of 60% sodium hydride (0.16g) in DMF (5ml) which had been washed with hexane three times was

added dropwise a solution of methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.00g) in DMF (10ml) under nitrogen atmosphere at 0°C. The temperature was returned to room temperature and the mixture was stirred for 1  
5 hour. Then, to the mixture was added dropwise a solution of 2-chloromethylthiophene (1.07g) in DMF (5ml) at 0°C. To the mixture was added sodium iodide (0.83g), and the mixture was heated at 60°C overnight. To the mixture were added ethyl acetate and water, and the mixture was  
10 separated. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 5 : 1) to give  
15 methyl 7-bromo-1-(2-thienylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.82g) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.78 (t, 2H, J = 3.6 Hz), 3.27 (t, 2H, J = 3.6 Hz), 3.80 (s, 3H), 4.65 (s, 2H), 6.82 (d, 1H, J = 7.8 Hz), 6.70 - 7.03 (m, 2H), 7.24 - 7.35 (m, 2H), 7.47  
20 (d, 1H, J = 2.8 Hz), 7.61 (s, 1H).

#### Reference Example 172

To a solution of methyl 7-bromo-1-(2-thienylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (810mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (60ml) and methanol (60ml) was  
25 added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (21ml), and the

mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. Then, to the mixture was added water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to make acidic (pH = 4), and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate.

- 5 The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting solid was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-bromo-1-(2-thienylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-
- 10 benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (574mg) as yellow crystals. <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.79 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.30 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.66 (s, 2H), 6.83 (d, 1H, J = 4.4 Hz), 6.97 - 7.01 (m, 2H), 7.24 - 7.49 (m, 21H), 7.48 (d, 1H, J = 2.4 Hz), 7.71 (s, 1H).
- 15 Anal. Calcd. C<sub>16</sub>H<sub>14</sub>NO<sub>2</sub>SBr Calcd. C, 52.76; H, 3.87; N, 3.85. Found C, 52.80; H, 3.95; N, 3.68.

#### Reference Example 173

- In toluene (30ml), ethanol (3ml) and water (3ml) were suspended 7-bromo-1-(2-thienylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-
- 20 benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (500mg), 4-propoxyethoxyphenyl borate (615mg) and potassium carbonate (949mg), and the suspension was stirred under argon atmosphere for 30 minutes. Then, to the suspension was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (111mg),
- 25 and the mixture was heated under argon atmosphere at



100°C for 6 hours. After allowing to cool, water was added thereto, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 1 : 1), which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-thienylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (269mg).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (t, 3H, J = 7.6 Hz), 1.59 - 1.74 (m, 2H), 2.79 (br, 2H), 3.30 (br, 2H), 3.51 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.81 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.15 (br, 2H), 4.68 (br, 2H), 6.90 - 7.10 (m, 5H), 7.23 - 7.26 (m, 1H), 7.43 - 7.47 (m, 3H), 7.54 (br, 1H), 7.90 (s, 1H).

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>27</sub>H<sub>29</sub>NO<sub>4</sub>S·0.2H<sub>2</sub>O Calcd. C, 69.41; H, 6.34; N, 3.00. Found C, 69.18; H, 6.05; N, 3.01.

#### Reference Example 174

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (300mg) and thiophene-2-carboxyaldehyde (422mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane (10ml) was added sodium triacetoxyborohydride (796mg), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. Then, water was added to the mixture, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate.

The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 3 : 1) to give methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-thienylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (373mg) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.30 - 1.47 (m, 2H), 1.56 - 1.71 (m, 2H), 2.80 (t, 2H, J = 5.4 Hz), 3.32 (t, 2H, J = 5.4 Hz), 3.55 (t, 2H, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.78 - 3.83 (m, 5H), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.71 (s, 2H), 6.96 - 7.02 (m, 5H), 7.29 (dd, 1H, J = 4.8, 1.4 Hz), 7.40 - 7.49 (m, 3H), 7.55 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.80 (s, 1H).

#### Reference Example 175

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-thienylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (373mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (24ml) and methanol (24ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (8ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 day. Then, to the mixture was added water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to make acidic (pH = 4), and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the

resulting solid was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-thienylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (249mg) as yellow crystals.

5  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (t, 3H,  $J = 7.4$  Hz), 1.34 - 1.70 (m, 4H), 2.81 (t, 2H,  $J = 3.6$  Hz), 3.34 (t, 2H,  $J = 3.6$  Hz), 3.55 (t, 2H,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.80 (t, 2H,  $J = 4.2$  Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.6$  Hz), 4.72 (s, 2H), 6.96 - 7.04 (m, 5H), 7.26 - 7.31 (m, 1H), 7.41 - 7.49 (m, 3H), 7.55 (d, 1H,  $J =$   
10 2.2 Hz), 7.89 (s, 1H).

Anal. Calcd.  $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{31}\text{NO}_4\text{S}$  Calcd. C, 70.41; H, 6.54; N, 2.93.  
Found C, 70.15; H, 6.51; N, 2.79.

#### Reference Example 176

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-  
15 2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (300mg) and 3-furaldehyde (378mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane (10ml) was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (416mg), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. Then, water was added to the  
20 mixture, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane :  
25 ethyl acetate = 3 : 1) to give methyl 1-(3-furylmethyl)-

7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (362mg) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.57 - 1.70 (m, 2H), 2.76 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.27 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.51 (t, 2H, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.79 - 3.84 (m, 5H), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.38 (s, 2H), 6.37 (d, 1H, J = 0.8 Hz), 6.96 - 7.00 (m, 3H), 7.38 - 7.49 (m, 5H), 7.54 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.79 (s, 1H).

Reference Example 177

To a solution of methyl 1-(3-furymethyl)-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (362mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (24ml) and methanol (24ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (8ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 5 days. Then, to the mixture was added water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to make acidic (pH = 4), and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting solid was washed with hexane to give 1-(3-furymethyl)-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (307mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.95 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.60 -

1.70 (m, 2H), 2.80 (br, 2H), 3.30 (b, 2H), 3.52 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.81 (t, 2H, J = 4.0 Hz), 4.17 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.40 (s, 2H), 6.39 (s, 1H), 6.95 - 7.01 (m, 3H), 7.39 - 7.49 (m, 5H), 7.54 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.89 (s, 1H).

5 Anal. Calcd.  $C_{27}H_{29}NO_5$  Calcd. C, 72.46; H, 6.53; N, 3.13. Found C, 72.13; H, 6.45; N, 3.00.

Reference Example 178

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (300mg) and 3-furaldehyde (365mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane (10ml) was  
10 added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (402mg), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 5 days. Then, water was added to the mixture, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate.  
15 The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 1 : 1) to give methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-furylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (310mg) as yellow oil.  
20  $^1H$ -NMR (200 MHz,  $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.34 - 1.50 (m, 2H), 1.56 - 1.69 (m, 2H), 2.76 (t, 2H, J = 7.2 Hz), 3.28 (t, 2H, J = 5.6 Hz), 3.55 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.78 - 3.83 (m, 5H), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.38 (s, 2H), 6.38

(d, 1H, J = 0.8 Hz), 6.93 - 7.00 (m, 3H), 7.39 - 7.49 (m, 5H), 7.54 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.79 (s, 1H).

Reference Example 179

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-furylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (310mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (21ml) and methanol (21ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (7ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 days. Then, to the mixture was added water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to make acidic (pH = 4), and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting solid was washed with hexane to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-furylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (312mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.31 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.55 - 1.70 (m, 2H), 2.79 (t, 2H, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.30 (t, 2H, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.56 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.81 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.40 (s, 2H), 6.38 (s, 1H), 6.95 - 7.01 (m, 3H), 7.40 - 7.49 (m, 5H), 7.55 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.90 (s, 1H).

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>28</sub>H<sub>31</sub>NO<sub>5</sub> · 0.2H<sub>2</sub>O Calcd. C, 72.29; H, 6.80; N, 3.01. Found C, 72.15; H, 6.95; N, 2.93.

## Reference Example 180

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-  
2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (300mg) and 2-  
ethoxybenzaldehyde (570mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane (10ml)  
5 was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (402mg), and the  
mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room  
temperature for 5 days. Then, water was added to the  
mixture, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate.  
The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and  
10 dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated  
under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was  
purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane :  
ethyl acetate = 3 : 1) to give methyl 7-(4-  
butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-ethoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-  
15 benzazepine-4-carboxylate (402mg) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.33 -  
1.64 (m, 7H), 2.81 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.34 (t, 2H, J =  
4.4 Hz), 3.55 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.78 - 3.82 (m, 5H),  
4.04 - 4.18 (m, 4H), 4.58 (s, 2H), 6.74 - 6.99 (m, 6H),  
20 7.14 (d, 1H, J = 7.8 Hz), 7.32 (dd, 1H, J = 8.4, 2.6 Hz),  
7.46 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.54 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.84 (s,  
1H).

## Reference Example 181

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-  
25 (2-ethoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate

(402mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (24ml) and methanol (24ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (8ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 days. Then, to the mixture was added water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to make acidic (pH = 4), and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, which was recrystallized from hexane ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-ethoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (297mg) as yellow crystals. <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.34 - 1.47 (m, 5H), 1.50 - 1.65 (m, 2H), 2.83 (br, 2H), 3.37 (br, 2H), 3.55 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 4.10 (q, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.59 (s, 2H), 6.82 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.90 - 6.99 (m, 5H), 7.15 (d, 1H, J = 7.4 Hz), 7.26 - 7.37 (m, 1H), 7.46 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.56 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.94 (s, 1H). Anal. Calcd. C<sub>32</sub>H<sub>37</sub>NO<sub>5</sub> Calcd. C, 74.54; H, 7.23; N, 2.72. Found C, 74.48; H, 7.17; N, 2.92.

#### Reference Example 182

To a solution of 3-hydroxybenzaldehyde (10.0g) in DMF (120ml) were added potassium carbonate (15.8g) and 1-bromopropane (12.1g), and the mixture was stirred under



nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature overnight. Then, water was added to the mixture, which was extracted with ethyl acetate and washed with 1N sodium hydroxide solution twice, with water three times and with saturated brine once. After dried with magnesium sulfate, the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give 3-propoxybenzaldehyde (13.4g) as colorless liquid.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.05 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.75 - 1.93 (m, 2H), 3.99 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 7.15 - 7.21 (m, 1H), 7.39 (d, 1H, J = 2.6 Hz), 7.41 - 7.45 (m, 2H).

#### Reference Example 183

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (300mg) and 3-propoxybenzaldehyde (623mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane (10ml) was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (804mg), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 5 days. Then, water was added to the mixture, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 3 : 1) to give methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-propoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (412mg) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.89 - 1.09 (m, 6H), 1.33 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.55 - 1.65 (m, 2H), 1.74 - 1.85 (m, 2H), 2.78 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.31 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.55 (t, 2H, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.78 - 3.83 (m, 5H), 3.90 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.4 Hz), 4.55 (s, 2H), 6.80 - 6.89 (m, 4H), 6.97 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.22 - 7.49 (m, 4H), 7.54 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.82 (s, 1H).

#### Reference Example 184

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-propoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (412mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (24ml) and methanol (24ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (8ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 days. Then, to the mixture was added water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to make acidic (pH = 4), and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-propoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (308mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.03 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.30 - 1.50 (m, 2H), 1.50 - 1.70 (m, 2H), 1.74 - 1.85 (m, 2H), 2.81 (br, 2H), 3.35 (br, 2H), 3.56 (t,

2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.81 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.6 Hz), 4.57 (s, 2H), 6.81 - 6.91 (m, 4H), 6.98 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.24 - 7.35 (m, 1H), 7.38 (dd, 1H, J = 8.4, 1.4 Hz), 7.47 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.56 (d, 1H, J = 1.4 Hz),  
5 7.93 (s, 1H).

Anal. Calcd.  $C_{33}H_{39}NO_5$  Calcd. C, 74.83; H, 7.42; N, 2.64.  
Found C, 74.76; H, 7.38; N, 2.74.

Reference Example 185

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-  
10 2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (300mg) and 2,5-dimethoxybenzaldehyde (631mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane (10ml) was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (8042mg), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 5 days. Then, water was added to  
15 the mixture, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column  
20 chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 3 : 1) to give methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2,5-dimethoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (290mg) as yellow oil.

$^1H$ -NMR (200 MHz,  $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.37 -  
25 1.45 (m, 2 H), 1.55 - 1.70 (m, 2H), 3.82 (br, 2H), 3.34 (br,

2H), 3.55 (t, 2H, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.70 (s, 3H), 3.78 - 3.84 (m, 8H), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.4 Hz), 4.53 (s, 2H), 6.75 - 6.83 (m, 4H), 6.97 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.30 (dd, 1H, J = 8.8, 1.3 Hz), 7.46 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.57 (d, 1H, J = 1.3 Hz), 7.83 (s, 1H).

Reference Example 186

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-propoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (290mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (21ml) and methanol (21ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (7ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 days. Then, to the mixture was added water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to make acidic (pH = 4), and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2,5-dimethoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (237mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 6.8 Hz), 1.32 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.50 - 1.64 (m, 2H), 2.83 (br, 2H), 3.35 (br, 2H), 3.55 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.71 (s, 3H), 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.84 (s, 3H), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.6 Hz), 4.55 (s,

2H), 6.75 - 6.83 (m, 4H), 6.97 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.35 (dd, 1H, J = 8.8, 1.3 Hz), 7.46 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.54 (d, 1H, J = 1.3 Hz), 7.93 (s, 1H).

Anal. Calcd.  $C_{32}H_{37}NO_6 \cdot 0.1H_2O$  Calcd. C, 72.05; H, 7.03; N, 2.63. Found C, 71.83; H, 7.18; N, 2.57.

#### Example Reference 187

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (300mg) and 2-fluorobenzaldehyde (471mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane (10ml) was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (402mg), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 5 days. Then, water was added to the mixture, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane:ethyl acetate=3:1) to give methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (382mg) as yellow oil.

$^1H$ -NMR (200 MHz,  $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.30 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.54 - 1.70 (m, 2H), 2.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.0 Hz), 3.31 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.55 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.78 - 3.83 (m 5H), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.63 (s, 2H), 6.82 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.95 - 7.48 (m, 9H), 7.56 (d, 1H, J =

2.2 Hz), 7.82 (s, 1H).

Reference Example 188

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (382mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (24ml) and methanol (24ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (8ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 days. Then, to the mixture was added water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to make acidic (pH = 4), and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-fluorobenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (309mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.54 - 1.65 (m, 2H), 2.81 (br, 2H), 3.37 (br, 2H), 3.55 (t, 2H, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.6 Hz), 4.65 (s, 2H), 6.84 (d, 1H, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.98 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.06 - 7.15 (m, 2H), 7.24 - 7.40 (m, 3H), 7.46 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.57 (d, 1H, J = 2.6 Hz), 7.93 (s, 1H).

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>32</sub>NO<sub>4</sub>F Calcd. C, 73.60; H, 6.59; N, 2.86. Found C, 73.48; H, 6.46; N, 3.01.

## Reference Example 189

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-  
2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (500mg) and 1-  
methyl-2-imidazolecarboxyaldehyde (696mg) in 1,2-  
5 dichloroethane (20ml) was added sodium  
triacetoxymethylborohydride (804mg), and the mixture was  
stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for  
4 days. Then, water was added to the mixture, and the  
mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic  
10 layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with  
magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under  
reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified  
with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate) to  
give methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(1-  
15 methylimidazol-2-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-  
carboxylate (367mg) as yellow oil.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (t, 3H,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 1.38 -  
1.45 (m, 2H), 1.54 - 1.65 (m, 2H), 2.41 (t, 2H,  $J = 4.4$  Hz),  
3.30 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.0$  Hz), 3.51 (s, 3H), 3.56 (t, 2H,  $J =$   
20 6.2 Hz), 3.79 - 3.83 (m, 5H), 4.17 (t, 2H,  $J = 4.4$  Hz),  
4.61 (s, 2H), 6.88 (d, 1H,  $J = 1.0$  Hz), 6.97 - 7.06 (m, 4H),  
7.44 - 7.50 (m, 3H), 7.56 (d, 2H,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 7.77 (s, 1H).

## Reference Example 190

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-  
25 [(1-methylimidazol-2-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-

benzazepine-4-carboxylate (367mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (24ml) and methanol (24ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (8ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 days. Then, to the mixture was added water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to neutralize, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(1-methylimidazol-2-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (285mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.30 - 1.50 (m, 2H), 1.54 - 1.70 (m, 2H), 2.47 (br, 2H), 3.32 (br, 2H), 3.54 - 3.59 (m, 5H), 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.4 Hz), 4.68 (s, 2H), 6.88 (s, 1H), 6.98 (d, 2H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.03 - 7.07 (m, 2H), 7.45 - 7.49 (m, 3H), 7.57 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.85 (s, 1H).

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>28</sub>H<sub>35</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>, Calcd. C, 70.42; H, 7.39; N, 8.80. Found C, 70.27; H, 7.43; N, 8.73.

#### Reference Example 191

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (300mg) and 2-thiazolecarboxyaldehyde (445mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane



(20ml) was added sodium triacetoxyborohydride (416mg), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 1 day. Then, water was added to the mixture, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate.

5 The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 2 : 1) to give methyl 7-(4-

10 butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(thiazol-2-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (212mg) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.57 - 1.70 (m, 2H), 2.87 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.42 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.55 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.78 - 3.82 (m, 5H), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.6 Hz), 4.86 (s, 2H), 6.95 - 7.00 (m, 3H), 7.30 (d, 1H, J = 3.2 Hz), 7.40 (dd, 1H, J = 8.4, 2.2 Hz), 7.46 (d, 2H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.56 (d, 1H, J = 2.6 Hz), 7.78 - 7.81 (m, 2H).

#### Reference Example 192

20 To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(thiazol-2-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (212mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (18ml) and methanol (18ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (6ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. Then, to the mixture was added

25

water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to neutral, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The

5 solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(thiazol-2-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (153mg) as yellow crystals.

10 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.6 Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.54 - 1.65 (m, 2H), 2.89 (br, 2H), 3.45 (br, 2H), 3.55 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.6 Hz), 4.88 (s, 2H), 6.96 - 7.01 (m, 3H), 7.31 (d, 1H, J = 3.2 Hz), 7.46 - 7.49 (m, 3H), 7.57 (d, 1H, J = 2.6 Hz), 7.80 (d, 1H, J = 3.4 Hz), 7.91 (s, 1H).

15 Anal. Calcd. C<sub>27</sub>H<sub>30</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub>S Calcd. C, 67.76; H, 6.32; N, 5.85. Found C, 67.76; H, 6.39; N, 5.70.

#### Reference Example 193

To a solution of methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.5g) and 2-methoxybenzaldehyde (3.62g) in 1,2-dichloroethane (50ml)

20 was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (2.82g), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 1 day. Then, water was added to the mixture, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate.

25 The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and

dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane:ethyl acetate=5:1) to give methyl 7-bromo-1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.62g) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.79 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.29 (t, 2H, J = 5.6 Hz), 3.80 (s, 3H), 3.86 (s, 3H), 4.50 (s, 2H), 6.60 (d, 1H, J = 9.2 Hz), 6.88 - 7.07 (m, 3H), 7.16 (dd, 1H, J = 8.8, 2.6 Hz), 7.20 - 7.31 (m, 1H), 7.46 (d, 1H, J = 2.6 Hz), 7.64 (s, 1H).

#### Reference Example 194

In toluene (25ml), ethanol (2.5ml) and water (2.5ml) were suspended methyl 7-bromo-1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (712mg), 4-propoxyphenyl borate (416mg) and potassium carbonate (636mg), and the suspension was stirred under argon atmosphere for 30 minutes. Then, to the suspension was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (143mg) and the mixture was heated under argon atmosphere at 100°C for 5 hours. After allowing to cool, water was added thereto, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was purified

with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 3 : 1) to give methyl 7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (663mg) as yellow oil.

5  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.05 (t, 3H,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 1.81 - 1.88 (m, 2H), 2.82 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.2$  Hz), 3.34 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.2$  Hz), 3.82 (s, 3H), 3.88 (s, 3H), 3.95 (t, 2H,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 4.56 (s, 2H), 6.76 - 7.15 (m, 6H), 7.26 - 7.35 (m, 2H), 7.45 (d, 2H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.57 - 7.60 (m, 1H), 7.84 (s, 1H).

10 Reference Example 195

To a solution of methyl 7-(propoxyphenyl)-1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (601mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (39ml) and methanol (39ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution  
15 (13ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 days. Then, to the mixture was added water at  $0^\circ\text{C}$ , and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to neutral, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine  
20 and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (406mg) as yellow crystals.

25  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.05 (t, 3H,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 1.77 -

1.88 (m, 2H), 2.84 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.37 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.88 (s, 3H), 3.95 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 4.58 (s, 2H), 6.79 d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.92 - 6.96 (m, 4H), 7.14 (d, 1H, J = 6.0 Hz), 7.26 - 7.37 (m, 2H), 7.46 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.56 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.95 (s, 1H).

Anal. Calcd.  $C_{29}H_{29}NO_4 \cdot 0.3H_2O$  Calcd. C, 75.56; H, 6.47; N, 3.04. Found C, 75.47; H, 6.58; N, 3.04.

#### Reference Example 196

To a suspension of 60% sodium hydride (1.5g) in dry tetrahydrofuran (30ml) which had been washed with hexane three times was added dropwise a solution of 4-bromopyrazole (5.0g) in dry tetrahydrofuran (30ml) under nitrogen atmosphere at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour. To the mixture was added dropwise a solution of methyl iodide (5.31g) in dry tetrahydrofuran (20ml) under nitrogen atmosphere at 0°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 3 hours. The solution was diluted with tetrahydrofuran, and the insolubles were filtered with Celite. After the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure, hexane was further added, and the insolubles were filtered. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to give 4-bromo-1-methylpyrazole (5.12g) as light yellow liquid.

$^1H$ -NMR (200 MHz,  $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  3.89 (s, 3H), 7.38 (s, 1H), 7.44

(s, 1H).

Reference Example 197

To a solution of 4-bromo-1-methylpyrazole (3.0g) in dry tetrahydrofuran (50ml) was added dropwise n-  
5 butyllithium (14.0ml, 1.6M solution in hexane) under nitrogen atmosphere at -78°C. After 30 minutes, DMF (6.8g) was added dropwise under nitrogen atmosphere at -78°C, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour. Then, 1N  
10 hydrochloric acid (50ml) was added thereto at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes, made basic with 1N sodium hydroxide solution and extracted with ethyl acetate three times. The extract was dried with magnesium sulfate, the solvent was evaporated under  
15 reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 1 : 2) to give 1-methylpyrazole-4-carboxyaldehyde (540mg) as light yellow oil.  
<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 3.97 (s, 3H), 7.91 (s, 1H), 7.96  
20 (s, 1H), 9.86 (s, 1H).

Reference Example 198

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (388mg) and 1-methylpyrazole-4-carboxyaldehyde (540mg) in 1,2-  
25 dichloroethane (15ml) was added sodium

triacetoxyborohydride (519mg), and the mixture was  
 stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for  
 1 day. Then, water was added to the mixture, and the  
 mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic  
 5 layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with  
 magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under  
 reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified  
 with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl  
 acetate = 2 : 3) to give methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-  
 10 1-[(1-methylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-  
 benzazepine-4-carboxylate (321mg) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.34 -  
 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.50 - 1.70 (m, 2H), 2.76 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz),  
 3.27 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.56 (t, 2H, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.78 -  
 15 3.83 (m, 5H), 3.89 (s, 3H), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.42  
 (s, 2H), 6.92 - 7.00 (m, 3H), 7.29 (s, 1H), 7.40 (dd, 1H, J  
 = 8.4, 1.8 Hz), 7.45 - 7.49 (m, 3H), 7.54 (d, 1H, J = 2.2  
 Hz), 7.78 (s, 1H).

#### Reference Example 199

20 To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-  
 [(1-methylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-  
 4-carboxylate (321mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran  
 (24ml) and methanol (24ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide  
 solution (8ml), and the mixture was stirred at room  
 25 temperature for 3 days. Then, to the mixture was added

water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to neutral, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(1-methylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (239mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.34 - 1.49 (m, 2H), 1.55 - 1.65 (m, 2H), 2.79 (t, 2H, J = 4.2 Hz), 3.30 (t, 2H, J = 4.2 Hz), 3.56 (t, 2H, J = 8.6 Hz), 3.81 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.90 (s, 3H), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.44 (s, 2H), 6.94 - 7.01 (m, 3H), 7.30 (s, 1H), 7.40 - 7.50 (m, 4H), 7.56 (d, 1H, J = 2.0 Hz), 7.90 (s, 1H).

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>28</sub>H<sub>33</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub> Calcd. C, 70.71; H, 6.99; N, 8.84. Found C, 70.52; H, 6.90; N, 8.70.

#### Reference Example 200

To a solution of 1-methylpyrazole (10.0g) in dry tetrahydrofuran (200ml) was added dropwise n-butyllithium (91.3ml, 1.6M solution in hexane) at -78°C under nitrogen atmosphere. After 30 minutes, DMF (44.6g) was added dropwise thereto at -78°C under nitrogen atmosphere, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 2 hours. Then, to the mixture



was added 1N hydrochloric acid (200ml) at 0°C, the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes, made basic with 1N sodium hydroxide solution, and extracted with ethyl acetate three times. The mixture was dried with magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give 1-methyl-5-pyrazolecarboxyaldehyde (11.7g) as light yellow oil. <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 4.19 (s, 3H), 6.90 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.54 (d, 1H, J = 1.8 Hz), 9.88 (s, 1H).

Reference Example 201

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (500mg) and 1-methylpyrazole-5-carboxyaldehyde (696mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane (15ml) was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (670mg), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 1 day. Then, water was added to the mixture, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 2 : 3) to give methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(1-methylpyrazol-5-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (391mg) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.55 - 1.70 (m, 2H), 2.58 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.27 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.56 (t, 2H, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.79 - 3.83 (m, 8H), 4.17 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 4.52 (s, 2H), 6.22 (d, 1H, J = 1.8 Hz), 6.92 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.99 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.40 - 7.50 (m, 4H), 7.57 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.79 (s, 1H).

#### Reference Example 202

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-  
10 [(1-methylpyrazol-5-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (391mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (24ml) and methanol (24ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (8ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 days. Then, to the mixture was added  
15 water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to neutral, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, which was  
20 recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(1-methylpyrazol-5-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (263mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.55 - 1.65 (m, 2H), 2.62 (br, 2H), 3.30 (br,

25

2H), 3.56 (t, 2H, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.79 - 3.84 (m, 5H), 4.17 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.54 (s, 2H), 6.22 (d, 1H, J = 1.8 Hz), 6.93 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.99 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.43 - 7.50 (m, 4H), 7.58 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.89 (s, 1H).

5 Anal. Calcd.  $C_{28}H_{33}N_3O_4$  Calcd. C, 70.71; H, 6.99; N, 8.84. Found C, 70.48; H, 6.90; N, 8.80.

#### Reference Example 203

2,5-dimethylisooxazole (10.0g) was dissolved in water (100ml). To the solution were added concentrated  
 10 sulfuric acid (35.3g) and 40% aqueous formaldehyde solution (46.4g) at 0°C, and the mixture was heated at 70°C overnight. The mixture was neutralized with 1N sodium hydroxide solution at 0°C and extracted with chloroform three times. The extract was dried with  
 15 magnesium sulfate, the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was distilled under reduced pressure to give 4-hydroxymethyl-2,5-dimethylisooxazole (2.54g) as colorless liquid.  
 $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.31 (s, 3H), 2.39 (s, 3H), 4.48  
 20 (s, 2H).

#### Reference Example 204

To a solution of 4-hydroxymethyl-2,5-dimethylisooxazole (2.45g) in ethyl acetate (500ml) was added active manganese dioxide (24.5g), and the mixture  
 25 was stirred at room temperature for 3 days. The

insolubles were filtered using Celite, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to give 2,3-dimethylisooxazole-4-carboxyaldehyde (1.5g) as colorless oil.

5  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.42 (s, 3H), 2.69 (s, 3H), 9.95 (s, 1H).

Reference Example 205

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (500mg) and 2,5-dimethylisooxazole-4-carboxyaldehyde (791mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane (15ml) was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (2.0g), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 7 days. Then, water was added to the mixture, and the mixture was  
10 extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 3 : 1) to give methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(2,5-diethylisooxazol-4-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (309mg) as yellow oil.  
15  
20

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.94 (t, 3H,  $J = 7.4$  Hz), 1.34 - 1.48 (m, 2H), 1.49 - 1.68 (m, 2H), 2.19 (s, 3H), 2.27 (s, 3H), 2.59 (t, 2H,  $J = 4.0$  Hz), 3.13 (t, 2H,  $J = 4.4$  Hz),  
25

3.56 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.79 - 3.84 (m, 5H), 4.17 (t, 2H, J = 4.6 Hz), 4.26 (s, 2H), 6.93 (d, 1H, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.99 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.42 - 7.50 (m, 3H), 7.57 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.78 (s, 1H).

5           Reference Example 206

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-  
[(1-methylpyrazol-5-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-  
4-carboxylate (222mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran  
(13ml) and methanol (13ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide  
10 solution (4.4ml), and the mixture was stirred at room  
temperature for 4 days. Then, to the mixture was added  
water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added  
to neutral, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl  
acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and  
15 saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The  
solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, which was  
recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-  
butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(2,5-dimethylisoxazol-4-  
yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid  
20 (164mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (t, 3H, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.34 -  
1.45 (m, 2H), 1.55 - 1.65 (m, 2H), 2.20 (s, 3H), 2.39 (s,  
3H), 2.62 (br, 2H), 3.16 (br, 2H), 3.56 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz),  
3.81 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 4.17 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.28 (s,  
25 2H), 6.93 - 7.02 (m, 3H), 7.46 - 7.51 (m, 3H), 7.58 (d, 1H,

$J = 2.2 \text{ Hz}$ ), 7.87 (s, 1H).

Anal. Calcd.  $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{35}\text{N}_2\text{O}_5$  Calcd. C, 70.85; H, 7.18; N, 5.70.

Found C, 70.71; H, 6.90; N, 5.43.

Reference Example 207

5 To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-  
2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (400mg) and  
furfural (485mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane (15ml) was added  
sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (536mg), and the mixture was  
10 stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for  
1 day. Then, water was added to the mixture, and the  
mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic  
layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with  
magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under  
15 reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified  
with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl  
acetate = 3 : 1) to give methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-  
1-(2-furylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate  
(319mg) as yellow oil.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (t, 3H,  $J = 7.4 \text{ Hz}$ ), 1.30 -  
20 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.46 - 1.70 (m, 2H), 2.77 (t, 2H,  $J = 4.0 \text{ Hz}$ ),  
3.30 (t, 2H,  $J = 4.4 \text{ Hz}$ ), 3.55 (t, 2H,  $J = 6.6 \text{ Hz}$ ), 3.78 -  
3.83 (m, 5H), 4.16 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.0 \text{ Hz}$ ), 4.49 (s, 2H), 6.28  
(d, 2H,  $J = 3.4 \text{ Hz}$ ), 6.37 (dd, 1H,  $J = 2.8, 1.8 \text{ Hz}$ ), 6.98  
(d, 2H,  $J = 8.8 \text{ Hz}$ ), 7.06 (d, 1H,  $J = 8.8 \text{ Hz}$ ), 7.41 - 7.50  
25 (m, 4H), 7.54 (d, 1H,  $J = 2.2 \text{ Hz}$ ), 7.79 (s, 1H).

## Reference Example 208

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-furymethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (319mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (21ml) and methanol (21ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (7ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 5 days. Then, to the mixture was added water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to neutral, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-furymethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (256mg) as yellow crystals.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (t, 3H,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 1.34 - 1.50 (m, 2H), 1.55 - 1.70 (m, 2H), 2.79 (t, 2H,  $J = 4.4$  Hz), 3.33 (t, 2H,  $J = 4.4$  Hz), 3.56 (t, 2H,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.81 (t, 2H,  $J = 4.8$  Hz), 4.17 (t, 2H,  $J = 4.8$  Hz), 4.50 (s, 2H), 6.29 (d, 1H,  $J = 3.2$  Hz), 6.38 (dd, 1H,  $J = 2.8, 1.8$  Hz), 6.99 (d, 2H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.08 (d, 1H,  $J = 9.0$  Hz), 7.42 - 7.50 (m, 4H), 7.55 (d, 1H,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 7.90 (s, 1H).

Anal. Calcd.  $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{31}\text{NO}_5$  Calcd. C, 72.86; H, 6.77; N, 3.03. Found C, 72.63; H, 6.67; N, 2.82.

25

## Reference Example 209

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-  
2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (400mg) and  
pyridine-2-carboxyaldehyde (542mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane  
(15ml) was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (1.07g),  
5 and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at  
room temperature for 4 days. Then, water was added to  
the mixture, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl  
acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated  
brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was  
10 evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting  
residue was purified with silica gel column  
chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 1 : 1) to give  
methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-pyridylmethyl)-2,3-  
dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (378mg) as yellow oil.  
15 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.34 -  
1.45 (m, 2H), 1.50 - 1.65 (m, 2H), 2.84 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz),  
3.40 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.55 (t, 2H, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.78 -  
3.82 (m, 5H), 4.15 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.71 (s, 2H), 6.82  
(d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.97 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.21 - 7.29  
20 (m, 2H), 7.35 (dd, 1H, J = 8.8, 2.2 Hz), 7.46 (d, 2H, J =  
8.8 Hz), 7.56 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.67 (td, 1H, J = 9.0,  
2.0 Hz), 7.83 (s, 1H), 8.62 (d, 1H, J = 4.0 Hz).

## Reference Example 210

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-  
25 (2-pyridylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate



(378mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (24ml) and methanol (24ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (8ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 days. Then, to the mixture was added water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to neutral, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-pyridylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (260mg) as yellow crystals.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (t, 3H,  $J = 7.4$  Hz), 1.30 - 1.48 (m, 2H), 1.54 - 1.68 (m, 2H), 2.87 (t, 2H,  $J = 4.4$  Hz), 3.43 (t, 2H,  $J = 4.4$  Hz), 3.55 (t, 2H,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.80 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.6$  Hz), 4.74 (s, 2H), 6.83 (d, 1H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 6.97 (d, 2H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.20 - 7.31 (m, 2H), 7.37 (dd, 1H,  $J = 8.8, 2.2$  Hz), 7.46 (d, 2H,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.58 (d, 1H,  $J = 1.8$  Hz), 7.69 (td, 1H,  $J = 7.8, 2.0$  Hz), 7.94 (s, 1H), 8.64 (d, 1H,  $J = 5.2$  Hz).

Anal. Calcd.  $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{32}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4 \cdot 0.3\text{H}_2\text{O}$  Calcd. C, 72.87; H, 6.87; N, 5.86. Found C, 72.74; H, 6.73; N, 5.69.

#### Reference Example 211

To a solution of acetamide (4.0g) in tetrahydrofuran (300ml) was added sodium hydrogen carbonate (28.4g),

followed by addition of 80% ethyl bromopyruvate (21.5g)  
at 0°C. The mixture was heated at 85°C overnight, the  
temperature was returned to room temperature, the  
insolubles were filtered using Celite and the solvent was  
5 evaporated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue  
was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (150ml), and to the  
solution was added dropwise trifluoroacetic anhydride at  
0°C. After concentrated under reduced pressure, to the  
mixture was added ethyl acetate, and the mixture was  
10 washed with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution  
twice and further with saturated brine and dried with  
magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under  
reduced pressure, followed by distillation under reduced  
pressure to give ethyl 2-methyloxazole-4-carboxylate  
15 (4.67g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.38 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 2.54 (s,  
3H), 4.39 (q, 2H, J = 7.4 Hz), 8.14 (s, 1H).

#### Reference Example 212

A suspension of aluminum lithium hydride (553mg) in  
20 tetrahydrofuran (20ml) was added dropwise a solution of  
ethyl 2-methyl-oxazole-4-carboxylate (2.26g) in  
tetrahydrofuran (20ml) under nitrogen atmosphere, and the  
mixture was stirred at room temperature for 6 hours. To  
the mixture were successively added water (0.55ml), 15%  
25 sodium hydroxide solution (0.55ml) and water (1.65ml),

the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours and dried with magnesium sulfate. The insolubles were filtered using Celite, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give 4-hydroxymethyl-2-methyloxazole (1.11g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.45 (s, 3H), 4.56 (d, 2H, J = 1.0 Hz), 7.48 (s, 1H).

#### Reference Example 213

To a solution of oxalyl chloride (3.53g) in dichloromethane (100ml) was added dropwise a solution of DMSO (2.89g) in dichloromethane (10ml) at -78°C. Then, to the mixture was added dropwise a solution of 4-hydroxymethyl-2-methyloxazole in dichloromethane (50ml), and the mixture was stirred at -45°C for 1 hour. Then, to the mixture was added dropwise triethylamine (10.3g) at -45°C, and the mixture was stirred at 0°C for 30 minutes. To the mixture were added saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution (50ml) and water (200ml), and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane:ethyl acetate=1:1) to give 2-methyloxazole-4-carboxyaldehyde (0.10g) as brown crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.55 (s, 3H), 8.17 (s, 1H), 9.91

(s, 1H).

Reference Example 214

To a solution of thioacetamide (11.9g) in tetrahydrofuran (600ml) was added sodium hydrogen carbonate (66.4g), followed by addition of 80% ethyl bromopyruvate (50.0g) at 0°C. The mixture was stirred overnight, the insolubles were filtered using Celite and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (170ml), and to the solution was added dropwise trifluoroacetic anhydride (170ml) at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. To the mixture was added dropwise pyridine (200ml) at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, to the mixture was added ethyl acetate, and the mixture was washed with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and further with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 2 : 1) to give ethyl 2-methylthiazole-4-carboxylate (13.0g) as brown crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.41 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 2.78 (s, 3H), 4.43 (q, 2H, J = 7.4 Hz), 8.04 (s, 1H).

## Reference Example 215

A suspension of aluminum lithium hydride (0.89g) in tetrahydrofuran (20ml) was added dropwise a solution of ethyl 2-methylthiazole-4-carboxylate (4.00g) in

5 tetrahydrofuran (30ml) under nitrogen atmosphere, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. To the mixture were successively added water (0.9ml), 15% sodium hydroxide solution (0.9ml) and water (2.7ml), the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours and  
10 dried with magnesium sulfate. The insolubles were filtered using Celite, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give 4-hydroxymethyl-2-methylthiazole (2.18g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.71 (s, 3H), 4.73 (d, 2H, J = 0.8  
15 Hz), 7.03 (s, 1H).

## Reference Example 216

To a solution of 4-hydroxymethyl-2-methylthiazole (2.18g) in ethyl acetate (50ml) was added active manganese (21.8g), and the mixture was stirred at room  
20 temperature for 1 day. The insolubles were filtered using Celite, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to give 2-methylthiazole-4-carboxyaldehyde (0.9g) as brown oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.80 (s, 3H), 8.05 (s, 1H), 9.99  
25 (s, 1H).

## Reference Example 217

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-  
2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (500mg) and 2-  
methylthiazole-4-carboxyaldehyde (804mg) in 1,2-  
5 dichloroethane (20ml) was added sodium  
triacetoxyborohydride (1.6g), and the mixture was stirred  
under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 4 days.  
Then, water was added to the mixture, and the mixture was  
extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was  
10 washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium  
sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced  
pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with  
silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate  
= 3 : 2) to give methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(2-  
15 methylthiazol-4-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-  
carboxylate (550mg) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.34 -  
1.45 (m, 2H), 1.54 - 1.65 (m, 2H), 2.74 (s, 3H), 2.83 (t,  
2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.38 (t, 2H, J = 4.0 Hz), 3.55 (t, 2H, J =  
20 6.6 Hz), 3.78 - 3.83 (m, 5H), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz),  
4.65 (s, 2H), 6.89 - 6.99 (m, 4H), 7.37 (dd, 1H, J = 8.8,  
2.2 Hz), 7.46 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.54 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz),  
7.81 (s, 1H).

## Reference Example 218

25 To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-

[(2-methylthiazol-4-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (550mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (33ml) and methanol (33ml) was added solution (11ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 days.

5 Then, to the mixture was added water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to neutral, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under  
10 reduced pressure, which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(2-methylthiazol-4-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (427mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.34 -  
15 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.58 - 1.65 (m, 2H), 2.75 (s, 3H), 2.85 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.40 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.55 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.80 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.4 Hz), 4.66 (s, 2H), 6.90 - 7.00 (m, 4H), 7.40 (dd, 1H, J = 9.4, 2.6 Hz), 7.46 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.55 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz),  
20 7.91 (s, 1H).

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>28</sub>H<sub>32</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub> Calcd. C, 68.27; H, 6.55; N, 5.69.  
Found C, 68.25; H, 6.69; N, 5.82.

#### Reference Example 219

In water (28ml) and ice (100cc) was suspended 5-  
25 amino-3-methylisothiazole hydrochloride (10.0g), and

concentrated sulfuric acid (28ml) was added to the suspension. Then, to the mixture was added dropwise a solution of sodium nitrite (4.82g) in water (100ml) at 0°C. The mixture was stirred at 0°C for 1 hour, and a solution of potassium iodide (11.6g) in water (70ml) was added dropwise to the mixture at 0°C. Then, the mixture was heated at 80°C for 1 hour, and to the mixture was added ethyl acetate at 0°C, and the mixture was neutralized with potassium carbonate. After separation, the organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and origin components were removed by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate) to give 5-iodo-3-methylisothiazole (10.6g) as deep brown oil.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.51 (s, 3H), 7.15 (s, 1H).

#### Reference Example 220

To a solution of 5-iodo-3-methylisothiazole (10.0g) in dry tetrahydrofuran (150ml) was added dropwise n-butyllithium (33.3ml, 1.6M solution in hexane) at -78°C under nitrogen atmosphere. After 30 minutes, to the mixture was added dropwise DMF (9.7g) at -78°C under nitrogen atmosphere, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 2 hours. Then, to the mixture was added 1N hydrochloric acid



(75ml) at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was dried with magnesium sulfate, the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was subjected to silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate) to remove origin components to give 3-methylisothiazole-5-carboxyaldehyde (5.0g) as deep brown oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.59 (s, 3H), 7.54 (s, 1H), 10.08 (s, 1H).

Reference Example 221

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (500mg) and 3-methylthiazole-5-carboxyaldehyde(803mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane (15ml) was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (807mg), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 1 day. Then, water was added to the mixture, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 2 : 1) to give methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(3-methylthiazol-5-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-5-carboxylate (640mg) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.50 - 1.70 (m, 2H), 2.48 (s, 3H), 2.85 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.34 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.55 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.78 - 3.82 (m, 5H), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.76 (s, 2H), 6.87 - 7.00 (m, 4H), 7.41 (dd, 1H, J = 8.8, 2.2 Hz), 7.47 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.56 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.80 (s, 1H).

## Reference Example 222

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(3-methylthiazol-5-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (640mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (39ml) and methanol (39ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (13ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 day. Then, to the mixture was added water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to neutral, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(3-methylthiazol-5-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (460mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.55 - 1.69 (m, 2H), 2.49 (s, 3H), 2.87 (t,

2H,  $J = 4.4$  Hz), 3.37 (t, 2H,  $J = 4.4$  Hz), 3.56 (t, 2H,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.81 (t, 2H,  $J = 4.4$  Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.0$  Hz), 4.78 (s, 2H), 6.89 - 7.01 (m, 4H), 7.40 - 7.49 (m, 3H), 7.58 (d, 1H,  $J = 1.8$  Hz), 7.91 (s, 1H).

5 Anal. Calcd.  $C_{28}H_{32}N_2O_4S$  Calcd. C, 68.27; H, 6.55; N, 5.69. Found C, 67.94; H, 6.55; N, 5.97.

#### Reference Example 223

To a solution of methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (200mg) and pyridine (123mg)  
 10 in tetrahydrofuran (10ml) was added 2-thenoyl chloride (208mg) at 0°C, and the mixture was heated at 78°C overnight. After allowing to cool, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and  
 15 saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated, which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give methyl 7-bromo-1-(2-thienylcarbonyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (236mg) as colorless crystals.

20  $^1H$ -NMR (200 MHz,  $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  2.98 (br, 2H), 3.82 (s, 3H), 6.73 (dd, 1H,  $J = 4.0, 1.0$  Hz), 6.80 - 6.85 (m, 1H), 6.91 (d, 1H, 8.8), 7.26 - 7.31 (m, 1H), 7.37 (dd, 1H,  $J = 5.2, 1.4$  Hz), 7.68 - 7.69 (m, 2H).

Anal. Calcd.  $C_{17}H_{14}NO_3Br$  Calcd. C, 52.05; H, 3.60; N, 3.57.  
 25 Found C, 52.05; H, 3.45; N, 3.38.

## Reference Example 224

In toluene (10ml), ethanol (1.0ml) and water (1.0ml) were suspended methyl 7-bromo-1-(2-thienylcarbonyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (210mg), 4-butoxyethoxyphenyl borate (166mg) and potassium carbonate (192mg), and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes under argon atmosphere. Then, to the suspension was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (43mg), and the mixture was heated at 100°C for 5 hours under argon atmosphere. After allowing to cool, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 1 : 1) to give methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-thienylcarbonyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (201mg) as colorless oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.30 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.50 - 1.65 (m, 2H), 3.00 (br, 2H), 3.56 (t, 2H, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.79 - 3.84 (m, 5H), 4.18 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 6.74 - 6.82 (m, 2H), 7.02 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.08 (d, 1H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.32 - 7.40 (m, 2H), 7.54 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.72 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.83 (s, 1H).

## Reference Example 225

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-thienylcarbonyl)--2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (200mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (12ml) and methanol (12ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (4ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 day. Then, to the mixture was added water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to neutral, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-thienylcarbonyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (171mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.50 - 1.70 (m, 2H), 3.02 (br, 2H), 3.56 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.82 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 4.18 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.72 - 6.83 (m, 2H), 7.02 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.09 (d, 1H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.34 - 7.42 (m, 2H), 7.54 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.74 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.92 (s, 1H).

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>28</sub>H<sub>29</sub>NO<sub>5</sub>S Calcd. C, 68.41; H, 5.95; N, 2.85. Found C, 68.18; H, 6.03; N, 2.84.

## Reference Example 226

To a suspension of 60% sodium hydride (2.3g) in

tetrahydrofuran (40ml) which had been washed with hexane three times was added a solution of 4-bromopyrazole (7.0g) in tetrahydrofuran (40ml) at 0°C under nitrogen atmosphere, the temperature was returned room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour. To this mixture was added dropwise a solution of ethyl iodide (8.9g) in tetrahydrofuran (30ml) at 0°C under nitrogen atmosphere, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred overnight. The solution was diluted with tetrahydrofuran, and the insolubles were filtered using Celite. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure, hexane was added thereto, and the insolubles were filtered. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to give 4-bromo-1-ethylpyrazole (7.72g) as light yellow liquid.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.48 (t, 3H, J = 7.8 Hz), 4.16 (q, 2H, J = 7.4 Hz), 7.41 (s, 1H), 7.45 (s, 1H).

#### Reference Example 227

To a solution of 4-bromo-1-ethylpyrazole (7.0g) in dry tetrahydrofuran (150ml) was added dropwise n-butyllithium (30ml, 1.6M solution in hexane) at -78°C under nitrogen atmosphere. After 30 minutes, to the mixture was added dropwise DMF (14.6g) at -78°C under nitrogen atmosphere, the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour.

Then, to the mixture was added 1N hydrochloric acid (60ml) at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes, which was made basic with 1N sodium hydroxide solution, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate five times. The extract was dried with magnesium sulfate, the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was subjected to silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 1 : 2) to give 1-ethylpyrazole-4-carboxyaldehyde (2.9g) as light yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.54 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 4.24 (q, 2H, J = 7.4 Hz), 7.95 (s, 1H), 7.97 (s, 1H), 9.86 (s, 1H).

#### Reference Example 228

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (300mg) and 1-ethylpyrazole-4-carboxyaldehyde (471mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane (10ml) was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (804mg), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 2 days. Then, water was added to the mixture, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane:ethyl

acetate=1:1) to give methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-  
[(1-ethylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-  
5-carboxylate (382mg) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.34 -  
5 1.70 (m, 7H), 2.76 (br, 2H), 3.27 (br, 2H), 3.56 (t, 2H, J  
= 6.6 Hz), 3.39 - 3.83 (m, 5H), 4.07 - 4.29 (m, 4H), 4.42  
(s, 2H), 6.94 - 7.00 (m, 3H), 7.33 - 7.54 (m, 6H), 7.79 (s,  
1H).

#### Reference Example 229

10 To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-  
[(1-ethylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-  
4-carboxylate (382mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran  
(24ml) and methanol (24ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide  
solution (8ml), and the mixture was stirred at room  
15 temperature for 1 day. Then, to the mixture was added  
water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added  
to neutral, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl  
acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and  
saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The  
20 solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, which was  
recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-  
butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(1-ethylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-2,3-  
dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (287mg) as yellow  
crystals.

25 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.34 -



1.65 (m, 7H), 2.78 (br, 2H), 3.29 (br, 2H), 3.56 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.81 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.11 - 4.22 (m, 4H), 4.44 (s, 2H), 6.95 - 7.01 (m, 3H), 7.34 (s, 1H), 7.41 - 7.50 (m, 4H), 7.56 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.79 (s, 1H).

5 Anal. Calcd.  $C_{29}H_{35}N_3O_4$  Calcd. C, 71.14; H, 7.21; N, 8.58. Found C, 70.84; H, 7.47; N, 8.48.

#### Reference Example 230

To a solution of ethyl 2-methyldioxolan-2-ylacetate (2.0g) in methanol (69ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide  
10 solution (23ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. Then, the mixture was neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. To the mixture was added ethyl acetate, and the mixture was dried with magnesium sulfate.  
15 The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give 2-methyldioxolan-2-ylacetic acid (1.63g) as colorless amorphous.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.51 (s, 3H), 2.74 (s, 2H), 4.03 (s, 4H).

#### 20 Reference Example 231

To a solution of 5-(2-hydroxyethyl)-4-methylthiazole (2.5g) in dichloromethane (125ml) was added Celite (10.0g), and to the mixture was added PCC (18.9g), which was stirred for 2 hours under nitrogen atmosphere. The  
25 insolubles were filtered, followed by washing with ether.

The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was subjected to Florisil column chromatography (ethyl acetate) to remove origin components, and the residue was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 4-methylthiazole-5-carboxyaldehyde (692mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.80 (s, 3H), 8.98 (s, 1H), 10.15 (s, 1H).

#### Reference Example 232

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (300mg) and 4-methylthiazole-5-carboxyaldehyde (482mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane (15ml) was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (804mg), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 6 days. Then, water was added to the mixture, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 1 : 1) to give methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(4-methylthiazol-5-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-5-carboxylate (284mg) as yellow oil.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (t, 3H,  $J = 7.4$  Hz), 1.34 -

1.45 (m, 2H), 1.50 - 1.70 (m, 2H), 2.50 (s, 3H), 2.76 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.26 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.55 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.78 - 3.83 (m, 5H), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 4.4 Hz), 4.65 (s, 2H), 6.93 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.98 (d, 2H, J = 9.2 Hz), 7.41 - 7.50 (m, 3H), 7.56 (d, 1H, J = 2.6 Hz), 7.78 (s, 1H), 8.66 (s, 1H).

Reference Example 233

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(4-methylthiazol-5-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (284mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (18ml) and methanol (18ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (6ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 day. Then, to the mixture was added water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to neutral, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(4-methylthiazol-5-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (201mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.30 - 1.50 (m, 2H), 1.50 - 1.70 (m, 2H), 2.51 (s, 3H), 2.79 (br, 2H), 3.29 (br, 2H), 3.56 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.81 (t, 2H,

J = 4.8 Hz), 4.17 (t, 2H, J = 5.2 Hz), 4.67 (s, 2H), 6.92 - 7.01 (m, 3H), 7.43 - 7.50 (m, 3H), 7.58 (d, 1H, J = 2.6 Hz), 7.89 (s, 1H), 8.68 (s, 1H).

Anal. Calcd.  $C_{28}H_{32}N_2O_4$  Calcd. C, 68.27; H, 6.55; N, 5.69.

5 Found C, 67.95; H, 6.56; N, 5.63.

#### Reference Example 234

To a mixture (135.0g) of methyl 7-bromo-1-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]-oxo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate and ethyl 7-bromo-1-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]-oxo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate in tetrahydrofuran (1200ml) was added sodium borohydride (11.1g) at -65°C, and to the mixture was added dropwise methanol (120ml). After completion of the addition, the mixture was stirred at -10°C to 25°C for 1.5 hours, to the mixture was added dropwise acetone (67.8g, 1.17mol) at -25°C, and the mixture was further stirred for 30 minutes. To the mixture were added ethyl acetate and water at -45°C, which was separated, and the organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give brown oil (152.3g). The oil was dissolved in dry tetrahydrofuran (1000ml) as it was, and to the solution was added dropwise methanesulfonyl chloride (50.1g) at 0°C under nitrogen atmosphere. After completion of the

addition, the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour, and to the mixture was added dropwise DBU (66.6g), which was stirred for 5 hours. To the mixture was added water, the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the organic layer was washed with 1N hydrochloric acid twice and further with water and saturated brine, followed by drying with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give brown oil (148g). This was dissolved in acetic acid (520ml), to the solution was added concentrated sulfuric acid (260ml, 4.88mol) at 0°C, and the mixture was heated at 90°C for 3 hours. After allowing to cool, to the mixture was added water (40ml), and the mixture was heated again at 90°C for 2.5 hours. After allowing to cool, the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. Ice was added to the resulting residue, and 6N sodium hydroxide solution was added to pH = 4. The precipitated solid was collected by filtration, and the solid was dissolved in 1N sodium hydroxide solution (1500ml). The insolubles were removed by filtration, 2N hydrochloric acid was added to the filtrate to adjust to pH = 4 at 0°C, and the precipitated solid was collected by filtration. The solid was dried under reduced pressure to give 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (69.4g) as green solid.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 2.36 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 2.87

(t, 2H,  $J = 4.8$  Hz), 6.35 (d, 1H,  $J = 8.6, 2.6$  Hz), 6.84 (dd, 1H,  $J = 8.6, 2.6$  Hz), 7.08 (d, 1H,  $J = 2.6$  Hz), 7.12 (s, 1H).

Reference Example 235

5 To a suspension of 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (68.2g) in methanol (100ml) was added concentrated sulfuric acid (37.3g) at 0°C, and the mixture was heated at 80°C for 10 hours. After allowing to cool, the solvent was evaporated under  
10 reduced pressure. Ethyl acetate and water were added thereto and 1N sodium hydroxide solution was added to pH=4 at 0°C. The solution was separated, and the organic phase was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under  
15 reduced pressure, the resulting residue was subjected to silica gel column to remove origin components (ethyl acetate), and the resulting solid was washed with diisopropyl ether to give methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (44.0g). The filtrate was  
20 purified with silica gel column (hexane : ethyl acetate = 4 : 1) to give methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (3.4g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.86 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.2$  z), 3.36 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.2$  Hz), 3.80 (s, 3H), 4.57 (br, 1H), 6.49 (d, 1H,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.15 (dd, 1H,  $J = 8.4, 2.2$  Hz), 7.38 (d, 1H,  $J$   
25

= 2.2 Hz), 7.53 (s, 1H).

Reference Example 236

In toluene (100ml), ethanol (10ml) and water (10ml) were suspended methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (3.0g), 4-propoxyethoxyphenyl borate (3.1g) and potassium carbonate (3.8g), and the suspension was stirred for 30 minutes under argon atmosphere. Then, to the suspension was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palldium (860mg), and the mixture was heated at 100°C for 8 hours under argon atmosphere. After allowing to cool, water was added thereto, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 3 : 1) to give the solid, which was washed with hexane to give methyl 7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (2.59g) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.56 - 1.74 (2H, m), 2.88 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.41 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.51 (2H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.78 - 3.83 (m, 5H), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 6.66 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 6.97 (2H, d, J = 6.68 Hz), 7.31 (1H, dd, J = 8.0, 2.2 Hz), 7.43

- 7.47 (3H, m), 7.725 (1H, s).

Reference Example 237

In toluene (200ml) and ethanol (35ml) were suspended methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (5.0g), 4-butoethoxyphenyl borate (4.6g) and 1M potassium carbonate solution (35ml), and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes under argon atmosphere. Then, to the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (1.0g), and the mixture was heated at 100°C overnight under argon atmosphere. After allowing to cool, to the mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 4 : 1) to give the solid, which was washed with hexane to give methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (5.7g) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.29 - 1.49 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.68 (2H, m), 2.86 - 2.95 (2H, m), 3.41 - 3.45 (2H, m), 3.56 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.68 (1H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.34 (1H, d, J = 8.6, 2.0 Hz), 7.43 - 7.48 (3H, m), 7.85 (1H, s).



$C_{23}H_{27}NO_4$ , Calcd. C, 72.42; H, 7.13; N, 3.67. Found C, 72.32; H, 7.01; N, 3.84.

Reference Example 238

To a suspension of 60% sodium hydride (4.2g) in  
5 tetrahydrofuran (40ml) which had been washed with hexane  
three times was added dropwise a solution of 4-  
bromopyrazole (7.0g) in tetrahydrofuran (50ml) at 0°C  
under nitrogen atmosphere, the temperature was returned  
to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 1  
10 hour. To the mixture was added dropwise a solution of  
ethyl iodide (17.8g) in tetrahydrofuran (30ml) at 0°C  
under nitrogen atmosphere and the mixture was refluxed  
for 1 day. The solution was diluted with tetrahydrofuran,  
and the insolubles were filtered using Celite. After the  
15 filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure, hexane  
was further added, and the insolubles were removed by  
filtration. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced  
pressure, followed by distillation under reduced pressure  
to give 4-bromo-1-isopropylpyrazole (5.8g) as light  
20 yellow liquid.

$^1H$ -NMR (200 MHz,  $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  1.50 (d, 6H,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 4.40 -  
4.54 (m, 1H), 7.43 (s, 1H), 7.45 (s, 1H).

Reference Example 239

To a solution of 4-bromo-1-isopropylpyrazole (5.0g)  
25 in dry ether (75ml) was added dropwise n-butyllithium

(22ml, 1.6M solution in hexane) at -78°C under nitrogen atmosphere. After 30 minutes, to the mixture was added dropwise DMF (9.7g) at -78°C under nitrogen atmosphere, the temperature was returned to room temperature and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour. Then, to the mixture was added 1N hydrochloric acid (40ml) at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes, made basic with 1N sodium hydroxide solution, extracted with ethyl acetate five times and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give 1-isopropylpyrazole-4-carboxyaldehyde (3.6g) as light yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.55 (d, 6H, J = 6.6 Hz), 4.48 - 4.61 (m, 1H), 7.98 (s, 2H), 9.86 (s, 1H).

#### Reference Example 240

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (300mg) and 1-isopropylpyrazole-4-carboxyaldehyde (524mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane (10ml) was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (964mg), and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 4 days. Then, water was added to the mixture, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under

reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 3 : 1) to give methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(1-isopropylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-5-carboxylate (392mg) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (t, 3H, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.34 - 1.65 (m, 10H), 2.75 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.26 (t, 2H, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.55 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.78 - 3.83 (m, 5H), 4.16 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.42 (s, 2H), 4.44 - 4.61 (m, 1H), 6.94 - 7.00 (m, 3H), 7.36 - 7.50 (m, 5H), 7.55 (d, 1H, J = 2.6 Hz), 7.79 (s, 1H).

#### Reference Example 241

To a solution of methyl 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(1-ethylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (392mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (24ml) and methanol (24ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (8ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 days. Then, to the mixture was added water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to neutral, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-[(1-isopropylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-

2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (229mg) as yellow crystals.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (t, 3H,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.50 (d, 6H,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 1.53 - 1.68 (m, 2H),  
5 2.77 (br, 2H), 3.29 (br, 2H), 3.56 (t, 2H,  $J = 6.6$  Hz),  
3.81 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.2$  Hz), 4.16 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.0$  Hz), 4.43 -  
4.52 (m, 3H), 6.96 - 7.00 (m, 3H), 7.36 - 7.55 (m, 6H),  
7.89 (s, 1H).

Anal. Calcd.  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{37}\text{N}_3\text{O}_4$  Calcd. C, 71.54; H, 7.40; N, 8.34.

10 Found C, 71.16; H, 7.24; N, 8.23.

#### Reference Example 242

To a solution of methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (800mg) and 1-ethylpyrazole-4-carboxyaldehyde (1.05g) in 1,2-dichloroethane (30ml) were  
15 added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (3.0g) and acetic acid (853mg) and the mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere at room temperature for 2 days. Then, water was added to the mixture, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with  
20 saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 1 : 1) to give  
methyl 7-bromo-1-[(1-ethylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-2,3-  
25 dihydro-1-benzazepine-5-carboxylate (593mg) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.48 (t, 3H, J = 6.6 Hz), 2.73 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.22 (t, 2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.80 (s, 3H), 4.15 (q, 2H, J = 7.4 Hz), 4.36 (s, 2H), 6.77 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.22 - 7.29 (m, 2H), 7.42 (s, 1H), 7.45 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.60 (s, 1H).

Reference Example 243

In toluene (15ml), ethanol (1.5ml) and water (1.5ml) were suspended methyl 7-bromo-1-[(1-ethylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (550mg), 4-propoxyethoxyphenyl borate (320mg) and potassium carbonate (506mg), and the suspension was stirred for 30 minutes under argon atmosphere. Then, to the suspension was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palldium (81mg), and the mixture was heated at 100°C for 6 hours under argon atmosphere. After allowing to cool, water was added thereto, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane : ethyl acetate = 1 : 1) to give methyl 1-[(1-ethylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (370mg) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.06 (t, 3H, J = 7.6 Hz), 1.48 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.75 - 1.95 (m, 2H), 2.76 (t, 2H, J = 5.4

Hz), 3.27 (t, 2H, J = 5.4 Hz), 3.81 (s, 3H), 3.96 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 4.16 (q, 2H, J = 7.4 Hz), 4.42 (s, 2H), 6.93 - 6.97 (m, 3H), 7.33 (s, 1H), 7.38 - 7.49 (m, 4H), 7.54 (d, 1H, J = 2.4 Hz), 7.79 (s, 1H).

5           Reference Example 244

To a solution of methyl 1-[(1-ethylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (370mg) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (24ml) and methanol (24ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (8ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 day. Then, to the mixture was added water at 0°C, and 1N hydrochloric acid was further added to neutral, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give 1-[(1-ethylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (330mg) as yellow oil.

20   <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.06 (t, 3H, J = 7.6 Hz), 1.49 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.78 - 1.89 (m, 2H), 2.78 (br, 2H), 3.30 (br, 2H), 3.96 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 4.16 (q, 2H, J = 7.4 Hz), 4.44 (s, 2H), 6.93 - 6.99 (m, 3H), 7.34 (s, 1H), 7.40 - 7.50 (m, 4H), 7.56 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.89 (s, 1H).

25           Reference Example 245

In methanol (25ml) and THF (10ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-methythiazol-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.17g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (4ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight, heated at 60°C for 5 hours, concentrated, neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-methylthiazol-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.12g) as yellow crystals.

mp 155 - 158°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (δ ppm, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.31 - 1.49 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.69 (2H, m), 2.67 (3H, s), 2.87 (2H, t-like), 3.56 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.82 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 3.96 (2H, t-like), 4.17 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 5.97 (1H, s), 7.00 (2H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.44 (2H, s), 7.51 (2H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.63 (1H, s), 7.88 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) v: 2926, 1674, 1530, 1495 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

#### Reference Example 246

In THF (6.0ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.30g). To the solution was added 60%

sodium hydride (61mg) under ice-cooling and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. To the mixture was added crotyl bromide (0.31ml), and the mixture was stirred at 60°C for 4 days. After cooled to room temperature, the reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 4/1) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-crotyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.23g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.33 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.65 (2H, m), 1.75 (3H, d, J = 5.2 Hz), 2.71 - 2.82 (2H, m), 3.22 - 3.27 (2H, m), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.77 - 3.82 (2H, m), 3.81 (3H, s), 3.88 (2H, d, J = 4.4 Hz), 5.22 (1H, m), 5.63 (1H, m), 6.85 - 7.01 (3H, m), 7.36 - 7.49 (4H, m), 7.77 (1H, s).

#### Reference Example 247

In THF (4.4ml)/methanol (4.4ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-crotyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.22g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (2.2ml), and the mixture was stirred at 40°C for 6 hours. pH was adjusted



to approximate 5 with 1N hydrochloric acid, and the solvent was concentrated to half under reduced pressure. The concentrated material was extracted with ethyl acetate, washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was washed with hexane/ethyl acetate=8/1) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-crotyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (198mg).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.65 (2H, m), 1.76 (3H, d, J = 5.4 Hz), 2.82 (2H, m), 3.27 (2H, m), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.78 - 3.83 (2H, m), 3.89 (3H, s), 4.13 - 4.18 (2H, m), 5.23 (1H, m), 5.66 (1H, m), 6.88 (1H, d, J = 6.2 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.38 - 7.53 (4H, m), 7.88 (1H, s).

#### Working Example 83 (Production of Compound 83)

In DMF (3.9ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-crotyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.20g). To the solution was added thionyl chloride (82μl), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and a solution of the resulting residue in THF was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[methyl(tetrahydropyranyl-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (111mg) and triethylamine (0.31ml) in THF (3.3ml) under

ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol = 4/1), which was recrystallized from isopropyl ether/ethyl acetate to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-crotyl-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 83) (9mg).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.25 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.53 - 1.78 (6H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.68 (1H, m), 3.33 - 3.43 (4H, m), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.59 (2H, s), 3.77 - 3.80 (2H, m), 3.88 (2H, m), 3.98 - 4.07 (2H, m), 4.12 - 4.18 (2H, m), 5.24 (1H, m), 5.62 (1H, m), 6.68 (3H, s), 6.90 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.97 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.27 - 7.58 (7H, m).

#### Reference Example 248

Methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (2.0g) was dissolved in 1,2-dichloroethane (70ml). To the solution were added isobutylaldehyde (3.2ml) and sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (5.26g), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours.

The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was added to water and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 6/1) to give methyl 7-bromo-1-isobutyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.82g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.92 (6H, d, J = 6.6 Hz), 2.03 (1H, m), 2.77 - 2.82 (2H, m), 3.10 (2H, d, J = 7.4 Hz), 3.21 - 3.26 (2H, m), 3.80 (3H, s), 6.71 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.19 - 7.26 (1H, m), 7.42 (1H, d, J = 2.6 Hz), 7.58 (1H, s).

#### Reference Example 249

In toluene/ethanol/water (= 10/1/1, 41ml) was dissolved methyl 7-bromo-1-isobutyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.90g). To the solution were added 4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (0.72g) and potassium carbonate (0.81g) and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes under argon atmosphere. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (123mg), and the mixture was heated to reflux for 14 hours. After cooled to room temperature, the solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine, and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under

reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 8/1) to give methyl 1-isobutyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.79g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.94 (3H, t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 0.95 (6H, d,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 1.57 - 1.72 (2H, m), 1.98 - 2.15 (1H, m), 2.80 - 2.85 (2H, m), 3.16 (2H, d,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 3.27 - 3.32 (2H, m), 3.51 (2H, t,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.78 - 3.83 (2H, m), 3.81 (3H, s), 4.13 - 4.19 (2H, m), 6.89 (1H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 6.95 - 7.00 (2H, m), 7.39 (1H, dd,  $J = 8.8, 2.2$  Hz), 7.43 - 7.49 (3H, m), 7.77 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 2961, 2870, 1701, 1607, 1499, 1248, 1180, 927, 820  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

#### Reference Example 250

In THF (15.8ml)/methanol (15.8ml) was dissolved methyl 1-isobutyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.79g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (7.9ml) and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 20 hours. pH was adjusted to approximate 4 with 1N hydrochloric acid, and the solvent was concentrated to half under reduced pressure. The concentrated material was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium

sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was washed with hexane/ethyl acetate (= 6/1) to give 1-isobutyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.57g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.95 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 0.96 (6H, d, J = 6.6 Hz), 1.59 - 1.71 (2H, m), 2.00 - 2.17 (1H, m), 2.80 - 2.86 (2H, m), 3.19 (2H, d, J = 7.2 Hz), 3.30 - 3.35 (2H, m), 3.52 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.17 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 6.90 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.38 - 7.53 (4H, m), 7.89 (1H, s).

#### Working Example 84 (Production of Compound 84)

In THF (11.4ml) was dissolved 1-isobutyl-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.57g). To the solution was added oxalyl chloride (0.23ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, a solution of the resulting residue in THF was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[methyl(tetrahydropyranyl-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.33g) and triethylamine (0.94ml) in THF (9.9ml) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and

dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol = 4/1), which was recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate to give 1-isobutyl-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 84) (0.56g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 0.97 (6H, d, J = 6.6 Hz), 1.62 - 1.82 (6H, m), 2.00 - 2.17 (1H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.64 (1H, m), 2.87 - 2.95 (2H, m), 3.18 (2H, d, J = 7.4 Hz), 3.30 - 3.43 (4H, m), 3.51 (2H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.56 (2H, s), 3.78 - 3.83 (2H, m), 3.99 - 4.07 (2H, m), 4.13 - 4.19 (2H, m), 6.91 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.97 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.27 - 7.57 (10H, m).

IR (KBr) 3303, 2957, 1636, 1607, 1499, 1244, 1122, 926, 812 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>39</sub>H<sub>51</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub> Calcd. C, 74.85; N, 6.71; H, 8.21. Found C, 74.69; N, 6.92; H, 8.34.

## 20 Reference Example 251

Methyl 7-bromo-1-isobutyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.90g) was dissolved in toluene/ethanol/water (=10/1/1, 41ml). To the solution were added 4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (0.76g) and potassium carbonate (0.18g), and the mixture was stirred

under argon atmosphere for 30 minutes. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (123mg), and the mixture was heated to reflux for 14 hours. After cooled to room temperature, the reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate=8/1) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-isobutyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.75g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (3H, t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 0.95 (6H, d,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 1.37 - 1.67 (4H, m), 2.26 (1H, m), 2.82 (2H, m), 3.17 (2H, d,  $J = 4.8$  Hz), 3.30 (2H, t,  $J = 4.8$  Hz), 3.55 (2H, t,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.77 - 3.83 (2H, m), 3.81 (3, s), 4.13 - 4.18 (2H, m), 6.89 (1H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 6.94 - 7.00 (2H, m), 7.36 - 7.52 (4H, m), 7.77 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 2959, 1703, 1607, 1499, 1244, 1181, 814  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

#### Reference Example 252

In THF (15.0ml)/methanol (15.0ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-isobutyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.75g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (7.5ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 20

hours. pH was adjusted to approximate 4 with 1N hydrochloric acid, and the solvent was concentrated to half under reduced pressure. The concentrated material was extracted with ethyl acetate, washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was washed with hexane/ethyl acetate (= 6/1) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-isobutyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.61g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 0.96 (6H, d, J = 6.6 Hz), 1.34 - 1.47 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.66 (2H, m), 2.08 (1H, m), 2.79 - 2.85 (2H, m), 3.19 (2H, d, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.30 - 3.35 (2H, m), 3.56 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.16 (2H, J = 4.8 Hz), 6.90 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.38 - 7.53 (4H, m), 7.89 (1H, s).

#### Working Example 85 (Production of Compound 85)

In THF (12.0ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-isobutyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.60g). To the solution was added oxalyl chloride (0.24ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, a solution of the resulting residue in THF was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[methyl(tetrahydropyranyl-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline



(0.33g) and triethylamine (0.96ml) in THF (9.6ml) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol = 4/1), which was recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-isobutyl-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 85) (0.49g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (3H, t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 1.97 (6H, d,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 1.33 - 1.46 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.77 (6H, m), 2.07 (1H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.64 (1H, m), 2.88 - 2.95 (2H, m), 3.18 (2H, d,  $J = 7.4$  Hz), 3.30 - 3.43 (4H, m), 3.51 - 3.59 (2H, m), 3.56 (2H, s), 3.77 - 3.83 (2H, m), 3.98 - 4.07 (2H, m), 4.12 - 4.18 (2H, m), 6.91 (1H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 6.99 (2H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.29 (1H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.36 - 7.58 (9H, m).

IR (KBr) 3303, 2955, 1636, 1597, 1499, 1242, 1121, 926, 812  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd.  $\text{C}_{40}\text{H}_{53}\text{N}_3\text{O}_4$  Calcd. C, 75.08; N, 6.57; H, 8.35.

Found C, 74.99; N, 6.69; H, 8.16.

## Reference Example 253

In 1,2-dichloroethane (60ml) was dissolved methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.7g). To the solution were added isopentylaldehyde (3.1g) and sodium triacetoxyborohydride (4.5g), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 5/1) to give methyl 7-bromo-1-isopentyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.84g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.95 (6H, d,  $J = 6.2$  Hz), 1.48 - 1.62 (3H, m), 2.79 (2H, t,  $J = 4.4$  Hz), 3.21 (2H, t,  $J = 4.4$  Hz), 3.24 - 3.33 (2H, m), 3.80 (3H, s), 6.68 (1H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.20 - 7.26 (1H, m), 7.41 (1H, d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 7.56 (1H, s).

## Reference Example 254

In THF (36ml)/methanol (36ml) was dissolved methyl 7-bromo-1-isopentyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.8g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (18ml), and the mixture was stirred at

room temperature for 24 hours. pH was adjusted to approximate 5 with 1N hydrochloric acid, and the solvent was concentrated to half under reduced pressure. The concentrated material was extracted with ethyl acetate, washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was washed with hexane/ethyl acetate (= 6/1) to give 7-bromo-1-isopentyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (1.51g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.96 (6H, d, J = 6.2 Hz), 1.52 - 1.71 (3H, m), 2.78 - 2.84 (2H, m), 3.21 - 3.26 (2H, m), 3.32 (2H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 6.69 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.22 - 7.29 (1H, m), 7.43 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.68 (1H, s).

#### Reference Example 255

In DMF (30ml) was dissolved 7-bromo-1-isopentyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (1.5g). To the solution was added thionyl chloride (0.84ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, a solution of the resulting residue in THF was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[methyl(tetrahydropyranyl-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (1.04g) and triethylamine (3.2ml) in THF (20.8ml) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was

extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol = 3/1) to give 7-bromo-1-isopentyl-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (1.35g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.96 (6H, d, J = 6.2 Hz), 1.54 - 1.86 (5H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.66 (1H, m), 2.88 (2H, m), 3.26 (2H, m), 3.28 - 3.44 (2H, m), 3.57 (2H, s), 3.98 - 4.11 (2H, m), 6.70 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.18 - 7.40 (3H, m), 7.54 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.64 (1H, s), 8.02 (1H, s).

#### Working Example 86 (Production of Compound 86)

In toluene/ethanol/water (=10/1/1, 31.5ml) was dissolved 7-bromo-1-isopentyl-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (0.66g). To the solution were added 4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (0.33g) and potassium carbonate (0.37g), and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes under argon atmosphere. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (56mg), and the mixture was heated to reflux for 16 hours. After cooled to room temperature, the reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl

acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol = 3/1). The purified residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate and filtered to give a solution. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, followed by recrystallization from isopropyl ether/ethyl acetate to give 1-isopentyl-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 86) (80mg).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 0.96 (6H, d, J = 6.0 Hz), 1.54 - 1.76 (6H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.68 (1H, m), 2.89 (2H, m), 3.30 - 3.50 (9H, m), 3.51 (2H, t, J = 6.2 Hz), 3.58 (2H, s), 3.98 - 4.07 (2H, m), 4.15 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 6.65 (1H, s), 6.70 - 6.81 (1H, m), 6.88 (1H, d, J = 9.2 Hz), 6.96 (2H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.30 - 7.69 (9H, m).

IR (KBr) 3312, 2953, 2867, 1644, 1605, 1501, 1244, 829 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

#### Working Example 87 (Production of Compound 87)

In toluene/ethanol/water (=10/1/1, 31.5ml) was dissolved 7-bromo-1-isopentyl-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (0.66g). To the solution were added 4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (0.35g) and

potassium carbonate (0.37g), and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes under argon atmosphere. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (56mg), and the mixture was heated to reflux for 16 hours. After  
5 cooled to room temperature, the reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was  
10 purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol = 3/1). The purified residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate and filtered to give a solution. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, followed by recrystallization from isopropyl ether/ethyl  
15 acetate to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-isopentyl-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 87) (74mg).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 0.98 (6H,  
20 d, J = 6.2 Hz), 1.33 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.75 (6H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.67 (1H, m), 2.85 - 2.92 (2H, m), 3.30 - 3.43 (9H, m), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.58 (2H, s), 3.77 - 3.83 (2H, m), 4.00 - 4.06 (2H, m), 4.12 - 4.17 (2H, m), 6.66 (1H, s), 6.89 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.97 (2H, d, J =  
25 8.8 Hz), 7.29 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.38 - 7.63 (7H, m).

IR (KBr) 3328, 2957, 2870, 1642, 1607, 1503, 1242, 1140, 823  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Reference Example 256

In THF (14.0ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.70g). To the solution was added 60% sodium hydride (142mg) at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. To the mixture was added 1-bromo-3-methyl-2-butene (0.83ml), and the mixture was stirred at 60°C for 60 hours. After cooled to room temperature, the mixture was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl/acetate = 4/1) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(3-methyl-2-butenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.71g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (3H, d,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 1.33-1.45 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.68 (2H, m), 1.75 (3H, s), 1.78 (3H, s), 2.78 - 2.83 (2H, m), 3.19 - 3.25 (2H, m), 3.55 (2H, t,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.77 - 3.80 (2H, m), 3.93 (2H, d,  $J = 6.2$  Hz), 4.10 - 4.18 (2H, m), 5.32 (1H, m), 6.86 (1H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 6.97 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.37 - 7.52 (4H, m), 7.76 (1H, s).

## Reference Example 257

In THF (14.0ml)/methanol (14.0ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(3-methyl-2-butenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.70g).

5 To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide (7.0ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. pH was adjusted to approximate 4 with 1N hydrochloric acid, and the solvent was concentrated to half under reduced pressure. The concentrated material  
10 was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was washed with hexane/ethyl acetate (= 6/1) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-  
15 (3-methyl-2-butenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.46g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, d, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.35 - 1.47 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.65 (2H, m), 1.76 (3H, s), 1.79 (3H, s), 2.79 - 2.85 (2H, m), 3.21 - 3.29 (2H, m), 3.56 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.78 - 3.83 (2H, m), 3.95 (2H, d, J = 5.8 Hz),  
20 4.13 - 4.19 (2H, m), 5.33 (1H, m), 6.87 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.38 - 7.54 (2H, m), 7.47 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.89 (1H, s).

## Working Example 88 (Production of Compound 88)

25 In THF (9.0ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-



butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(3-methyl-2-butenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.40g). To the solution was added oxalyl chloride (0.18ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, a solution of the resulting residue in THF was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[methyl(tetrahydropyranyl-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.24g) and triethylamine (0.70ml) in THF (7.2ml) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol = 4/1), which was recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-isobutyl-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 88) (0.33g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, d, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.33 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.67 (6H, m), 1.77 (3H, s), 1.80 (3H, s), 2.21 (3H, m), 2.65 (1H, m), 2.91 (2H, m), 3.25 - 3.44 (4H, m), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.57 (2H, s), 3.80 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.95 (2H, d, J = 6.2 Hz), 4.00 - 4.08 (2H,

m), 4.16 2H, t,  $J = 4.6$  Hz), 5.34 (1H, m), 6.89 (1H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 6.97 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.27 - 7.56 (10H, m).

IR (KBr) 2926, 2865, 1703, 1607, 1499, 1244, 1181, 814  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd.  $\text{C}_{41}\text{H}_{53}\text{N}_3\text{O}_4$  Calcd. C, 75.54; N, 6.45; H, 8.19.

5 Found C, 75.39; N, 6.40; H, 8.03.

Reference Example 258

In THF (228ml) was dissolved 2-ethoxyethanol (22.8g). To the solution were added triethylamine (49.3ml) and methanesulfonyl chloride (23.6ml) at  $0^\circ\text{C}$ , and the mixture  
10 was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the  
15 resulting residue was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino]butyric acid (30.0g) and 60% sodium hydride (10.1g) in THF (450ml). The mixture was stirred at  $60^\circ\text{C}$  for 16 hours, cooled to room temperature, and the reaction solution was added to water. To the  
20 mixture was added 1N sodium hydroxide (50ml), and the mixture was washed with ethyl acetate. The mixture was neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated sodium thiosulfate solution and dried with magnesium  
25 sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure,

and the resulting residue was dissolved in methylene chloride (54.6ml), which was added dropwise to a solution of concentrated sulfuric acid (8.23ml) and magnesium sulfate (28.3g) in methylene chloride (273ml). To the mixture was added 2-methyl-2-propanol (28.1ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. To the mixture was added an aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate to adjust pH to approximate 8, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 6/1 → 5/1) to give tert-butyl 4-[(benzyloxycarbonyl)(2-ethoxyethyl)amino]butyrate (8.7g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.20 (3H, d, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.44 (9H, s), 1.71 - 1.82 (2H, m), 2.27 (2H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 2.64 (2H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 2.72 - 2.81 (2H, m), 3.50 (2H, q, J = 7.4 Hz), 3.50 - 3.56 (2H, m).

#### Reference Example 259

In methanol (87ml) was dissolved tert-butyl 4-[(benzyloxycarbonyl)(2-ethoxyethyl)amino]butyrate (8.7g). To the solution was added 10% palladium/carbon (0.87g), and the mixture was stirred for 3 hours under hydrogen atmosphere. 10% palladium/carbon was removed by

filtration with Celite, and the solvent of the resulting solution was removed under reduced pressure to give tert-butyl 4-[(2-ethoxyethyl)amino]butyrate (5.5g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.26 (3H, d, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.43 (9H, s), 1.77 - 1.87 (2H, m), 2.18 - 2.27 (2H, m), 3.31 - 3.57 (6H, m), 5.13 (2H, s), 7.32 - 7.37 (5H, m).

#### Reference Example 260

In DMF (43.9ml) was dissolved tert-butyl 4-[(2-ethoxyethyl)amino]butyrate (5.5g). To the solution was added 5-bromo-2-fluorobenzaldehyde (4.4g), followed by addition of potassium carbonate (3.6g). The mixture was stirred at 90°C for 60 hours and cooled to room temperature. The reaction solution was added to water, the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 6/1 → 5/1) to give tert-butyl 4-[4-bromo(2-ethoxyethyl)-2-formylanilino]butyrate (2.3g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.12 (3H, d, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.41 (9H, s), 1.76 - 1.81 (2H, m), 2.16 - 2.24 (2H, m), 3.23 (2H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 3.28 - 3.39 (4H, m), 3.37 (2H, q, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.43 - 3.49 (2H, m), 7.14 (1H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.59 (1H, dd, J = 8.8, 2.6 Hz), 7.91 (1H, d, J = 2.4 Hz), 10.30 (1H, s).

## Reference Example 261

In toluene (4.8ml)/2-methyl-2-propanol (0.48ml) was dissolved tert-butyl 4-[4-bromo(2-ethoxyethyl)-2-formylanilino]butyrate (2.4g). To the solution was added potassium tert-butoxide (72mg), the mixture was stirred at 100°C for 1 hour and cooled to room temperature. The reaction solution was added to water, the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate.

The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 6/1) to give tert-butyl 7-bromo-1-(2-ethoxyethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.15g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.21 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.53 (9H, s), 2.76 (2H, t, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.26 (2H, t, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.44 - 3.54 (2H, m), 3.52 (2H, q, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.62 - 3.69 (2H, m), 6.82 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.22 (1H, dd, J = 8.8, 2.6 Hz), 7.39 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.46 (1H, s).

## Reference Example 262

In ethyl acetate (22ml) was dissolved tert-butyl 7-bromo-1-(2-ethoxyethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.1g). To the solution was added 4N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (11ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 24 hours.

An aqueous saturated solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate was added to adjust pH to approximate 4, followed by extraction with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was washed with hexane/ethyl acetate (= 8/1) to give 7-bromo-1-(2-ethoxyethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.73g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.21 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 2.82 (2H, t, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.30 (2H, t, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.51 (2H, t, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.52 (2H, q, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.67 (2H, t, J = 5.2 Hz), 6.85 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.23 - 7.29 (1H, m), 7.44 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.69 (1H, s).

#### Reference Example 263

In DMF (14.6ml) was dissolved 7-bromo-1-(2-ethoxyethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.73g). To the solution was added thionyl chloride (0.39ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, a solution of the resulting residue in THF was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[methyl(tetrahydropyranyl-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.53g) and triethylamine (1.5ml) in THF (15.9ml) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction solution was added

to water, the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol=3/1) to give 7-bromo-1-(2-ethoxyethyl)-N-[4-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (0.66g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.21 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.63 - 1.82 (4H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.64 (1H, m), 2.87 - 2.96 (4H, m), 3.31 - 3.38 (4H, m), 3.47 - 3.58 (2H, m), 3.56 (2H, s), 3.64 - 3.70 (2H, m), 3.97 - 4.09 (2H, m), 6.85 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.19 - 7.32 (4H, m), 7.40 (1H, d, J = 2.6 Hz), 7.50 - 7.56 (2H, m), 8.01 (1H, s).

Working Example 89 (Production of Compound 89)

In toluene/ethanol/water (= 20/1/1, 14.3ml) was dissolved 7-bromo-1-(2-ethoxyethyl)-N-[4-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (0.32g). To the solution were added 4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (0.16g) and potassium carbonate (0.18g), and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes under argon atmosphere. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (27mg), and the mixture was heated to reflux for 14 hours. After

cooled to room temperature, the reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol = 3/1). The purified residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate, which was filtered to give a solution. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, which was recrystallized from isopropyl ether/ethyl acetate to give 1-(2-ethoxyethyl)-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 89) (60mg).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.59 - 1.80 (6H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.65 (1H, m), 2.92 (2H, m), 3.22 - 3.69 (8H, m), 3.57 (2H, s), 3.69 - 3.73 (2H, m), 3.78 - 3.84 (2H, m), 3.99 - 4.17 (2H, m), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 6.69 (1H, s), 6.95 - 7.03 (3H, m), 7.30 - 7.56 (9H, m).

Working Example 90 (Production of Compound 90)

In toluene/ethanol/water (= 20/1/1, 14.3ml) was dissolved 7-bromo-1-(2-ethoxyethyl)-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (0.32g). To the solution were



added 4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (0.17g) and potassium carbonate (0.18g), and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes under argon atmosphere. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (27mg), and the mixture was heated to reflux for 14 hours. After cooled to room temperature, the reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol = 3/1). The purified residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate, which was filtered to give a solution. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, which was recrystallized from isopropyl ether/ethyl acetate to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-ethoxyethyl)-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 90) (15mg).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.23 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.29 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.75 (6H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.65 (1H, m), 2.92 (2H, m), 3.30 - 3.44 (4H, m), 3.50 - 3.60 (4H, m), 3.57 (2H, s), 3.67 - 3.72 (2H, m), 3.98 - 4.07 (2H, m), 4.13 - 4.18 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 6.70 (1H, s), 6.95 - 7.03 (3H, m), 7.27 - 7.55 (9H, m).

## Reference Example 264

In THF (400ml) was dissolved 2-methoxyethanol (20g). To the solution were added triethylamine (47.6ml), 4-dimethylaminopyridine (9.66g) and p-toluenesulfonyl chloride (60.2g), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The mixture was stirred at 60°C for 3 hours, the reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino]butyric acid (30.2g) and 60% sodium hydride (10.2g) in THF (453ml). The mixture was stirred at 65°C for 24 hours and cooled to room temperature. The reaction solution was added to water, followed by addition of 1N sodium hydroxide (50ml) and washing with ethyl acetate. The mixture was neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid, and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated sodium thiosulfate solution and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was dissolved in methylene chloride (90ml), which was added dropwise to a solution of concentrated sulfuric acid (5.4ml) and magnesium sulfate (48.9g) in methylene chloride (450ml). To the

10013334.12101  
mixture was added 2-methyl-2-propanol (48.6ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. An aqueous saturated solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate was added to adjust pH to approximate 8, which was  
5 extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 6/1 → 5/1)  
10 to give tert-butyl 4-[(benzyloxycarbonyl)(2-methoxyethyl)amino]butyrate (10.7g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.43 (9H, s), 1.75 - 1.87 (2H, m), 2.27 (2H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 3.18 - 3.58 (9H, m), 5.13 (2H, s).

Reference Example 265

15 In methanol (300ml) was dissolved tert-butyl 4-[(benzyloxycarbonyl)(2-methoxyethyl)amino]butyrate (30.0g). To the solution was added 10% palladium/carbon (3.0g), and the mixture was stirred for 3 hours under hydrogen atmosphere. 10% palladium/carbon was removed by  
20 filtration with Celite, the solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was added dropwise to a solution of 5-bromo-2-fluorobenzaldehyde (15.8g) and sodium carbonate (9.9g) in DMF (186ml). The mixture was stirred at 90°C for 65 hours. After cooled  
25 to room temperature, the reaction solution was added to

water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 4/1) to give tert-butyl 4-[4-bromo(2-methoxyethyl)-2-formylanilino]butyrate (6.0g). Tert-butyl 4-[4-bromo(2-methoxyethyl)-2-formylanilino]butyrate (6.0g) was dissolved in toluene (60ml)/2-methyl-2-propanol (6.0ml). To the solution was added potassium tert-butoxide (1.85g), and the mixture was stirred at 100°C for 1 hour. After cooled to room temperature, the reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate=5/1) to give tert-butyl 7-bromo-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepinecarboxylate (1.8g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.53 (9H, s), 2.75 (2H, t, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.24 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.39 (3H, s), 3.55 - 3.65 (4H, m), 6.73 (1H, d, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.19 - 7.40 (3H, m), 7.46 (1H, s).

In toluene/ethanol/water (= 10/1/1, 62.4ml) was dissolved tert-butyl 7-bromo-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.8g). To the solution were added 4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (1.68g) and potassium carbonate (1.55g), and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes under argon atmosphere. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0.22g), and the mixture was heated to reflux for 16 hours. After cooled to room temperature, the reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol = 5/1) to give tert-butyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.4g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.33 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.54 (9H, s), 1.53 - 1.65 (2H, m), 2.75 - 2.80 (2H, m), 3.32 (2H, m), 3.41 (3H, s), 3.49 - 3.58 (4H, m), 3.63 - 3.67 (2H, m), 3.72 - 3.83 (2H, m), 4.13 - 4.18 (2H, m), 6.78 (1H, d, J = 5.4 Hz), 6.87 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.38 (1H, dd, J = 8.4, 2.2 Hz), 7.43 - 7.48 (3H, m), 7.65 (1H, s).

## Reference Example 267

In ethyl acetate (28ml) was dissolved tert-butyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.4g). To the solution was added 4N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate (14ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at 60°C for 2 hours. After cooled to room temperature, an aqueous saturated solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate was added to adjust pH to approximate 5. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was washed with hexane/ethyl acetate (= 6/1) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-ethoxyethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.61g, 49%).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.33 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.66 (2H, m), 2.84 (2H, m), 3.34 - 3.44 (2H, m), 3.41 (3H, s), 3.56 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.52 - 3.59 (2H, m), 3.65 - 3.71 (2H, m), 4.13 - 4.18 (2H, m), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.00 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.40 - 7.50 (4H, m), 7.89 (1H, s).

## Working Example 91 (Production of Compound 91)

In THF (12.0ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.60g). To the solution was added oxalyl chloride (0.24ml), and the mixture was

stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, a solution of the resulting residue in THF was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[methyl(tetrahydropyranyl-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.33g) and triethylamine (0.95ml) in THF (9.9ml) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol = 4/1), which was recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 91) (0.57g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.30 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.76 (2H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.64 (1H, m), 2.91 (2H, m), 3.30 - 3.41 (2H, m), 3.41 (3H, s), 3.51 - 3.59 (2H, m), 3.56 (2H, s), 3.65 - 3.71 (2H, m), 3.77 - 3.83 (2H, m), 4.00 - 4.17 (2H, m), 4.15 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 6.97 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.99 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.30 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.39 - 7.56 (9H, m).

IR (KBr) 3321, 2922, 1640, 1609, 1501, 1244, 1140, 822 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

## Reference Example 268

In THF (12.0ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.60g). To the solution were added pyridine  
5 (0.37ml) and 4-dimethylaminopyridine (56mg), followed by addition of crotonic anhydride (0.58ml). The mixture was stirred at 50°C for 24 hours, and cooled to room temperature. The reaction solution was added to water and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The  
10 extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane ethyl acetate = 3/1) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-[(E)-  
15 2-butenoyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.53g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.34 - 1.46 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.66 (2H, m), 3.52 - 3.60 (2H, t, J = 6.2 Hz), 3.79 - 3.85 (2H, m), 3.83 (3H, s), 4.15 - 4.21 (2H,  
20 m), 4.94 - 5.11 (1H, m), 5.88 - 6.04 (1H, m), 7.02 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.24 - 7.29 (1H, m), 7.53 (3H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.66 (1H, s), 7.74 (1H, s).

## Reference Example 269

In THF (10.6ml)/methanol (10.6ml) was dissolved  
25 methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-[(E)-2-butenoyl]-



2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.53g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide (5.3ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 20 hours. pH was adjusted to approximate 5 with 1N hydrochloric acid, and the solvent was concentrated to half under reduced pressure. The concentrated material was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was washed with hexane/ethyl acetate (= 8/1) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-[(E)-2-butenoyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.40g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.97 (3H, t, J = 6.8 Hz), 1.31 - 1.50 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.63 (2H, m), 1.80 (3H, d, J = 6.4 Hz), 3.57 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.82 (2H, m), 4.19 (2H, m), 4.90 (1H, m), 6.01 (1H, m), 7.03 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.21 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.52 - 7.57 (3H, m), 7.67 (1H, s), 7.84 (1H, s).

Working Example 92 (Production of Compound 92)

In THF (7.8ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-[(E)-2-butenoyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.39g). To the solution were added DMF (two droplets) and oxalyl chloride (0.15ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The solvent was removed under reduced

pressure, a solution of the resulting residue in THF was added dropwise to a solution of 4-

[methyl(tetrahydropyranyl-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline

(210mg) and triethylamine (0.60ml) in THF (6.3ml) under

5 ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room

temperature for 14 hours. The reaction solution was

added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl

acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and

dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed

10 under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was

purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl

acetate/ethanol=4/1), which was recrystallized from

isopropyl ether/ethyl acetate to give 1-[(E)-2-butenoyl]-

7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-

15 (tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-

benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 92) (168mg).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.25 -

1.49 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.82 (9H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.65 (1H,

m), 2.93 (3H, s), 3.16 - 3.43 (3H, m), 3.52 - 3.60 (2H, m),

20 3.56 (2H, s), 3.79 - 3.85 (2H, m), 3.98 - 4.09 (2H, m),

4.91 (1H, m), 6.00 - 6.09 (1H, m), 7.03 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz),

7.18 - 7.33 (3H, m), 7.39 - 7.67 (8H, m).

IR (KBr) 2936, 2851, 1659, 1609, 1495, 1250, 1140, 826 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>40</sub>H<sub>49</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub>·0.7H<sub>2</sub>O Calcd. C, 72.51; H, 6.32; N,

25 7.65. Found C, 72.33; H, 6.05; N, 7.42.

## Reference Example 270

4N sodium hydroxide (36ml) was added to 1-isopropyl-2-pyrrolidone (9.2g), and the mixture was stirred for 3.5 hours. After cooled to 0°C, the mixture was neutralized with concentrated hydrochloric acid. After sodium carbonate (15.3g) was added thereto, a solution of 5-bromo-2-fluorobenzaldehyde (7.3g) in dimethyl sulfoxide (96ml) was added thereto, and the mixture was heated to reflux for 5 hours. After cooled to room temperature, pH was adjusted to approximate 4 with 6N hydrochloric acid, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate/THF. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 4/1 → 3/2) to give 4-(4-bromo-2-formylisopropylanilino)butyric acid (0.92g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.12 (6H, d, J = 6.6 Hz), 1.74 (2H, m), 2.37 (2H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.16 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.30 (1H, m), 7.12 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.60 (1H, d, J = 8.8, 2.4 Hz), 7.95 (1H, d, J = 2.4 Hz), 10.21 (1H, s).

## Reference Example 271

In DMF (4.5ml) was dissolved 4-(4-bromo-2-formylisopropylanilino)butyric acid (0.9g). To the solution was added potassium carbonate (0.49g), followed

by addition of methyl iodide (0.2ml) and stirring at room temperature 1 hour. To the mixture was added dimethyl carbonate (9ml), followed by addition of a 28% sodium methoxide/methanol solution (1.27g) and stirring at 50°C for 1 hour. After cooled to room temperature, the mixture was neutralized with 2N hydrochloric acid, and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 20/1 → 8/1) to give methyl 7-bromo-1-isopropyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.50g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.24 (6H, d, J = 6.6 Hz), 2.73 - 2.79 (2H, m), 3.15 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.80 (3H, s), 3.98 (1H, s), 6.70 (1H, d, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.22 (1H, d, J = 2.6 Hz), 7.42 (1H, d, J = 2.6 Hz), 7.55 (1H, s).

#### Reference Example 272

In toluene/ethanol/water (= 10/1/1, 20.4ml) was dissolved methyl 7-bromo-1-isopropyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.50g). To the solution were added 4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (0.48g) and potassium carbonate (0.47g), and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes under argon atmosphere. To the mixture was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0.10g),

and the mixture was heated to reflux for 14 hours. After cooled to room temperature, the reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 20/1  $\rightarrow$  8/1) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-isopropyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.44g). Methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-isopropyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.44g) was dissolved in THF (8.8ml)/methanol (8.8ml). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide (4.4ml), and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 4 hours. After cooled to room temperature, pH was adjusted to approximate 5 with 1N hydrochloric acid, and the solvent was concentrated to half under reduced pressure. The concentrated material was extracted with ethyl acetate/THF, and the extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was washed with hexane/ethyl acetate (12/1) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-isopropyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (320mg).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.28 (6H,

d, J = 6.6 Hz), 1.28 - 1.68 (4H, m), 2.77 - 2.83 (2H, m),  
3.20 - 3.26 (2H, m), 3.56 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.81 (2H, t,  
J = 4.8 Hz), 4.11 (1H, m), 4.13 - 4.18 (2H, m), 6.90 (1H, d,  
J = 8.8 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.25 - 7.54 (4H, m),  
5 7.87 (1H, s).

Working Example 93 (Production of Compound 93)

In THF (6.4ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-isopropyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.32g), followed by  
10 addition of DMF (two droplets). To the mixture was added  
oxalyl chloride (165 $\mu$ l), and the mixture was stirred at  
room temperature for 1 hour. The solvent was removed  
under reduced pressure, a solution of the resulting  
residue in THF was added dropwise to a solution of 4-  
15 [methyl(tetrahydropyranyl-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline  
(183mg) and triethylamine (0.63ml) in THF (5.5ml) under  
ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room  
temperature for 3 hours. The reaction solution was added  
to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl  
20 acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and  
dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed  
under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was  
purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl  
acetate/ethanol = 4/1) to give 7-[4-(2-  
25 butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-isopropyl-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-

(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 93) (284mg).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.29 (6H, d, J = 6.6 Hz), 1.32 - 1.54 (2H, m), 1.57 - 1.76 (6H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.64 (1H, s), 2.89 (2H, m), 3.24 - 3.43 (4H, m), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.2 Hz), 3.56 (2H, s), 3.80 (2H, m), 4.00 - 4.08 (2H, m), 4.10 (1H, m), 4.16 (2H, m), 6.92 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.97 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.29 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.40 - 7.56 (8H, m).

IR (KBr) 2959, 2870, 1667, 1597, 1514, 1497, 1404, 1242, 820 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>39</sub>H<sub>51</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub> · 0.5H<sub>2</sub>O Calcd. C, 73.78; N, 6.62; H, 8.26. Found C, 74.04; N, 6.53; H, 8.41.

#### Reference Example 273

In THF (27.4ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.37g). To the solution was added 60% sodium hydride (0.27g) at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. To the mixture was added 3-bromo-1-(trimethylsilyl)-1-propyne (1.48ml), and the mixture was stirred at 65°C for 90 hours. After cooled to room temperature, the reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed

under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 3/1) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(3-trimethylsilyl-2-propynyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.78g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.18 (9H, s), 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.34 - 1.44 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.64 (2H, m), 2.82 - 2.90 (2H, m), 3.33 - 3.40 (4H, m), 3.56 (2H, t, J = 6.2 Hz), 3.78 - 3.84 (2H, m), 3.82 (3H, s), 4.07 (2H, s), 4.10 - 4.19 (2H, m), 6.97 - 7.06 (3H, m), 7.43 (4H, m), 7.76 (1H, s).

#### Reference Example 274

In THF (7.8ml)/methanol (7.8ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(3-trimethylsilyl-2-propynyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.78g). To the solution was added 2N potassium hydroxide (7.8ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. pH was adjusted to approximate 4 with 6N hydrochloric acid, and the solvent was concentrated to half under reduced pressure. The concentrated material was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was washed with hexane/ethyl acetate (= 8/1) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-



(2-propynyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.52g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.34 - 1.47 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.68 (2H, m), 2.31 (1H, m), 2.84 - 2.95 (2H, m), 3.37 - 3.43 (2H, m), 3.56 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.78 - 3.84 (2H, m), 4.08 (2H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 4.14 - 4.19 (2H, m), 6.99 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.06 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.45 - 7.56 (4H, m), 7.87 (1H, s).

Reference Example 94 (Production of Compound 94)

10 In THF (10.4ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-propynyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.52g). To the solution was added DMF (two droplets), followed by addition of oxalyl chloride (0.27ml) and stirring at room temperature 15 for 2 hours. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, a solution of the resulting residue in THF was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[methyl(tetrahydropyranyl-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (0.30g) and triethylamine (1.04ml) in THF (9.0ml) under 20 ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 15 hours. The reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed 25 under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was

purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol = 4/1), which was recrystallized from ethyl acetate to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-1-(2-propynyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 94) (570mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (3H, t,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 1.33 - 1.46 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.75 (6H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.32 (1H, m), 2.64 (1H, m), 2.90 - 2.97 (2H, m), 3.30 - 3.42 (6H, m), 3.51 - 3.59 (2H, m), 3.55 (2H, s), 3.77 - 3.83 (2H, m), 4.00 - 4.17 (4H, m), 4.06 (1H, m), 6.97 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.05 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.31 - 7.56 (8H, m), 7.67 (1H, s). IR (KBr) 3322, 3249, 2948, 1642, 1607, 1499, 1240, 1140, 810  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd.  $\text{C}_{39}\text{H}_{47}\text{N}_3\text{O}_4$  Calcd. C, 75.33; N, 6.76; H, 7.62. Found C, 75.39; N, 6.74; H, 7.53.

#### Reference Example 275

In THF (24.0ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.20g). To the solution was added 60% sodium hydride (0.24g), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. To the mixture was added 1-bromo-2-butyne (0.80ml), and the mixture was stirred at 65°C for 4 days. After cooled to room temperature, the reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was

extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 4/1) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-butynyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.50g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.30 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.53 - 1.68 (2H, m), 1.83 - 1.86 (3H, m), 2.83 - 2.89 (2H, m), 3.30 - 3.38 (2H, m), 3.56 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.78 - 3.84 (2H, m), 3.81 (3H, s), 4.01 (2H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 4.13 - 4.18 (2H, m), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.04 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.42 - 7.54 (4H, m), 7.76 (1H, s).

#### Reference Example 276

In THF (5.0ml)/methanol (5.0ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-butynyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.50g). To the solution was added 2N potassium hydroxide (5.0ml), and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 3 hours. pH was adjusted to approximate 4 with 6N hydrochloric acid, and the solvent was concentrated to half under reduced pressure. The concentrated material was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was washed

with hexane/ethyl acetate (= 8/1) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-butyryl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.40g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.35 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.64 (2H, m), 1.86 (3H, s), 2.88 (2H, m), 3.38 (2H, m), 3.56 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.78 - 3.84 (2H, m), 4.02 (2H, d, J = 2.0 Hz), 4.17 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.05 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.44 - 7.55 (4H, m), 7.87 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 2922, 1677, 1607, 1503, 1275, 1248, 1192, 924, 806 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

#### Working Example 95 (Production of Compound 95)

In THF (8.0ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-butyryl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.40g). To the solution was added DMF (two droplets), followed by addition of oxalyl chloride (0.20ml) and stirring at room temperature for 1 hour. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, a solution of the resulting residue in THF was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[methyl(tetrahydropyranyl-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (224mg) and triethylamine (0.64ml) in THF (6.7ml) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours. The reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl

acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol= 4/1 → 3/1), which was recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-butyryl)-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 95) (359mg).

10 m.p 129 - 131°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.26 - 1.48 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.76 (6H, m), 1.86 (23H, s), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.64 (1H, m), 2.96 (2H, m), 3.30 - 3.44 (4H, m), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.2 Hz), 3.56 (2H, s), 3.80 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 15 4.00 - 4.10 (4H, m), 4.13 - 4.18 (2H, m), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.07 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.30 (2H, m), 7.39 - 7.58 (8H, m).

IR (KBr) 2953, 1655, 1605, 1514, 1499, 1244, 1138, 814 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>40</sub>H<sub>49</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub> Calcd. C, 75.56; N, 6.61; H, 7.77.

20 Found C, 75.53; N, 6.52; H, 7.79.

#### Reference Example 277

In THF (11.2ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.56g). To the solution were added pyridine 25 (0.17ml) and ethyl chloroformate (0.18ml), and the

mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. To the mixture was added 4-dimethylaminopyridine (169mg), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 3/1) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(ethoxycarbonyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (580mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (3H, t,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 1.26 - 1.42 (5H, m), 1.55 - 1.62 (2H, m), 2.93 (2H, m), 3.56 (2H, t,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.66 - 3.84 (4H, m), 3.83 (3H, s), 4.14 - 4.29 (4H, m), 7.00 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.47 - 7.59 (5H, m), 7.73 (1H, s).

#### Reference Example 278

In THF (8.7ml)/methanol (8.7ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(ethoxycarbonyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.58g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide (8.7ml), and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 4 hours. pH was adjusted to approximate 4 with 6N hydrochloric acid, and the solvent was concentrated to half under reduced pressure.

The concentrated material was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was washed with hexane/ethyl acetate (= 8/1) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(ethoxycarbonyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.46g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.29 (3H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 1.56 - 1.66 (2H, m), 2.95 (2H, m), 3.56 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.75 - 3.85 (4H, m), 4.17 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.23 (2H, q, J = 6.6 Hz), 7.01 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.51 - 7.62 (5H, m), 7.84 (1H, s).

#### Working Example 96 (Production of Compound 96)

In THF (9.2ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(ethoxycarbonyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.46g). To the solution was added DMF (two droplets), followed by addition of oxalyl chloride (0.22ml) and stirring at room temperature for 1 hour. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, a solution of the resulting residue in THF was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[methyl(tetrahydropyranyl-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (246mg) and triethylamine (0.71ml) in THF (7.4ml) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours. The reaction solution was

added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol = 4/1 → 3/1), which was recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(ethoxycarbonyl)-4-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 96) (0.48g).

m.p 152 - 154°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.29 (3H, t, J = 6.4 Hz), 1.33 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.75 (6H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.65 (1H, m), 3.00 (2H, m), 3.30 - 3.43 (2H, m), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.57 (2H, s), 3.81 (2H, m), 4.00 - 4.20 (2H, m), 4.17 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.23 (2H, q, J = 6.4 Hz), 7.00 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.31 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.46 - 7.60 (8H, m).

IR (KBr) 3308, 2955, 2870, 1699, 1609, 1497, 1250, 1208, 1140, 922, 826, 731 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>38</sub>H<sub>48</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>6</sub> Calcd. C, 71.00; N, 6.54; H, 7.53. Found C, 71.14; N, 6.26; H, 7.36.

#### Reference Example 279

In pyridine (4.3ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-



carboxylate (0.43 g). To the solution was added allyl chloroformate (0.23ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. To the mixture was added 4-dimethylaminopyridine (40mg), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine, and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 3/1) to give methyl 1-(allyloxycarbonyl)-7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.30g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.28 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.66 (2H, m), 2.94 (2H, m), 3.56 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.78 - 3.85 (4H, m), 3.83 (3H, s), 4.15 - 4.19 (2H, m), 4.67 (1H, m), 5.24 (1H, m), 5.94 (1H, m), 7.00 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.43 - 7.60 (5H, m), 7.73 (1H, s).

#### Reference Example 280

In THF (4.5ml)/ethanol (4.5ml) was dissolved methyl 1-(allyloxycarbonyl)-7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.30g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide (3.0ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours. pH was adjusted to approximate 4 with 1N hydrochloric acid,

and the solvent was concentrated to half under reduced pressure. The concentrated material was extracted with ethyl acetate, the extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was washed with hexane/ethyl acetate (= 8/1) to give 1-(allyloxycarbonyl)-7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.25g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.30 - 1.49 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.69 (2H, m), 2.97 (2H, m), 3.56 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.75 - 3.87 (4H, m), 4.18 (2H, d, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.68 (1H, m), 5.24 (1H, m), 5.96 (1H, m), 7.01 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.49 - 7.61 (5H, m), 7.85 (1H, s).

Working Example 97 (Production of Compound 97)

In THF (4.8ml) was dissolved 1-(allyloxycarbonyl)-7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.24g). To the solution was added DMF (two droplets), followed by addition of oxalyl chloride (0.11ml) and stirring at room temperature for 1 hour.

The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, a solution of the resulting residue in THF was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[methyl(tetrahydropyranyl-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (125mg) and triethylamine (0.36ml) in THF (5.0ml) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours. The reaction

solution was added to water, and the mixture was  
extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed  
with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate.  
The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the  
5 resulting residue was purified with silica gel column  
chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol = 4/1 → 3/1),  
which was recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate to  
give 1-(allyloxycarbonyl)-7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-4-  
[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-  
10 2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 97)  
(0.23g).

mp 160 - 162°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.33 -  
1.49 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.75 (6H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.65 (1H,  
15 m), 3.02 (2H, m), 3.37 (2H, td, J = 11.0, 2.8 Hz), 3.56 (2H,  
t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.57 (2H, s), 3.81 (2H, m), 3.99 - 4.08 (2H,  
m), 3.99 - 4.08 (2H, m), 4.14 - 4.20 (2H, m), 4.67 (1H, m),  
5.25 (1H, m), 5.92 (1H, m), 7.00 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.31  
(2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.47 - 7.58 (9H, m).

20 IR (KBr) 3353, 2953, 2845, 1686, 1658, 1611, 1533, 1316,  
1206, 1086, 922, 829, 764 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>40</sub>H<sub>49</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>6</sub> Calcd. C, 71.94; N, 6.29; H, 7.40.  
Found C, 71.69; N, 6.33; H, 7.49.

#### Reference Example 281

25 In 1,2-dichloroethane (15ml) was dissolved methyl 7-

[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.50g). To the solution were added 1,3-thiazole-5-carbaldehyde (0.43g) and sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (0.80g), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. To the mixture was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (0.27g), and the mixture was stirred for 6 hours. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate.

The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 3/2 → 2/3) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(1,3-thiazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.50g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.34 - 1.44 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.65 (2H, m), 2.79 (2H, m), 3.30 (2H, m), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.78 - 3.83 (2H, m), 3.81 (3H, s), 4.16 (2H, m), 6.94 - 7.10 (3H, m), 7.39 - 7.57 (3H, m), 7.56 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.79 (1H, s), 7.83 (1H, s), 8.78 (1H, s).

#### Reference Example 282

In THF (5.0ml)/methanol (10ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(1,3-thiazol-5-ylmethyl)-

2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.50g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (5.0ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. pH was adjusted to approximate 5 with 1N hydrochloric acid, and the solvent was concentrated to half under reduced pressure. The concentrated material was extracted with ethyl acetate/THF, and the extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was washed with hexane ethyl acetate (8/1) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(1,3-thiazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (385mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (3H, t,  $J = 7.4$  Hz), 1.34 - 1.44 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.67 (2H, m), 2.82 (2H, m), 3.33 (2H, m), 3.56 (2H, t,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.81 (2H, t,  $J = 4.8$  Hz), 4.17 (2H, m), 4.77 (2H, s), 6.97 (1H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 6.99 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.41 - 7.50 (3H, m), 7.58 (1H, d,  $J = 1.8$  Hz), 7.85 (1H, s), 7.91 (1H, s), 8.81 (1H, s).

Working Example 98 (Production of Compound 98)

In methylene chloride (19ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(1,3-thiazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.38g). To the solution was added DMF (two droplets), followed by addition of oxalyl chloride (90 $\mu$ l) and stirring at room

temperature for 2 hours to give a solution, which was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[methyl(tetrahydropyranyl-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (198mg) and triethylamine (2.75ml) in methylene chloride (7.6ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with methylene chloride. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol = 2/1) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-1-(1,3-thiazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 98) (190mg).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.30 - 1.48 (2H, m), 1.53 - 1.72 (2H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.66 (1H, m), 2.87 (2H, m), 3.30 - 3.43 (4H, m), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.57 (2H, s), 3.80 (2H, m), 3.97 - 4.09 (2H, m), 4.16 (2H, m), 4.77 (2H, m), 6.98 (4H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.27 - 7.58 (9H, m), 7.84 (1H, s), 8.79 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 3293, 2955, 1645, 1609, 1518, 1499, 1406, 1242, 1140, 821 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

## Reference Example 283

In ethanol (50ml) was dissolved acetyl thioamide

(5.0g). To the solution was added ethyl 2-chloroacetoacetate (11.0g), and the mixture was heated to reflux for 16 hours. After cooled to room temperature, the solvent was removed under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 1/1) to give ethyl 2,3-dimethyl-1,3-thiazole-5-carboxylate (9.1g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.36 (3H, t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 2.68 (3H, m), 2.69 (3H, s), 4.32 (2H, q,  $J = 7.2$  Hz).

#### Reference Example 284

A solution of ethyl 2,4-dimethyl-1,3-thiazole-5-carboxylate (5.0g) in THF (50ml) was added dropwise to a solution of aluminum lithium hydride (1.1g) in THF (150ml) under ice-cooling. After stirred at room temperature for 4 hours, water (1.1ml), 15% sodium hydroxide solution (1.1ml) and water (3.3ml) were added thereto, and the mixture was stirred for 10 minutes. The mixture was filtered with Celite, and washed with methanol. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 1/2) to

give (2,4-dimethyl-1,3-thiazol-5-yl)methanol (2.0g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.31 (3H, s), 2.62 (3H, s), 3.14 (1H, br), 4.72 (2H, d, J = 5.0 Hz).

Reference Example 285

5 In THF (20ml) was dissolved (2,4-dimethyl-1,3-thiazol-5-yl)methanol (1.0g). To the solution was added active manganese dioxide (6.0g), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. To the mixture was added active manganese dioxide (3.0g), and the  
10 mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The mixture was filtered with Celite and washed with methanol. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate/methanol = 10/10/1)  
15 to give 2,4-dimethyl-1,3-thiazole-5-carbaldehyde (0.32g).  
<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.70 (3H, s), 2.73 (3H, s), 10.13 (1H, s).

Reference Example 286

20 In 1,2-dichloroethane (21ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.70g). To the solution were added 2,4-dimethyl-1,3-thiazole-5-carbaldehyde (0.62g) and sodium triacetoxyborohydride (1.5g), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 36 hours. After stirred at 60°C  
25 for 12 hours, the mixture was cooled to room temperature,



and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 1/1) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2,4-dimethyl-1,3-thiazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.26g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (3H, t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 1.37 - 1.44 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.67 (2H, m), 2.40 (3H, s), 2.62 (3H, s), 2.76 (2H, t,  $J = 4.4$  Hz), 3.24 (2H, m), 3.55 (2H, t,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.78 - 3.83 (2H, m), 3.81 (3H, s), 4.16 (2H, m), 4.56 (2H, s), 6.93 (1H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 6.98 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.39 - 7.49 (3H, m), 7.55 (1H, d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 7.78 (1H, s).

#### Reference Example 287

In THF (5.0ml)/methanol (2.5ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2,4-dimethyl-1,3-thiazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.25g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (2.5ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. pH was adjusted to approximate 5 with 1N hydrochloric acid, and the solvent was

concentrated to half under reduced pressure. The concentrated material was extracted with ethyl acetate/THF, and the extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was washed with hexane/ethyl acetate (8/1) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2,4-dimethyl-1,3-thiazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (190mg).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.32 - 1.46 (2H, m), 1.56 - 1.68 (2H, m), 2.42 (3H, s), 2.64 (3H, s), 2.78 (2H, m), 3.27 (2H, m), 3.56 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.17 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.59 (2H, s), 6.92 - 7.10 (3H, m), 7.42 - 7.50 (3H, m), 7.57 (1H, d, J = 1.8 Hz), 7.89 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 2924, 1684, 1607, 1501, 1235, 1126, 968, 810 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

#### Working Example 99 (Production of Compound 99)

In methylene chloride (9.5ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2,4-dimethyl-1,3-thiazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.19g). To the solution was added DMF (two droplets), followed by addition of thionyl chloride (32μl) and stirring at room temperature for 2 hours, to give a solution, which was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[methyl(tetrahydropyranyl-4-yl)aminomethylaniline (91mg)

and triethylamine (1.0ml) in methylene chloride (5.6ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with methylene chloride. The  
 5 extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol = 2/1), which was recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate  
 10 to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2,4-dimethyl-1,3-thiazol-5-ylmethyl)-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methylphenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 99) (135mg).

mp 125 - 128°C.

15 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.37 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.57 - 1.77 (6H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.43 (3H, s), 2.64 (3H, s), 2.84 (2H, m), 3.28 - 3.44 (2H, m), 3.52 - 3.59 (2H, m), 3.55 (2H, s), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.98 - 4.08 (2H, m), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.59 (2H, s),  
 20 6.96 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.99 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.30 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.40 - 7.56 (8H, m).

IR (KBr) 3227, 2959, 1655, 1603, 1499, 1406, 1315, 1248, 1177, 820 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>42</sub>H<sub>52</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>4</sub> · 0.5H<sub>2</sub>O Calcd. C, 70.26; N, 7.80; H, 7.44. Found C, 70.36; N, 7.47; H, 7.54.

## Reference Example 288

To a solution of aluminum lithium hydride (2.5g) in THF (282ml) was added dropwise a solution of ethyl tetrazole-5-carboxylate (9.4g) in THF (94ml) under ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours, followed by addition of water (2.5ml), 15% sodium hydroxide solution (2.5ml) and water (7.5ml), and stirring for 10 minutes. The mixture was filtered with Celite and washed with methanol. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was dissolved in DMF (190ml). To the solution was added active manganese dioxide (37g), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The mixture was filtered with Celite and washed with methanol. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was washed with hexane/ethyl acetate (=1/1) to give tetrazole-5-carbaldehyde (4.6g).  
<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 10.10 (1H, s).

## Reference Example 289

In 1,2-dichloroethane (14ml)/acetic acid (7ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.70g). To the solution were added tetrazole-5-carbaldehyde (0.31g) and sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (1.5g), and the mixture was stirred at 40°C for 18 hours. The mixture was cooled to

room temperature, and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine, and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol = 15/1) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.67g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.36 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.66 (2H, m), 2.74 (2H, m), 3.33 (2H, m), 3.59 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.67 (3H, s), 3.83 (2H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 4.15 (2H, m), 4.85 (2H, s), 6.79 (1H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.88 (2H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.27 - 7.37 (3H, m), 7.45 (1H, d, J = 2.0 Hz), 7.68 (1H, s).

#### Reference Example 290

In THF (6.7ml)/methanol (6.7ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.25g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (6.7ml), and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 4 hours. pH was adjusted to approximate 4 with 1N hydrochloric acid, and the solvent was concentrated to half under reduced pressure. The concentrated material was extracted with

ethyl acetate/THF, and the extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was washed with hexane/ethyl acetate (2/1) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.45g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 0.89 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.04 - 1.55 (4H, m), 2.72 (2H, m), 3.33 (2H, m), 3.46 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.72 (3H, s), 4.11 (2H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 4.91 (2H, s), 6.91 - 7.00 (3H, m), 7.43 - 7.71 (5H, m).

Working Example 100 (Production of Compound 100)

In THF(8.1ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.27g). To the solution was added DMF (two droplets), followed by addition of thionyl chloride (51μl) and stirring at room temperature for 1 hour, to give a solution, which was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[methyl(tetrahydropyranyl-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (145mg) and triethylamine (1.62ml) in THF (8.1ml) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate.

The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was dissolved in ethanol. To the solution was added ethyl acetate, and the precipitates were collected by filtration, which was recrystallized from hexane/ethanol to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-1-(tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 100) (42mg).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 0.89 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.28 - 1.39 (2H, m), 1.47 - 1.55 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.92 (4H, m), 2.28 - 2.38 (1H, m), 2.34 (3H, s), 2.83 (2H, m), 3.24 - 3.45 (4H, m), 3.46 (2H, t, J = 6.4 Hz), 3.71 (2H, m), 3.86 - 3.99 (4H, m), 4.11 (2H, m), 4.81 (2H, s), 6.58 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.99 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.11 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.33 - 7.75 (7H, m), 9.89 (1H, s).

#### Reference Example 291

In acetonitrile (100ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(tetrazol-4-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.0g). To the solution were added potassium carbonate (0.87g) and methyl iodide (0.31ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours. The solvent was concentrated to half under reduced pressure, which was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and

dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was washed with hexane/ethyl acetate (= 8/1) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(1-methyltetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.33g) and methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-methyltetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.44g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (1-methyl compound; 200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.30 - 1.44 (2H, m), 1.45 - 1.66 (2H, m), 2.59 (2H, m), 3.55 (2H, m), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.95 (3H, s), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.86 (2H, s), 6.96 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.99 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.26 - 7.48 (3H, m), 7.57 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.78 (1H, s).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (2-methyl compound; 200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.22 - 1.44 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.65 (2H, m), 2.86 (2H, m), 3.42 (2H, m), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.77 - 3.83 (2H, m), 3.81 (3H, s), 4.15 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.36 (23H, s), 4.75 (2H, s), 6.97 (2H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.13 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.39 - 7.54 (3H, m), 7.78 (1H, s).

#### Reference Example 292

In THF (6.4ml)/methanol (3.2ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(1-methyltetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.32g).



To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (3.2ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. pH was adjusted to approximate 4 with 1N hydrochloric acid, and the solvent was concentrated to half under reduced pressure. The concentrated material was extracted with ethyl acetate/THF, and the extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was washed with hexane/ethyl acetate (5/1) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(1-methyltetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.25g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{DMSO-d}_6$ )  $\delta$  0.89 (3H, t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 1.27 - 1.41 (2H, m), 1.44 - 1.57 (2H, m), 2.69 (2H, m), 3.32 (2H, m), 3.47 (2H, t,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.72 (2H, m), 4.03 (3H, s), 4.09 (2H, m), 4.96 (2H, s), 6.87 - 6.99 (3H, m), 7.43 (1H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.53 - 7.63 (3H, m), 7.71 (1H, s).  
IR (KBr) 2957, 2932, 1667, 1609, 1505, 1435, 1273, 1244, 1119, 828, 797  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Working Example 101 (Production of Compound 101)

In THF(6.9ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(1-methyltetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (230mg). To the solution was added DMF (two droplets), followed by addition of oxalyl chloride (63ml) and stirring at room

temperature for 1 hour, to give a solution, which was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[methyl(tetrahydropyranyl-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (120mg) and triethylamine (1.34ml) in THF (6.9ml) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. The reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol = 3/1), which was recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-1-(1-methyltetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 101) (114mg).

mp 132 - 135°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.31 - 1.46 (2H, m), 1.56 - 1.81 (6H, m), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.54 - 2.73 (3H, m), 2.95 (2H, m), 3.30 - 3.42 (4H, m), 3.51 - 3.59 (2H, t, J = 6.2 Hz), 3.56 (2H, s), 3.78 - 3.84 (2H, m), 3.96 - 4.17 (2H, m), 3.98 (3H, s), 4.15 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.81 (2H, s), 6.96 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.98 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.40 - 7.58 (7H, m), 7.70 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 3294, 2932, 1659, 1607, 1516, 1501, 1406, 1360, 1244, 1138, 820  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd.  $\text{C}_{39}\text{H}_{49}\text{N}_7\text{O}_4$  Calcd. C, 68.90; N, 14.42; H, 7.26. Found C, 68.82; N, 14.14; H, 7.08.

5           Reference Example 293

In THF (4.3ml)/methanol (3.2ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-methyltetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.43g). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution  
10 (4.3ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. pH was adjusted to approximate 4 with 1N hydrochloric acid, and the solvent was concentrated to half under reduced pressure. The concentrated material was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the extract was  
15 washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was washed with hexane/ethyl acetate (= 5/1) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-methyltetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-  
20 4-carboxylic acid (0.37g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{DMSO-d}_6$ )  $\delta$  0.89 (3H, t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 1.27 - 1.41 (2H, m), 1.43 - 1.58 (2H, m), 2.76 (2H, m), 3.33 (2H, m), 3.47 (2H, t,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.69 - 3.74 (2H, m), 4.07 - 4.12 (2H, m), 4.37 (3H, s), 4.81 (2H, s), 6.97 (2H, d),  
25 7.06 (1H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.42 - 7.60 (4H, m), 7.70 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 3034, 2934, 1672, 1607, 1501, 1404, 1246, 1190, 1132, 816  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Working Example 102 (Production of Compound 102)

In THF(10.2ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-methyltetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.34mg). To the solution was added DMF (two droplets), followed by addition of oxalyl chloride (93ml) and stirring at room temperature for 1 hour, to give a solution, which was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[methyl(tetrahydropyranyl-4-yl)aminomethyl]aniline (177mg) and triethylamine (1.98ml) in THF(10.2ml) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol = 3/1), which was recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-1-(2-methyltetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 102) (193mg).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.32 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.57 - 1.76 (6H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.65 (1H, m), 2.95 (2H, m), 3.30 - 3.48 (4H, m), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.57 (2H, s), 3.77 - 3.83 (2H, m), 3.98 - 4.08 (2H, m), 4.10 - 4.18 (2H, m), 4.37 (3H, s), 4.78 (2H, s), 6.97 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.05 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.30 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.39 - 7.56 (8H, m).

IR (KBr) 3312, 2930, 1644, 1607, 1503, 1406, 1360, 1242, 1140, 810 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

10           Working Example 103 (Production of Compound 103)

To a solution of 1-(3-methoxypropyl)-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (250mg) in THF (10ml) were added thionyl chloride (0.083ml) and DMF (one droplet) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 1.5 hours. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was dissolved in THF (15ml), which was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (138mg) and triethylamine (0.48ml) in THF (3ml) at 0°C. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours, water was added thereto, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine, and dried with magnesium sulfate. After concentration under reduced pressure, the residue was

25

purified with column chromatography (ethanol : ethyl acetate 1 : 4 → 1 : 3 → 1 : 2), and the resulting crystals were purified by recrystallization (hexane-ethyl acetate) to give 1-(3-methoxypropyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 103) (264mg) as yellow crystals. mp 87 - 90°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.5 Hz), 1.53 - 1.82 (6H, m), 1.90 - 2.06 (2H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.51 - 2.74 (1H, m), 2.86 - 2.97 (2H, m), 3.28 - 3.66 (15H, m), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 3.98 - 4.11 (2H, m), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 6.95 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.30 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.38 - 7.57 (8H, m).

IR (KBr) 3233, 1638, 1607, 1516, 1501, 1314, 1246, 1186, 1117 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>39</sub>H<sub>51</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub> Calcd. C, 72.98; H, 8.01; N, 6.55. Found C, 72.65; H, 7.98; N, 6.35.

#### Working Example 104 (Production of Compound 104)

To a solution of 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(3-methoxypropyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (200mg) in THF (10ml) were added thionyl chloride (0.064ml) and DMF (one droplet) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting

residue was dissolved in THF (15ml), which was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (107mg) and triethylamine (0.37ml) in THF (5ml) at 0°C. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours, water was added thereto, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, and dried with magnesium sulfate. After concentration under reduced pressure, the residue was purified with column chromatography (ethanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 3), and the resulting crystals were purified by recrystallization (hexane-ethyl acetate) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(3-methoxypropyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 104) (264.2mg) as yellow crystals. mp 87 - 90°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.32 - 1.46 (2H, m), 1.50 - 1.82 (6H, m), 1.89 - 2.03 (2H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.55 - 2.72 (1H, m), 2.84 - 2.96 (2H, m), 3.28 - 3.61 (15H, m), 3.80 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.98 - 4.09 (2H, m), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 6.95 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.31 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.36 - 7.57 (8H, m).

IR (KBr) 3334, 1640, 1609, 1516, 1503, 1314, 1244, 1184,

1119  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd.  $\text{C}_{40}\text{H}_{53}\text{N}_3\text{O}_5 \cdot 0.5\text{H}_2\text{O}$  Calcd. C, 72.26; H, 8.18; N, 6.32. Found C, 72.51; H, 7.93; N, 6.10.

Working Example 105 (Production of Compound 105)

5 To a solution of 1-(3-ethoxypropyl)-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (250mg) in THF (10ml) were added thionyl chloride (0.080ml) and DMF (one droplet) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 1.5 hours.

10 The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was dissolved in THF (20ml), which was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (133mg) and triethylamine (0.46ml) in THF (3ml) at 0°C. The mixture

15 was stirred at room temperature for 2.5 hours, water was added thereto, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, and dried with magnesium sulfate. After

20 concentration under reduced pressure, the residue was purified with column chromatography (ethanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 9  $\rightarrow$  1 : 3), and the resulting crystals were purified by recrystallization (hexane-ethyl acetate) to give 1-(3-ethoxypropyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-

25 tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-



carboxamide (Compound 105) (242mg) as yellow crystals.

mp 99 - 101°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.5 Hz), 1.23 (3H, t, J = 6.9 Hz), 1.53 - 1.82 (6H, m), 1.90 - 2.04 (2H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.53 - 2.73 (1H, m), 2.87 - 2.96 (2H, m), 3.30 - 3.60 (14H, m), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.98 - 4.10 (2H, m), 4.17 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.95 - 7.00 (3H, m), 7.30 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.36 - 7.58 (8H, m).

IR (KBr) 3305, 1640, 1607, 1501, 1406, 1314, 1244, 1123 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>40</sub>H<sub>53</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub>·0.25H<sub>2</sub>O Calcd. C, 72.75; H, 8.18; N, 6.36. Found C, 72.81; H, 8.08; N, 6.27.

#### Working Example 106 (Production of Compound 106)

To a solution of 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(3-ethoxypropyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (250mg) in THF (10ml) were added thionyl chloride (0.078ml) and DMF (one droplet) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 1.5 hours. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was dissolved in THF (20ml), which was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (128mg) and triethylamine (0.44ml) in THF (3ml) at 0°C. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 64 hours, water was added thereto, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl

acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine, and dried with magnesium sulfate. After concentration under reduced pressure, the residue was purified with column chromatography (ethanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 4), and the resulting crystals were purified by recrystallization (hexane-ethyl acetate) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(3-ethoxypropyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 106) (224mg) as yellow crystals. mp 95 - 97°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.24 (3H, t, J = 6.9 Hz), 1.30 - 1.48 (2H, m), 1.52 - 1.84 (6H, m), 1.90 - 2.06 (2H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.52 - 2.75 (1H, m), 2.86 - 2.97 (2H, m), 3.30 - 3.60 (14H, m), 3.80 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.98 - 4.09 (2H, m), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 6.94 - 7.03 (3H, m), 7.30 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.36 - 7.57 (8H, m).

IR (KBr) 3323, 1638, 1607, 1516, 1501, 1406, 1314, 1244, 1123 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>41</sub>H<sub>55</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub> Calcd. C, 73.51; H, 8.28; N, 6.27. Found C, 73.60; H, 8.16; N, 6.23.

#### Working Example 107 (Production of Compound 107)

To a solution of 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-[(2-methyl-1,3-dioxolan-2-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-

benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (300mg) in THF (10ml) were  
 added thionyl chloride (0.068ml) and DMF (one droplet) at  
 room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour.  
 The reaction mixture was added dropwise to a solution of  
 5 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline  
 (151mg) and triethylamine (0.7ml) in THF (3ml) at 0°C.  
 The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 20 hours,  
 water was added thereto, and the mixture was extracted  
 with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with  
 10 saturated brine, and dried with magnesium sulfate. After  
 concentration under reduced pressure, the residue was  
 separated and purified with column chromatography  
 (ethanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 19 → 1 : 10), and the  
 resulting crystals were purified by recrystallization  
 15 (ethyl acetate-diisopropyl ether) to give 7-[4-(2-  
 butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-[(2-methyl-1,3-dioxolan-2-  
 yl)methyl]-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-tetrahydropyran-4-  
 yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-  
 carboxamide (Compound 107) (144mg) as yellow crystals.  
 20 mp 123 - 126°C.  
<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.31 -  
 1.47 (5H, m), 1.51 - 1.83 (6H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.54 -  
 2.73 (1H, m), 2.86 - 2.97 (2H, m), 3.28 - 3.60 (10H, m),  
 3.80 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.93 - 4.09 (6H, m), 4.16 (2H, t,  
 25 J = 5.0 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.26 - 7.32 (3H, m),

7.39 - 7.50 (8H, m).

IR (KBr) 3245, 1645, 1607, 1516, 1499, 1406, 1316, 1244, 1175, 1140, 1046  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd.  $\text{C}_{41}\text{H}_{53}\text{N}_3\text{O}_5 \cdot 0.25\text{H}_2\text{O}$  Calcd. C, 71.54; H, 7.83; N, 6.10. Found C, 71.49; H, 7.96; N, 6.03.

Working Example 108 (Production of Compound 108)

A mixture of 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-[(2-methyl-1,3-dioxolan-2-yl)methyl]-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (100mg), cerium chloride heptahydrate (300mg), sodium iodide (19mg) and acetonitrile (5ml) was stirred at 60°C for 5 days. Water was added to the reaction system, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. After concentration under reduced pressure, the residue was separated and purified with column chromatography (ethanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 3) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-oxopropyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 108) (52mg) as yellow crystals.

$^1\text{H}$ -NMR (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (3H, t,  $J$  = 7.3 Hz), 1.32 - 1.47 (2H, m), 1.53 - 2.05 (6H, m), 2.26 (3H, s), 2.38 (3H, s), 3.29 - 3.47 (4H, m), 3.55 (2H, t,  $J$  = 6.6 Hz), 3.74 -

3.86 (4H, m), 4.01 - 4.21 (6H, m), 6.54 (1H, d,  $J = 8.0$  Hz),  
6.98 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.26 - 7.67 (10H, m).

IR (KBr) 3302, 1728, 1651, 1607, 1518, 1501, 1244, 914  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Working Example 109 (Production of Compound 109)

5 To a solution of 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-propyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (16.4g) in ethyl acetate (1500ml) was added  
10 4N hydrochloric acid-ethyl acetate (25ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour. The precipitated crystals were collected by filtration, which was purified by recrystallization (2-propanol) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-propyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-  
15 1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide dihydrochloride (Compound 109) (8.61g) as pale yellow crystals.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{DMSO-d}_6$ )  $\delta$  0.88 (3H, t,  $J = 7.1$  Hz), 0.94 (3H, t,  $J = 7.3$  Hz), 1.22 - 2.18 (10H, m), 2.57 (3H, s),  
20 2.78 - 2.90 (2H, m), 3.21 - 3.41 (7H, m), 3.46 (2H, t,  $J = 6.4$  Hz), 3.68 - 3.73 (2H, m), 3.91 - 4.15 (5H, m), 4.35 - 4.60 (1H, m), 6.97 - 7.02 (3H, m), 7.42 - 7.58 (6H, m), 7.65 (1H, s), 7.81 (2H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 10.03 (1H, s), 10.45 - 10.59 (1H, m).

IR (KBr) 3248, 1663, 1609, 1521, 1501, 1464, 1312, 1248,  
25 1180, 1121, 831  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd.  $C_{39}H_{53}N_3O_4Cl_2$  Calcd. C, 67.04; H, 7.65; N, 6.01.  
Found C, 67.10; H, 7.51; N, 6.14.

Working Example 110 (Production of Compound 110)

To a solution of 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-propyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (2.0g) in ethanol (150ml) was added fumaric acid (371mg) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 0.5 hour. After concentration under reduced pressure, to the residue was added ethyl acetate, and the precipitated crystals were collected by filtration, which was purified by recrystallization (2-propanol) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-propyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide fumarate (Compound 110) (1.86g) as yellow crystals.

mp 159 - 161°C.

$^1H$ -NMR (200 MHz,  $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 0.99 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.30 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.51 - 1.86 (8H, m), 2.24 (3H, s), 2.61 - 2.79 (1H, m), 2.86 - 2.95 (2H, m), 3.24 - 3.43 (6H, m), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.4 Hz), 3.62 (2H, s), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.98 - 4.09 (2H, m), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.90 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.26 - 7.57 (12H, m).

IR (KBr) 3365, 1653, 1609, 1520, 1501, 1316, 1246, 1177 $cm^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd.  $C_{43}H_{55}N_3O_8$  Calcd. C, 69.61; H, 7.47; N, 5.66.

Found C, 69.51; H, 7.46; N, 5.88.

Reference Example 294

To a solution of methyl 7-bromo-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-  
5 benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.80g) and 3-  
methoxypropionaldehyde (1.25g) in 1,2-dichloroethane  
(10ml) was added sodium triacetoxyborohydride (1.81g) at  
room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 24  
hours. Water was added to the reaction system, and the  
10 mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic  
layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with  
magnesium sulfate. After concentration under reduced  
pressure, the resulting residue was separated and  
purified with column chromatography (ethyl acetate :  
15 hexane = 1 : 3  $\rightarrow$  1 : 2) to give methyl 7-bromo-1-(3-  
methoxypropyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate  
(935mg) as yellow oil.

$^1H$ -NMR (200 MHz,  $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  1.83 - 1.96 (2H, m), 2.79 (2H, t,  
J = 4.0 Hz), 3.22 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 3.34 (3H, s), 3.37 -  
20 3.45 (4H, m), 3.80 (3H, s), 6.75 (1H, d, J = 9.2 Hz), 7.21  
- 7.26 (1H, m), 7.42 (1H, d, J = 2.6 Hz), 7.57 (1H, s).  
IR (neat) 1699, 1626, 1588, 1539, 1495, 1435, 1256, 1177,  
1117, 1086  $cm^{-1}$ .

Reference Example 295

25 A mixture of methyl 7-bromo-1-(3-methoxypropyl)-2,3-

10018301-13101

5 dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (450mg), 4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (313mg) and potassium carbonate (351mg) in toluene-ethanol-water (15-1.5-1.5ml) was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour under argon atmosphere. To the reaction system was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (73mg), and the mixture was heated to reflux for 20 hours. After cooled to room temperature, the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. After concentration under reduced pressure, the residue was separated and purified with column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 1 : 4 → 1 : 2) to give methyl 1-(3-methoxypropyl)-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-15 1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (376mg) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.55 - 1.73 (2H, m), 1.86 - 2.03 (2H, m), 2.79 - 2.84 (2H, m), 3.26 - 3.31 (2H, m), 3.36 (3H, s), 3.42 - 3.55 (6H, m), 3.81 (3H, s), 3.83 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 6.92 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.97 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 20 7.38 - 7.51 (4H, m), 7.76 (1H, s).

IR (neat) 1699, 1607, 1505, 1456, 1435, 1244, 1181, 1119 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

## Reference Example 296

25 To a solution of methyl 1-(3-methoxypropyl)-7-[4-(2-



propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (376mg) in a mixture of THF-methanol (5-10ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (3.0ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 24 hours. After concentration under reduced pressure, 1N hydrochloric acid was added to pH 3-4, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. After concentration under reduced pressure, the resulting crystals were collected by filtration. The crystals were washed with diisopropyl ether and hexane to give 1-(3-methoxypropyl)-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (346mg) as yellow crystals.

mp 114 - 115°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.94 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.56 - 1.73 (2H, m), 1.88 - 2.04 (2H, m), 2.78 - 2.89 (2H, m), 3.24 - 3.35 (2H, m), 3.36 (3H, s), 3.43 - 3.55 (6H, m), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.17 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.94 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.40 - 7.53 (4H, m), 7.88 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 1671, 1607, 1501, 1273, 1252, 1186, 1115 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>26</sub>H<sub>33</sub>NO<sub>5</sub> Calcd. C, 71.05; H, 7.57; N, 3.19.

Found C, 70.78; H, 7.38; N, 3.01.

Reference Example 297

10018331.1201

A mixture of methyl 7-bromo-1-(3-methoxypropyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (478.2mg), 4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (354mg) and potassium carbonate (373mg) in toluene-ethanol-water (15-1.5-1.5ml) was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour under argon atmosphere. To the reaction system was added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (78mg), and the mixture was heated to reflux for 16 hours. After cooled to room temperature, the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. After concentration under reduced pressure, the residue was separated and purified with column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 1 : 4 → 1 : 3 → 1 : 2) to give an end product (362mg) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.30 - 1.49 (2H, m), 1.53 - 1.69 (2H, m), 1.87 - 2.03 (2H, m), 2.78 - 2.86 (2H, m), 3.28 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.36 (3H, s), 3.42 - 3.50 (4H, m), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.7 Hz), 3.78 - 3.83 (5H, m), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.90 - 7.00 (3H, m), 7.38 - 7.51 (4H, m), 7.76 (1H, s).

IR (neat) 1699, 1622, 1607, 1505, 1456, 1435, 1246, 1182, 1119, 818 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

## Reference Example 298

25 To a solution of methyl 7-[4-(2-

butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(3-methoxypropyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (362.3mg) in a mixture of THF-methanol (5-10ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (2.8ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 15 hours. After concentration under reduced pressure, 1N hydrochloric acid was added to pH 3-4, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. After concentration under reduced pressure, the resulting crystals were collected by filtration. The crystals were washed with diisopropyl ether and hexane to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(3-methoxypropyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (283mg) as yellow crystals.

mp 99 - 101°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.29 - 1.48 (2H, m), 1.53 - 1.70 (2H, m), 1.88 - 2.04 (2H, m), 2.80 - 2.89 (2H, m), 3.25 - 3.35 (2H, m), 3.37 (3H, s), 3.43 - 3.49 (4H, m), 3.56 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.94 (1H, d, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.40 - 7.53 (4H, m), 7.88 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 1671, 1607, 1501, 1269, 1246, 1184, 1115 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>27</sub>H<sub>35</sub>NO<sub>5</sub> Calcd. C, 71.50; H, 7.78; N, 3.09.

Found C, 71.31; H, 7.75; N, 2.99.

## Reference Example 299

To a solution of methyl 7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (400mg) and 3-ethoxypropionaldehyde (0.53g) in 1,2-dichloroethane (10ml) was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (0.66g) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 20 hours. To the reaction system was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. After concentration under reduced pressure, the residue was separated and purified with column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 1 : 4 → 1 : 3) to give methyl 1-(3-ethoxypropyl)-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (475mg) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.95 (3H, t, J = 7.5 Hz), 1.23 (3H, t, J = 6.9 Hz), 1.52 - 1.72 (2H, m), 1.88 - 2.03 (2H, m), 2.80 - 2.84 (2H, m), 3.26 - 3.31 (2H, m), 3.43 - 3.55 (8H, m), 3.79 - 3.84 (5H, m), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.94 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.40 (1H, dd, J = 8.8, 2.2 Hz), 7.47 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.51 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.76 (1H, s).

## Reference Example 300

To a solution of methyl 1-(3-ethoxypropyl)-7-[4-(2-

propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (475mg) in a mixture of THF-methanol (5-10ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (3.0ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 62 hours. After concentration under reduced pressure, to the mixture was added 1N hydrochloric acid (3.0ml), and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. After concentration under reduced pressure, the resulting crystals were collected by filtration. The crystals were washed with diisopropyl ether and hexane to give 1-(3-ethoxypropyl)-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (390mg) as yellow crystals.

mp 98 - 100°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.95 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.23 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.53 - 1.74 (2H, m), 1.89 - 2.04 (2H, m), 2.79 - 2.89 (2H, m), 3.26 - 3.35 (2H, m), 3.44 - 3.55 (8H, m), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.17 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.96 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.39 - 7.52 (4H, m), 7.87 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 1669, 1607, 1501, 1275, 1248, 1184, 1125 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>27</sub>H<sub>35</sub>NO<sub>5</sub> Calcd. C, 71.50; H, 7.78; N, 3.09.

Found C, 71.23; H, 7.84; N, 3.16.

Reference Example 301

To a solution of methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (400mg) and 3-ethoxypropionaldehyde (0.52g) in 1,2-dichloroethane (10ml) was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (0.64g) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 20 hours. To the reaction system was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. After concentration under reduced pressure, the residue was separated and purified with column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 1 : 4 → 1 : 3) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(3-ethoxypropyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (452mg) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.23 (3H, t, J = 7.1 Hz), 1.28 - 1.68 (4H, m), 1.89 - 2.06 (2H, m), 2.78 - 2.87 (2H, m), 3.27 - 3.31 (2H, m), 3.43 - 3.59 (8H, m), 3.78 - 3.83 (5H, m), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 6.94 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.37 - 7.52 (4H, m), 7.76 (1H, s).

IR (neat) 1699, 1622, 1609, 1501, 1454, 1435, 1373, 1354, 1246, 1181, 1125, 818 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

## Reference Example 302

To a solution of methyl 7-[4-(2-

butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(3-ethoxypropyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (452mg) in a mixture of THF-methanol (5-10ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution (3.0ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 40 hours. After concentration under reduced pressure, to the mixture was added 1N hydrochloric acid (3.0ml), and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. After concentration under reduced pressure, the resulting crystals were collected by filtration. The crystals were washed with hexane to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(3-ethoxypropyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (340mg) as yellow crystals.

mp 76 - 78°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.23 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.30 - 1.47 (2H, m), 1.53 - 1.68 (2H, m), 1.88 - 2.04 (2H, m), 2.79 - 2.88 (2H, m), 3.26 - 3.37 (2H, m), 3.44 - 3.59 (8H, m), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 6.96 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.40 - 7.54 (4H, m), 7.88 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 1667, 1607, 1501, 1271, 1248, 1184, 1125 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>37</sub>NO<sub>5</sub> Calcd. C, 71.92; H, 7.98; N, 3.00.

Found C, 71.89; H, 8.08; N, 2.68.

Reference Example 303

A mixture of palladium chloride (96mg) and cuprous chloride (218mg) in DMF-water (7-1ml) was stirred at 60°C for 18 hours under oxygen atmosphere. To the reaction system was added a solution of methyl 7-bromo-1-(2-propenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (500mg) in DMF-water (7-1ml) was added, and the mixture was stirred at 60°C for 7 hours. To the reaction system was added saturated brine, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. After concentration under reduced pressure, the residue was separated and purified with column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 1 : 4 → 1 : 2) to give methyl 7-bromo-1-(2-oxopropyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (311mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.21 (3H, s), 2.82 (2H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.30 (2H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.81 (3H, s), 4.08 (2H, s), 6.31 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.21 (1H, dd, J = 8.8, 2.2 Hz), 7.46 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.59 (1H, s).

#### Reference Example 304

A solution of methyl 7-bromo-1-(2-oxopropyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.29g), ethylene glycol (2.3g) and p-toluenesulfonic acid monohydrate (36mg) in toluene (10ml) was heated to reflux for 3 days while removing water. After cooled to room temperature,



an aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate was added to alkaline, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. After concentration under reduced pressure, the residue was separated and purified with column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 1 : 4) to give methyl 7-bromo-1-[(2-methyl-1,3-dioxolan-2-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (992mg).

mp 96 - 99°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.57 (3H, s), 2.78 - 2.83 (2H, m), 3.34 - 3.39 (2H, m), 3.43 (2H, s), 3.80 (3H, s), 3.88 - 3.99 (4H, m), 7.13 (1H, d, J = 9.2 Hz), 7.22 - 7.27 (1H, m), 7.42 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.58 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 1703, 1626, 1495, 1435, 1258, 1217, 1179, 1086, 1047 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>17</sub>H<sub>20</sub>NO<sub>4</sub>Br Calcd. C, 53.42; H, 5.27; N, 3.66. Found C, 53.34; H, 5.50; N, 3.64.

#### Reference Example 305

A mixture of methyl 7-bromo-1-[(2-methyl-1,3-dioxolan-2-yl)methyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (960mg), 4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (0.66g) and potassium carbonate (0.69g) in a mixture of toluene-ethanol-water (25-2.5-2.5ml) was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour under argon atmosphere. To the

reaction system was added

tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (144mg), and the mixture was heated to reflux for 8 hours. After cooled to room temperature, the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the mixture was dried with magnesium sulfate. After concentration under reduced pressure, the residue was separated and purified with column chromatography to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-[(2-methyl-1,3-dioxolan-2-yl)methyl]-7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzaepine-4-carboxylate (796mg) as yellow oil.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (3H, t,  $J = 7.4$  Hz), 1.31 - 1.47 (5H, m), 1.52 - 1.67 (2H, m), 1.78 - 1.86 (2H, m), 3.41 - 3.45 (2H, m), 3.49 (2H, s), 3.56 (2H, t,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.78 - 3.83 (5H, m), 3.97 (4H, s), 4.16 (2H, t,  $J = 5.0$  Hz), 6.98 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.26 - 7.30 (1H, m), 7.39 - 7.51 (4H, m), 7.77 (1H, s).

IR (neat) 1699, 1609, 1505, 1495, 1435, 1242, 1181, 1127, 1047  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

#### Reference Example 306

To a solution of methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-[(2-methyl-1,3-dioxolan-2-yl)methyl]-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzaepine-4-carboxylate (795.7mg) in a mixture of THF-methanol (5-5ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution

(3.2ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 16 hours. After concentration under reduced pressure, to the mixture was added 1N hydrochloric acid (4ml) and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate.

5 The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. After concentration under reduced pressure, the resulting crystals were collected by filtration. The crystals were washed with diisopropyl ether to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-[(2-methyl-  
10 1,3-dioxolan-2-yl)methyl]-7-[4-(2-propoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (664mg) as yellow crystals.

mp 127 - 129°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.30 -  
15 1.49 (5H, m), 1.52 - 1.68 (2H, m), 2.81 - 2.89 (2H, m), 3.41 - 3.49 (2H, m), 3.51 (2H, s), 3.56 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.81 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.91 - 4.01 (4H, m), 4.17 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.98 (2H, t, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.26 - 7.32 (1H, m), 7.41 - 7.53 (4H, m), 7.89 (1H, s).

20 IR (KBr) 1665, 1611, 1503, 1427, 1246, 1184, 1046 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>28</sub>H<sub>35</sub>NO<sub>6</sub> Calcd. C, 69.83; H, 7.33; N, 2.91.

Found C, 69.78; H, 7.39; N, 2.81.

#### Reference Example 307

To a solution of 7-bromo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-  
25 benzazepine-5-one (5.0g), propionaldehyde (15ml) and

acetic acid (4.7ml) in 1,2-dichloroethane (250ml) was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (22.0g) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 6 hours. To the reaction system was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with an aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate and saturated brine, and dried with magnesium sulfate. After concentration under reduced pressure, the residue was separated and purified with column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 1 : 4) to give 7-bromo-1-propyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepine-5-one (5.89g) as yellow oil.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.00 (3H, t,  $J = 7.4$  Hz), 1.58 - 1.81 (2H, m), 2.18 - 2.33 (2H, m), 2.75 (2H, t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 3.26 (2H, t,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.38 (2H, t,  $J = 7.7$  Hz), 6.76 (1H, d,  $J = 9.0$  Hz), 7.34 (1H, dd,  $J = 9.0, 2.6$  Hz), 7.84 (1H, d,  $J = 2.6$  Hz).

IR (neat) 1667, 1590, 1487, 1443, 1412, 1381, 1366, 1337, 1296, 1281, 1252, 1223, 1206, 1161, 1136, 1117, 808  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

#### Reference Example 308

A mixture of 7-bromo-1-propyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepine-5-one (5.89g), 4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl borate (5.45g) and potassium carbonate (5.74g) in toluene-ethanol-water (200-20-20ml) was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour under argon atmosphere. To the

reaction system was added

tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0.72g), and the mixture was heated to reflux for 3 hours. After cooled to room temperature, the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. After concentration under reduced pressure, the residue was separated and purified with column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 1 : 9 → 1 : 4) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-propyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepine-5-one (7.15g) as yellow oil.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.02 (3H, t, J = 7.5 Hz), 1.29 - 1.47 (2H, m), 1.52 - 1.84 (4H, m), 2.18 - 2.35 (2H, m), 2.80 (2H, t, J = 7.1 Hz), 3.31 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.44 (2H, t, J = 7.5 Hz), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.80 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 4.15 (2H, t, J = 4.9 Hz), 6.92 - 6.98 (3H, m), 7.46 - 7.54 (3H, m), 7.96 (1H, d, J = 2.6 Hz).

#### Reference Example 309

To a solution of 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-propyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepine-5-one (500mg) in THF (15ml) was added dropwise lithium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide (1.0M solution in hexane, 3.8ml) at -78°C under argon atmosphere. After stirred at -78°C for 2 hours, argon was removed under reduced pressure to

replace it with carbon dioxide. The reaction mixture was removed from an acetone-dry ice bath, and stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. To the reaction system were added water and ethyl acetate, and 1N hydrochloric acid was slowly added at 0°C until pH 6. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, the organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. Concentration by rotary evaporator under reduced pressure afforded yellow oil (981mg).

To a solution of the oil (980.9mg) in ethanol (20ml) was added sodium borohydride (0.48g), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours under nitrogen atmosphere. Ethanol was evaporated under reduced pressure, and water and ethyl acetate were added thereto.

1N hydrochloric acid was slowly added at 0°C until pH 6. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. After concentration by rotary evaporator under reduce pressure, concentrated

hydrochloric acid (1.5ml) was added to a solution of the residue (769mg) in 1,2-dimethoxyethane (20ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was heated to reflux for 1 hour. After cooled to room temperature, water and ethyl acetate were added thereto. 1N sodium hydroxide solution

was added dropwise at 0°C until pH=4. The mixture was

extracted with ethyl acetate, and water was added to the organic layer, followed by addition of 1N sodium hydroxide solution until pH 6. The solution was separated, and the organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate.

After concentration under reduced pressure, the residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane = 1 : 2 → 1 : 1) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-propyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (374mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.96 - 1.02 (6H, m), 1.34 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.80 (4H, m), 2.84 (2H, m), 3.28 - 3.35 (4H, m), 3.55 (2H, t,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.80 (2H, t,  $J = 5.0$  Hz), 4.16 (2H, t,  $J = 5.0$  Hz), 6.88 (1H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 6.98 (2H, t,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.39 - 7.52 (4H, m), 7.88 (1H, s).

#### Reference Example 310

To a solution of methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.0g, 2.53mmol) and propionaldehyde (1ml, 13.86mmol) in 1,2-dichloroethane (30ml) was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (1.9g, 8.96mmol) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 24 hours. To the reaction system was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and

saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. After concentration under reduced pressure, the residue was dissolved in THF (50ml) and methanol (50ml), and to the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide solution. After heating to reflux for 1 hour, the mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. To the residue was added 1N hydrochloric acid, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water and saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. After concentration under reduced pressure, the resulting crystals were collected by filtration to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-propyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.895g) as yellow crystals. mp 145 - 146°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.96 - 1.02 (6H, m), 1.34 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.80 (4H, m), 2.84 (2H, m), 3.28 - 3.35 (4H, m), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.80 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 4.16 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 6.88 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.98 (2H, t, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.39 - 7.52 (4H, m), 7.88 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 2975, 2925, 2870, 1670, 1605, 1500 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>26</sub>H<sub>33</sub>NO<sub>4</sub> Calcd. C, 73.73; H, 7.85; N, 3.31. Found C, 73.68; H, 8.11; N, 3.23.

Reference Example 311

4-morpholinophenyl borate (237mg) and 7-bromo-1-propyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-



yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (391mg) were dissolved in water : ethanol : toluene (= 1 : 1 : 10, v/v, 18.0ml), and potassium carbonate (253mg) was added thereto. This mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes under argon atmosphere, tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (35mg) was added thereto, and the mixture was heated to reflux for 10 hours under argon atmosphere. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with water and saturated brine. The organic layer was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate → ethyl acetate:ethanol = 10:1), which was further recrystallized from ethyl acetate-diisopropyl ether-hexane to give N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-(4-morpholinophenyl)-1-propyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (222mg) as yellow crystals.

mp 114 - 118°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.99 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.64 - 1.81 (6H, m), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.57 - 2.70 (1H, m), 2.92 (2H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.20 (4H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.28 - 3.43 (6H, m), 3.57 (2H, s), 3.89 (4H, t, J = 4.8 Hz), 4.01 - 4.07 (2H, m), 6.90 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.97 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz),

7.30 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.39 - 7.56 (8H, m).

IR (KBr) 2955, 1649, 1605, 1512, 1503, 1451, 1406, 1312, 1233, 1175, 1119, 928, 812, 733  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Anal. Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{37}\text{H}_{45}\text{N}_4\text{O}_3$  ( $1.1\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ): C, 72.31; H, 7.90; N,

5 9.12. Found C, 72.09; H, 7.66; N, 8.87.

#### Reference Example 312

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 1-(2-methoxybenzyl)-7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (340mg) in tetrahydrofuran  
10 (10ml). Then, thionyl chloride (267mg) was added thereto at  $0^\circ\text{C}$ , the temperature was returned to room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour under nitrogen atmosphere. The solvent and excess thionyl chloride were evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting  
15 residue was suspended in tetrahydrofuran (30ml), which was added to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline (197mg) and triethylamine (906mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml) at  $0^\circ\text{C}$ . The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour  
20 under nitrogen atmosphere, water was added thereto, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was separated  
25 and purified with silica gel column chromatography

(methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 8), which was  
 recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 1-(2-  
 methoxybenzyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl N-(tetrahydropyran-4-  
 yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-  
 1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (337mg) as yellow crystals.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.05 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.60 -  
 1.88 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.64 (br, 1H), 2.90 (br, 2H),  
 3.32 - 3.45 (m, 4H), 3.57 (s, 2H), 3.89 (s, 3H), 3.92 -  
 4.08 (m, 4H), 4.59 (s, 2H), 6.82 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.92  
 - 6.97 (m, 4H), 7.15 - 7.22 (m, 1H), 7.26 - 7.38 (m, 4H),  
 7.44 - 7.60 (m, 7H).

#### Reference Example 313

One droplet of DMF was added to a solution of 1-[(1-  
 ethylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-  
 dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (330mg) in  
 dichloromethane (15ml). Then, thionyl chloride (118mg)  
 was added thereto at 0°C, the temperature was returned to  
 room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour  
 under nitrogen atmosphere. Then, this solution was added  
 to a solution of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-  
 yl)amino]methyl]aniline (219mg) and triethylamine (2.01g)  
 in dichloromethane (15ml) at 0°C. The mixture was  
 stirred at room temperature for overnight under nitrogen  
 atmosphere, water was added thereto, and the mixture was  
 extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was

washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was separated and purified with silica gel column chromatography

5 (methanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 4), which was recrystallized from hexane-ethyl acetate to give 1-[(1-ethylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl]-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-(4-propoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide  
 10 (362mg) as yellow crystals.  
<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.05 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.49 (t, 3H, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.58 - 1.88 (m, 6H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.65 (br, 1H), 2.84 (br, 2H), 3.25 - 3.42 (m, 4H), 3.57 (s, 2H), 3.93 - 4.06 (m, 4H), 4.16 (q, 2H, J = 7.4 Hz), 4.40 (s, 2H),  
 15 6.94 - 7.01 (m, 3H), 7.26 - 7.40 (m, 4H), 7.45 - 7.56 (m, 8H).  
 Anal. Calcd. C<sub>39</sub>H<sub>47</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>3</sub> Calcd. C, 73.90; H, 7.47; N, 11.05.  
 Found C, 73.58; H, 7.47; N, 10.86.

#### Reference Example 314

20 Methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.9g) was dissolved in acetonitrile (190ml). To the solution were added potassium carbonate (1.65g) and ethyl iodide (0.76ml), and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 16  
 25 hours. The solvent was concentrated to 1/3 under reduced

pressure, which was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate=3/1  $\rightarrow$  1/2) to give methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(1-ethyltetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.05g) and methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-ethyltetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.42g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (1-ethyl compound; 200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.33 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.44 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.47 - 1.66 (2H, m), 2.58 (2H, t, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.37 (2H, t, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.56 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.78 - 3.84 (2H, m), 3.81 (3H, s), 4.13 - 4.19 (2H, m), 4.31 (2H, q, J = 7.0 Hz), 4.84 (2H, s), 6.95 - 7.02 (3H, m), 7.42 - 7.49 (3H, m), 7.57 (1H, m), 7.78 (1H, s).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (2-ethyl compound; 200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.33 - 1.49 (2H, m), 1.57 - 1.65 (2H, m), 1.65 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 2.83 - 2.91 (2H, m), 3.39 - 3.45 (2H, m), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.78 - 3.83 (2H, m), 3.82 (3H, s), 4.07 - 4.18 (2H, m), 4.67 (2H, q, J = 7.4 Hz), 4.75 (2H, s), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.16 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.40 - 7.54 (4H, m), 7.79 (1H, s).

## Reference Example 315

Methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(1-ethyltetrazol-4-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (0.11g) was dissolved in THF (2.2ml)/methanol (2.2ml). To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide (1.1ml), and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 4 hours. After cooled to room temperature, pH was adjusted to approximate 5 with 6N hydrochloric acid, and the solvent was removed to half under reduced pressure. The material was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the residue was washed with hexane/ethyl acetate (8/1) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(1-ethyltetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.10g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.34 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.46 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.54 - 1.65 (2H, m), 2.62 (2H, m), 3.40 (2H, m), 3.56 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.78 - 3.84 (2H, m), 4.14 - 4.19 (2H, m), 4.29 (2H, q, J = 7.4 Hz), 4.86 (2H, s), 6.99 (3H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.44 - 7.49 (3H, m), 7.58 (1H, d, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.88 (1H, s).  
IR (KBr) 2957, 2932, 1667, 1609, 1505, 1435, 1273, 1244, 1119, 828, 797 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Working Example 111 (Production of Compound 111)

In THF (6.0ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(1-ethyltetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.10g). To the solution was added DMF (two droplets), followed by

5 addition of oxalyl chloride (35 $\mu$ l) at 0°C and stirring at room temperature for 1 hour. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, a solution of the resulting residue in THF was added dropwise to a solution of 4-[methyl(tetrahydropyranyl-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenylalanine

10 (50mg) and triethylamine (0.17ml) in THF (6.0ml) at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction solution was added to water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate.

15 The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol = 3/1), which was recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(1-ethyltetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 111) (34mg).

20

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.33 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.46 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.57 - 1.75 (6H, m),

25 2.21 (3H, s), 2.68 (3H, m), 3.36 - 3.43 (4H, m), 3.51 -

3.59 (2H, m), 3.59 (2H, s), 3.77 - 3.83 (2H, m), 4.00 - 4.17 (4H, m), 4.32 (2H, q,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 4.81 (2H, s), 6.98 (3H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.30 (2H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.42 - 7.82 (8H, m).

5 IR (KBr) 3277, 2934, 1651, 1607, 1505, 1242, 822  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Reference Example 316

In THF (20.8ml)/methanol (20.8ml) was dissolved methyl 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-ethyltetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylate (1.04g).

10 To the solution was added 1N sodium hydroxide (10.4ml), and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 4 hours. After cooled to room temperature, pH was adjusted to approximate 5 with 6N hydrochloric acid, and the solvent was removed to half under reduced pressure. The material  
15 was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the extract was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was washed with hexane/ethyl acetate (8/1) to give 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-ethyltetrazol-4-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-  
20 carboxylic acid (0.76g).

$^1\text{H}$ -NMR (200 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.93 (3H, t,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 1.33 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.55 - 1.65 (2H, m), 1.66 (3H, t,  $J = 7.4$  Hz), 2.88 (2H, m), 3.45 (2H, m), 3.56 (2H, t,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 3.81  
25 (2H, m), 4.13 - 4.18 (2H, m), 4.68 (2H, q,  $J = 7.4$  Hz),



4.77 (2H, s), 6.98 (2H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.17 (1H, d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.41 - 7.49 (3H, m), 7.55 (1H, d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 7.91 (1H, s).

IR (KBr) 3034, 2934, 1672, 1607, 1501, 1404, 1246, 1190,  
5 1132, 816  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Working Example 112 (Production of Compound 112)

In THF (15ml) was dissolved 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-ethyltetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (0.75mg). To the  
10 solution was added DMF (three droplets), followed by addition of oxalyl chloride (0.26ml) at 0°C and stirring at room temperature for 1 hour. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure. a solution of the resulting residue in THF was added dropwise to a solution of 4-  
15 [methyl(tetrahydropyranyl-4-yl)aminomethyl)phenylalanine (0.38g) and triethylamine (1.26ml) in THF (11.4ml) at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction solution was added to water. and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract  
20 was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the resulting residue was purified with silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/ethanol=3/1), which was recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate to give 7-  
25 [4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-(2-ethyltetrazol-5-

ylmethyl)-N-[4-[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)aminomethyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide (Compound 112) (0.48g).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (200 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.93 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.33 - 1.45 (2H, m), 1.54 - 1.78 (6H, m), 1.66 (3H, t, J = 7.2 Hz), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.65 (1H, m), 2.95 (2H, m), 3.30 - 3.43 (2H, m), 3.46 - 3.50 (2H, m), 3.55 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.57 (2H, s), 3.77 - 3.83 (2H, m), 3.99 - 4.08 (2H, m), 4.12 - 4.18 (2H, m), 4.68 (2H, q, J = 7.2 Hz), 4.78 (2H, s), 6.98 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.18 (1H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.30 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.39 - 7.59 (8H, m).

IR (KBr) 3306, 2934, 1644, 1505, 1244, 1140, 812 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Anal. Calcd. C<sub>40</sub>H<sub>51</sub>N<sub>7</sub>O<sub>4</sub> Calcd. C, 69.24; N, 14.13; H, 7.41. Found C, 69.04; N, 14.04; H, 7.44.

Working Example 113 (Production of Compound 27)

To a solution of 7-[4-(2-butoxyethoxy)phenyl]-1-propyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-1-benzazepine-4-carboxylic acid (4.00g) in THF (40ml) were added thionyl chloride (1.72ml) and DMF (0.5ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour. After concentration under reduced pressure, the residue was dissolved in THF (50ml) and DMF (10 ml), which was added dropwise to a mixture of 4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]aniline dihydrochloride (3.05g) and

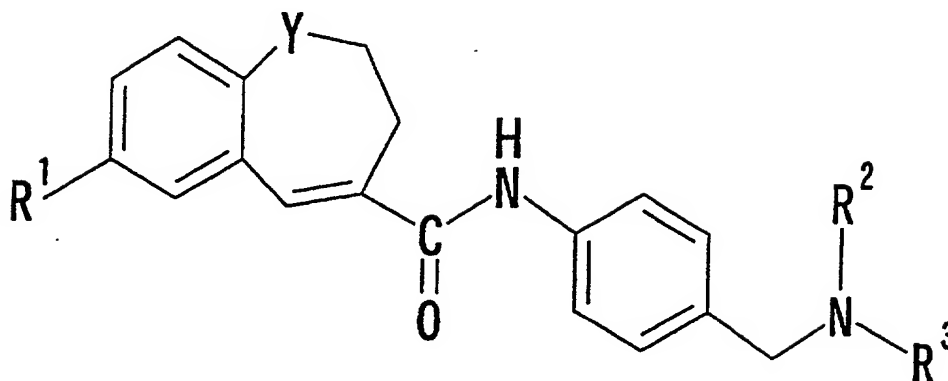
triethylamine (7.9ml) in THF (30ml) at 0°C. After stirred at room temperature for 16 hours, water was added to the reaction system, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated brine and dried with magnesium sulfate. After concentrated under reduced pressure, the residue was separated and purified with column chromatography (ethanol : ethyl acetate = 1 : 19), which was further purified by recrystallization (2-propanol) to give an end product (Compound 27) (4.19g) as yellow crystals.

#### Industrial Applicability

The compound of the formula (I) of the present invention or a salt thereof has potent CC chemokine receptor (CCR) antagonistic activity, in particular, potent CCR5 antagonistic activity and, thus, it can be advantageously used for the treatment or prevention of infectious disease of various HIV in human (e.g., AIDS).

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A compound of the formula (I):



wherein R<sup>1</sup> is a 5- to 6-membered aromatic ring which has  
 a group of the formula: R-Z<sup>1</sup>-X-Z<sup>2</sup>- wherein R is a hydrogen  
 atom or an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, X is  
 an optionally substituted alkylene chain, and Z<sup>1</sup> and Z<sup>2</sup>  
 are respectively hetero-atoms, and which may have a  
 further substituent, the group R may bind to the 5- to 6-  
 membered aromatic ring to form a ring, Y is an optionally  
 substituted imino group, R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> are respectively an  
 optionally substituted aliphatic hydrocarbon group or an  
 optionally substituted alicyclic heterocyclic group; or a  
 salt thereof.

2. A pro-drug of the compound according to claim 1  
 or a salt thereof.

3. The compound according to claim 1, wherein the 5-  
 to 6-membered aromatic ring is benzene, furan or  
 thiophene.

4. The compound according to claim 1, wherein the 5-  
to 6-membered aromatic ring is benzene;

5. The compound according to claim 1, wherein R is  
an optionally halogenated lower alkyl group.

5 6. The compound according to claim 1, wherein X is -  
(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>- (n is an integer of 1-4).

7. The compound according to claim 1, wherein Z<sup>1</sup> and  
Z<sup>2</sup> are respectively -O-, -S(O)<sub>m</sub>- (m is an integer of 0-2)  
or -N(R<sup>4</sup>)- (R<sup>4</sup> is a hydrogen atom or an optionally  
10 substituted lower alkyl group).

8. The compound according to claim 1, wherein Z<sup>1</sup> is -  
O- or -S(O)<sub>m</sub>- (m is an integer of 0-2).

9. The compound according to claim 1, wherein Z<sup>1</sup> is -  
O-.

15 10. The compound according to claim 1, wherein Z<sup>2</sup> is  
-O- or -N(R<sup>4</sup>)- (R<sup>4</sup> is a hydrogen atom or an optionally  
substituted lower alkyl group).

11. The compound according to claim 1, wherein Z<sup>2</sup> is  
-O-.

20 12. The compound according to claim 1, wherein Y is  
-N(R<sup>5</sup>)- (R<sup>5</sup> is a hydrogen atom, an optionally substituted  
hydrocarbon group or an optionally substituted acyl  
group).

13. The compound according to claim 12, wherein (R<sup>5</sup>)  
25 is C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, formyl or C<sub>2-5</sub> alkanoyl.

14. The compound according to claim 12, wherein  $R^5$  is a group represented by the formula  $-(CH_2)_k-R^6$ : wherein  $k$  is 0 or 1, and  $R^6$  is an optionally substituted 5- to 6-membered monocyclic aromatic group.

5        15. The compound according to claim 1, wherein  $R^2$  is an optionally substituted straight chain hydrocarbon group.

16. The compound according to claim 1, wherein  $R^2$  is an optionally substituted lower alkyl group.

10       17. The compound according to claim 1, wherein  $R^3$  is an optionally substituted alicyclic hydrocarbon group or an optionally substituted alicyclic heterocyclic group.

18. The compound according to claim 17, wherein the alicyclic hydrocarbon group is a lower cycloalkyl group.

15       19. The compound according to claim 17, wherein the alicyclic hydrocarbon group is cyclohexyl.

20. The compound according to claim 17, wherein the alicyclic heterocyclic group is a saturated alicyclic heterocyclic group.

20       21. The compound according to claim 17, wherein the alicyclic heterocyclic group is tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydrothiopyranyl or piperidyl.

22. The compound according to claim 17, wherein the alicyclic heterocyclic group is tetrahydropyranyl.

25       23. A compound selected from the class consisting of

- 7-(4-ethoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-ethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 1-ethyl-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-ethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-ethoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 1-formyl-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-formyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-propyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-propyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 1-benzyl-7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-cyclopropylmethyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-

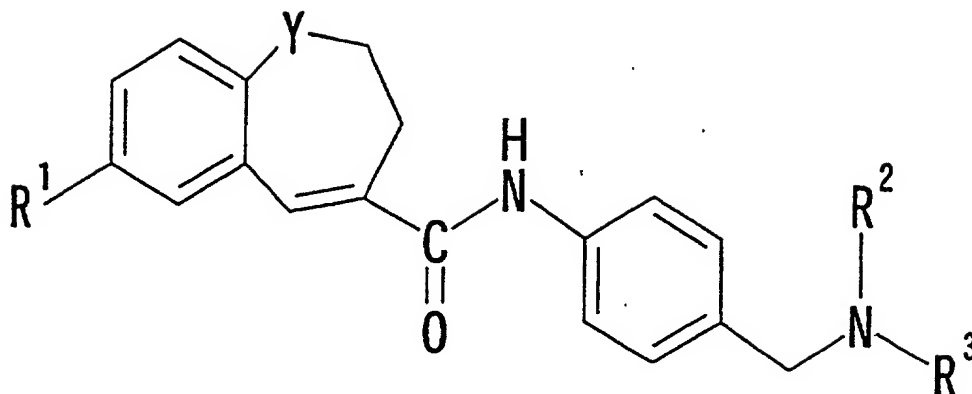
- N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-phenyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3,4-methylenedioxy)phenyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(2-methyloxazol-5-yl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 1-allyl-7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(3-thienyl)methyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(thiazol-2-yl)methyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(1-methylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(3-methylisothiazol-4-yl)methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-



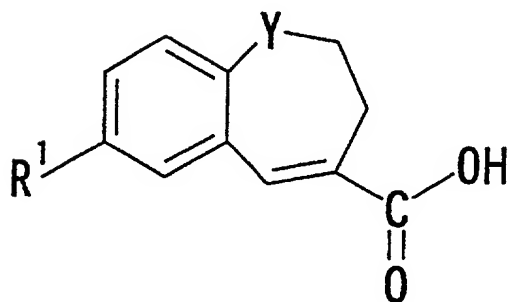
carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-(1-ethylpyrazol-4-yl)methyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-1-isobutyl-N-[4-  
5 [[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 1-isobutyl-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-5-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-7-(4-propoxyethoxyphenyl)-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-  
10 (tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(thiazol-5-yl)methyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, 7-(4-butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(1-methyltetrazol-5-yl)methyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, and 7-(4-  
15 butoxyethoxyphenyl)-N-[4-[[N-methyl-N-(tetrahydropyran-4-yl)amino]methyl]phenyl]-1-(2-methyltetrazol-5-yl)methyl-2,3-dihydro-1-benzazepine-4-carboxamide, or salt thereof.

24. A pro-drug of the compound according to claim 23 or a salt thereof.

20 25. A method for producing a compound of the formula:

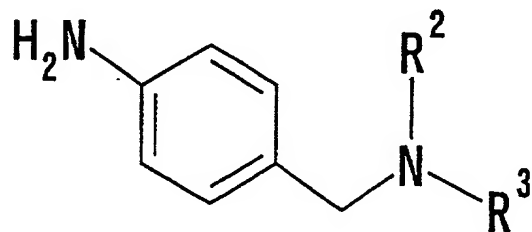


wherein each symbol is as defined in claim 1, or a salt thereof, which comprises subjecting a compound of the formula:



5

wherein each symbol is as defined in claim 1, a salt or a reactive derivative thereof to a condensation reaction with a compound of the formula:



10 wherein each symbol is as defined in claim 1, or a salt

thereof.

26. A pharmaceutical composition which comprises the compound according to claim 1 or a salt thereof.

27. The composition according to claim 26, which is  
5 a CC chemokine receptor antagonist.

28. The pharmaceutical composition according to claim 26, which is a CCR5 antagonist.

29. The composition according to claim 26, which is for the treatment or prevention of infectious disease of  
10 HIV.

30. The composition according to claim 26, which is for the treatment or prevention of AIDS.

31. The composition according to claim 26, which is for the prevention of the progression of AIDS.

15 32. The composition according to claim 29, which is used in combination with a protease inhibitor and/or a reverse transcriptase inhibitor.

33. The composition according to claim 32, wherein the reverse transcriptase inhibitor is zidovudine,  
20 didanosine, zalcitabine, lamivudine, stavudine, nevirapine, delavirdine, efavirenz or abacavir.

34. The composition according to claim 32, wherein the protease inhibitor is saquinavir, ritonavir, indinavir or nelfinavir.

25 35. Use of the compound according to claim 1 or a

salt thereof in combination with a protease inhibitor and/or a reverse transcriptase inhibitor for the treatment or prebention of infectious disease of HIV.

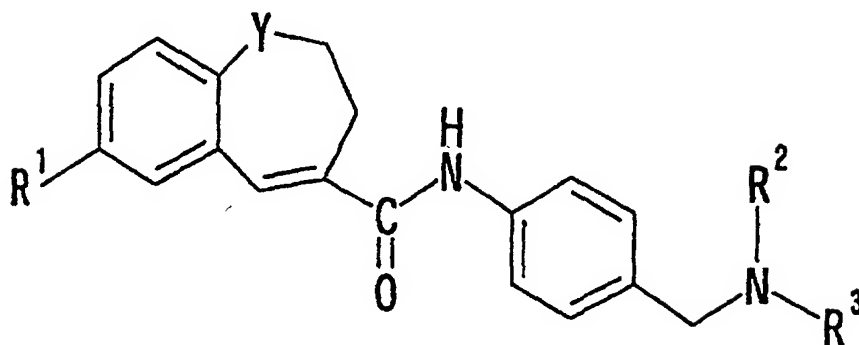
5 36. A method for antagonizing a CC chemokine receptor in a mammal, which comprises administering an effective amount of a compound according to claim 1 or a salt thereof to a mammal.

10 37. Use of a compound according to claim 1 or a salt thereof in preparation of a medicament for antagonizing a CC chemokine receptor.

10018321 131201

## ABSTRACT OF THE DISCLOSURE

Compounds of the general formula (I):



5 or salts thereof, which exhibit CCR5 antagonism and exert preventive and therapeutic effects against HIV infections: wherein R¹ is a 5- to 6-membered aromatic ring which bears a substituent represented by the general formula: R-Z¹-X-Z²- (wherein R¹ is hydrogen or optionally substituted hydrocarbyl; X is optionally substituted alkylene; and Z¹ and Z² are each a heteroatom) and may be  
 10 further substituted, with R being optionally bonded to the aromatic ring to form another ring; Y is optionally substituted imino; and R² and R³ are each optionally substituted aliphatic hydrocarbyl or an optionally  
 15 substituted hetero-alicyclic group.

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

## Declaration and Power of Attorney for Patent Application

## 特許出願宣言書及び委任状

## Japanese Language Declaration

## 日本語宣言書

私は、以下に記名された発明者として、ここに下記の通り宣言する：

As a below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

私の住所、郵便の宛先そして国籍は、私の氏名の後に記載された通りである。

My residence, post office address and citizenship are as stated next to my name.

下記の名称の発明について、特許請求範囲に記載され、且つ特許が求められている発明主題に関して、私は、最初、最先且つ唯一の発明者である（唯一の氏名が記載されている場合）か、或いは最初、最先且つ共同発明者である（複数の氏名が記載されている場合）と信じている。

I believe I am the original, first and sole inventor (if only one name is listed below) or an original, first and joint inventor (if plural names are listed below) of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled

## BENZAZEPINE DERIVATIVE, PRODUCTION AND USE THEREOF

上記発明の明細書はここに添付されているが、下記の欄がチェックされている場合は、この限りでない：

the specification of which is attached hereto unless the following box is checked:

☐ \_\_\_\_\_ の日に出願され、  
この出願の米国出願番号または PCT 国際出願番号は、  
\_\_\_\_\_ であり、且つ  
\_\_\_\_\_ の日に補正された出願（該当する場合）

☒ was filed on 15/06/2000  
as United States Application Number or  
PCT International Application Number  
PCT/JP00/03879 and was amended on  
\_\_\_\_\_ (if applicable)

私は、上記の補正書によって補正された、特許請求範囲を含む上記明細書を検討し、且つ内容を理解していることをここに表明する。

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above identified specification, including the claims, as amended by any amendment referred to above.

私は、連邦規則法典第 37 編規則 1.56 に定義されている、特許性について重要な情報を開示する義務があることを認める。

I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to patentability as defined in Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, Section 1.56

Burden Hour Statement: This form is estimated to take 0.4 hours to complete. Time will vary depending upon the need of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, DC 20231

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

Japanese Language Declaration  
(日本語宣言書)

私は、ここに、以下に記載した外国での特許出願または発明者証の出願、或いは米国以外の少なくとも一国を指定している米国法典第35編第365条(a)によるPCT国際出願について、同第119条(a)(d)項又は第365条(b)項に基づいて優先権を主張するとともに、優先権を主張する本出願の出願日より前の出願日を有する外国での特許出願または発明者証の出願、或いはPCT国際出願については、いかなる出願も、下記の枠内をチェックすることにより示した。

I hereby claim foreign priority under Title 35, United States Code, Section 119(a)-(d) or 365(b) of any foreign application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate, or 365(a) of any PCT International application which designated at least one country other than the United States listed below and have also identified below, by checking the box, any foreign application for patent or inventor's certificate, or PCT International application having a filing date before that of the application for which priority is claimed

Prior Foreign Application(s)

外国での先行出願

Priority Not Claimed

優先権主張なし

170345/1999

Japan

16/06/1999

(Number)  
(番号)(Country)  
(国名)(Day/Month/Year Filed)  
(出願日/月/年)☐(Number)  
(番号)(Country)  
(国名)(Day/Month/Year Filed)  
(出願日/月/年)☐

私は、ここに、下記のいかなる米国仮特許出願についても、その米国法典第35編第119条(e)項の利益を主張する。

I hereby claim the benefit under Title 35, United States Code, Section 119(e) of any United States provisional application(s) listed below.

(Application No.)  
(出願番号)(Filing Date)  
(出願日)(Application No.)  
(出願番号)(Filing Date)  
(出願日)

私は、ここに、下記のいかなる米国出願についても、その米国法典第35編第120条に基づく利益を主張し、又米国を指定するいかなるPCT国際出願についても、その同第365条(c)に基づく利益を主張する。また、本出願の各特許請求の範囲の主題が、米国法典第35編第112条第1段に規定された態様で、先行する米国出願又はPCT国際出願に開示されていない場合においては、その先行出願の出願日と本国内出願日またはPCT国際出願日との間の期間中に入手された情報で、連邦規則法典第37編規則1.56に定義された特許性に関わる重要な情報について開示義務があることを承認する。

I hereby claim the benefit under Title 35, United States Code, Section 120 of any United States application(s), or 365(c) of any PCT International application designating the United States, listed below and, insofar as the subject matter of each of the claims of this application is not disclosed in the prior United States or PCT International application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of Title 35, United States Code Section 112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to patentability as defined in Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, Section 1.56 which became available between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT International filing date of application.

(Application No.)  
(出願番号)(Filing Date)  
(出願日)(Status: Patented, Pending, Abandoned)  
(現況: 特許許可、係属中、放棄)(Application No.)  
(出願番号)(Filing Date)  
(出願日)(Status: Patented, Pending, Abandoned)  
(現況: 特許許可、係属中、放棄)

私は、ここに表明された私自身の知識に係わる陳述が真実であり、且つ情報と信ずることに基づく陳述が、真実であると信じられることを宣言し、さらに、故意に虚偽の陳述などを行った場合は、米国法典第18編第1001条に基づき、罰金または拘禁、若しくはその両方により処罰され、またそのような故意による虚偽の陳述は、本出願またはそれに対して発行されるいかなる特許も、その有効性に問題が生ずることを理解した上で陳述が行われたことを、ここに宣言する。

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number

Japanese Language Declaration  
(日本語宣言書)

委任状： 私は本出願を審査する手続を行い、且つ米国特許商標庁との全ての業務を遂行するために、記名された発明者として、下記の弁護士及び/または弁理士を任命する。(氏名及び登録番号を記載すること)

POWER OF ATTORNEY: As a named inventor, I hereby appoint the following attorney(s) and/or agent(s) to prosecute this application and transact all business in the Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith (list name and registration number).

Mark Chao, Reg. No. 37293; Elaine M. Ramesh, Reg. No. 43032

## 書類送付先

Send Correspondence to:

Mark Chao, PhD. JD.

Intellectual Property Department

Takeda Pharmaceuticals North America, Inc.

Suite 500, 475 Half Day Road

Lincolnshire, IL 60069 USA

## 直通電話連絡先：(氏名及び電話番号)

Direct Telephone Calls to: (name and telephone number)

Mark Chao, PhD. JD.

Voice: (847)383-3391 Fax: (847)383-3481

Elaine M. Ramesh, PhD. JD.

Voice: (847)383-3391 Fax: (847)383-3481

## 唯一または第一発明者氏名

Full name of sole or first inventor

Mitsuru SHIRAISHI

発明者の署名

日付

Inventor's signature

Date

住所

Residence

Amagasaki-shi, Hyogo Japan

国籍

Citizenship

Japan

郵便の宛先

Post Office Address

33-26, Tsukaguchi-cho 4-chome, Amagasaki-shi, Hyogo Japan

## 第二共同発明者がいる場合、その氏名

Full name of second joint inventor, if any

Masanori BABA

第二共同発明者の署名

日付

Second inventor's signature

Date

住所

Residence

Kagoshima-shi, Kagoshima Japan

国籍

Citizenship

Japan

郵便の宛先

Post Office Address

54-19, Kotokujidai 3-chome, Kagoshima-shi, Kagoshima Japan

(第三以下の共同発明者についても同様に記載し、署名をすること)

(Supply similar information and signature for third and subsequent joint inventors.)



Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number

Japanese Language Declaration  
(日本語宣言書)

委任状： 私は本出願を審査する手続を行い、且つ米国特許商標庁との全ての業務を遂行するために、記名された発明者として、下記の弁理士及び／または弁理士を任命する。(氏名及び登録番号を記載すること)

POWER OF ATTORNEY: As a named inventor, I hereby appoint the following attorney(s) and/or agent(s) to prosecute this application and transact all business in the Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith (list name and registration number).  
Mark Chao, Reg. No. 37293; Elaine M. Ramesh, Reg. No. 43032

## 書類送付先

Send Correspondence to:  
Mark Chao, PhD. JD.  
Intellectual Property Department  
Takeda Pharmaceuticals North America, Inc.  
Suite 500, 475 Half Day Road  
Lincolnshire, IL 60069 USA

## 直通電話連絡先：(氏名及び電話番号)

Direct Telephone Calls to: (name and telephone number)  
Mark Chao, PhD. JD.  
Voice: (847)383-3391 Fax: (847)383-3481  
Elaine M. Ramesh, PhD. JD.  
Voice: (847)383-3391 Fax: (847)383-3481

## 第三共同発明者がある場合、その氏名

Full name of third joint inventor, if any

Yoshio ARAMAKI

## 第三共同発明者の署名

日付

Third inventor's signature

Date

Yoshio Aramaki

19/11/2001

## 住所

Residence

Itami-shi, Hyogo Japan

## 国籍

Citizenship

Japan

## 郵便の宛先

Post Office Address

3-5-602, Nishidai 1-chome, Itami-shi Hyogo Japan

## 第四共同発明者がある場合、その氏名

Full name of fourth joint inventor, if any

Naoyuki KANZAKI

## 第四共同発明者の署名

日付

Fourth inventor's signature

Date

Naoyuki Kanzaki

19/11/2001

## 住所

Residence

Ibaraki-shi, Osaka Japan

## 国籍

Citizenship

Japan

## 郵便の宛先

Post Office Address

2-15-203, Taishomachi, Ibaraki-shi, Osaka Japan

(第三以下の共同発明者についても同様に記載し、署名をすること)

(Supply similar information and signature for third and subsequent joint inventors.)

# Japanese Language Declaration (日本語宣言書)

委任状: 私は本出願を審査する手続を行い、且つ米国特許商標庁との全ての業務を遂行するために、記名された発明者として、下記の弁護士及び/または弁理士を任命する。(氏名及び登録番号を記載すること)

POWER OF ATTORNEY: As a named inventor, I hereby appoint the following attorney(s) and/or agent(s) to prosecute this application and transact all business in the Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith (list name and registration number).

Mark Chao, Reg. No. 37293; Elaine M. Ramesh, Reg. No. 43032

## 書類送付先

Send Correspondence to:

Mark Chao, PhD. JD.

Intellectual Property Department

Takeda Pharmaceuticals North America, Inc.

Suite 500, 475 Half Day Road

Lincolnshire, IL 60069 USA

## 直通電話連絡先: (氏名及び電話番号)

Direct Telephone Calls to: (name and telephone number)

Mark Chao, PhD. JD.

Voice: (847)383-3391 Fax: (847)383-3481

Elaine M. Ramesh, PhD. JD.

Voice: (847)383-3391 Fax: (847)383-3481

## 第五共同発明者がある場合、その氏名

Full name of fifth joint inventor, if any

Osamu NISHIMURA

## 第五共同発明者の署名

日付

Fifth inventor's signature

Date

Osamu Nishimura 19/11/2001

## 住所

Residence

Kawanishi-shi, Hyogo Japan

## 国籍

Citizenship

Japan

## 郵便の宛先

Post Office Address

54-16, Daiwanishi 1-chome, Kawanishi-shi, Hyogo Japan

## 第六共同発明者がある場合、その氏名

Full name of sixth joint inventor, if any

## 第六共同発明者の署名

日付

Sixth inventor's signature

Date

## 住所

Residence

## 国籍

Citizenship

Japan

## 郵便の宛先

Post Office Address

(第三以下の共同発明者についても同様に記載し、署名をすること)

(Supply similar information and signature for third and subsequent joint inventors.)